



Sangaralingam Ramesh

The Political Economy of Contemporary Human Civilisation, Volume I

From the Rise of Homo
Sapiens to AI and
Robotics

palgrave
macmillan

The Political Economy of Contemporary Human Civilisation, Volume I

Sangaralingam Ramesh

The Political Economy of Contemporary Human Civilisation, Volume I

From the Rise of Homo Sapiens to AI and Robotics

palgrave
macmillan

Sangaralingam Ramesh
University of Oxford
Oxford, UK

ISBN 978-3-031-84180-4 ISBN 978-3-031-84181-1 (eBook)
<https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-84181-1>

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2025

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are solely and exclusively licensed by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use. The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Palgrave Macmillan imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG.

The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

If disposing of this product, please recycle the paper.

*For my father and my mother,
Nallathamby Sangaralingam and Pathmarani Sangaralingam
Inuvil and Karinagar, Ceylon.*

PREFACE

Humanity is endowed with advanced cognition, manual dexterity and mobility which facilitate its creativity and innovation to manifest and be used in physical form. However, this creativity and innovation can have consequences which are either destructive or constructive in the context of sustaining human civilisation. For example, some might argue that the contemporary impacts of climate change on human civilisation are the direct consequences of human activity over the last three hundred years. However, on the other hand, others might argue that contemporary climate change is a natural part of the Earth's periodic climate cycles; perhaps driven by changes in solar activity or due to changes in the earth's magnetic field. But either way, climate change and its impacts on human society can be mitigated using Artificial Intelligence. This in conjunction with developments in other fields such as Robotics, Quantum Computing, and Nuclear Fusion will have far and deep reaching consequences for human civilization in the decades to come. Moreover, scientific breakthroughs and developments in Biotechnology may reach a point such that by the end of the next two decades, humanity may be able to reverse aging and eradicate cognitive decline. However, another challenge that remains, which in conjunction with climate change will put pressure on the resources of sovereign nations, is the increase in not only the human population but also migration. This migration will be due to not only the impact of climate change but also the impacts of uneven economic development. People will migrate from countries in which the temperature is too hot, leading to droughts and famine, to cooler climates in the

northern hemisphere. Furthermore, uneven economic development will facilitate people to migrate from developing economies to the developed economies in the hope of finding better paying jobs and a better quality of life. Furthermore, uneven economic development may mean that developing economies may lack the financial and economic resources to sustain the transition away from fossil fuels to green energy. Increased global temperatures will mean that in many countries there will be a greater reliance on the use of air conditioning by households and firms. Intuitively, this will mean that countries which cannot afford the transition to green energy will remain reliant on fossil fuels, the burning of oil and coal to fuel their economies. This will further contribute to emissions of gases. Burning fossil fuels results in the emission of several gases that significantly contribute to climate change. The primary gas emitted is carbon dioxide (CO_2), which is the most prevalent greenhouse gas produced by fossil fuel combustion. CO_2 has a prolonged atmospheric lifetime and is fundamental in trapping heat, leading to global warming.¹ Methane (CH_4) is another potent greenhouse gas resulting from fossil fuel production and transportation. Although methane is released in relatively smaller quantities compared to CO_2 , it has a much higher global warming potential over a shorter time, making it a critical factor in climate change.² Additionally, burning fossil fuels emits nitrous oxide (N_2O), a gas with both natural and anthropogenic sources. N_2O is produced during combustion processes, especially at high temperatures, and it is a potent greenhouse gas with a global warming potential approximately 298 times that of CO_2 over a 100-year period.³ Sulphur dioxide (SO_2) is also released from fossil fuel combustion, particularly from coal and oil. While SO_2 itself does not have a greenhouse effect, it contributes to the formation of sulphate aerosols which can reflect sunlight and cool the Earth's surface. However, these

¹IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change). (2014). Climate Change 2014: Synthesis Report. Contribution of Working Groups I, II and III to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Geneva, Switzerland: IPCC.

²EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2021). Overview of Greenhouse Gases. Available at: <https://www.epa.gov/ghgemissions/overview-greenhouse-gases>

³Forster, P., Ramaswamy, V., Artaxo, P., Berntsen, T., Betts, R., Fahey, D. W., Haywood, J., Lean, J. (2007). Changes in Atmospheric Constituents and in Radiative Forcing. In Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press.

aerosols also contribute to acid rain and respiratory problems in humans.⁴ Carbon monoxide (CO) is another by-product of fossil fuel burning. Though CO is not a greenhouse gas, it contributes to climate change indirectly by influencing the concentration of methane and tropospheric ozone, both potent greenhouse gases.⁵ These gases, by trapping heat in the Earth's atmosphere, play a significant role in the warming of the planet and present serious environmental and health challenges. However, developments in space exploration and perhaps colonisation of planets, such as Mars and the moons of the planet Jupiter, allow a window for the possible future of humanity in a planet which may not any longer be able to sustain human life. Developments in space exploration and prospective colonization of planets such as Mars and the moons of Jupiter present a glimpse into humanity's potential future beyond Earth. As Earth's natural resources become increasingly strained and the planet faces significant environmental changes, the idea of establishing human settlements on other celestial bodies has gained traction within the scientific community. Space agencies such as NASA and ESA, along with private companies like SpaceX, are at the forefront of these efforts. Mars has long been considered the most viable candidate for human colonization within our solar system. This interest is driven by several factors, including its relative proximity to Earth, the presence of water ice, and its similarities to Earth's geological features. Notably, NASA's Mars missions, including the Curiosity and Perseverance rovers, have provided valuable data on the planet's surface and potential habitability.⁶ Additionally, the success of SpaceX's Starship program aims to facilitate crewed missions to Mars, making the concept of a human presence on the Red Planet increasingly tangible.⁷ The moons of Jupiter, particularly Europa, also hold promise for human exploration and

⁴ Smith, S. J., van Aardenne, J., Klimont, Z., Andres, R., Volke, A., & Delgado Arias, S. (2011). Anthropogenic sulfur dioxide emissions: 1850–2005. *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics*, 11(3), 1101–1116.

⁵ Myhre, G., D. Shindell, F.-M. Bréon, W. Collins, J. Fuglestad, J. Huang, D. Koch. (2013). Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing. In *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.

⁶ Grotzinger, J. P., Sumner, D. Y., Gupta, S., Siebach, K., Mangold, N., Kah, L. C., ... & Crisp, J. A. (2014). A habitable fluvio-lacustrine environment at Yellowknife Bay, Gale Crater, Mars. *Science*, 343(6169), 1242777.

⁷ Musk, E. (2017). Making life multi-planetary. *New Space*, 5(2), 46–61.

potential colonization. Europa's subsurface ocean is of particular interest due to its potential for harbouring life and providing a sustainable water source for future missions.⁸ The European Space Agency's upcoming Jupiter Icy Moons Explorer (JUICE) mission aims to further investigate the habitability of these moons, with a focus on Europa, Ganymede, and Callisto.⁹ The establishment of human settlements on Mars or the moons of Jupiter would represent a monumental step for humanity, offering an alternative pathway for survival if Earth becomes untenable due to resource depletion, climate change, or other existential threats. Such efforts require significant technological advancements and international collaboration. Ensuring sustainable living conditions on these remote celestial bodies will also involve overcoming challenges related to life support systems, radiation protection, and the psychological well-being of astronauts.¹⁰ The exploration and potential colonization of other planets and moons extend beyond the survival of humanity; they symbolize the innate human spirit of exploration and the quest for knowledge. As technologies continue to advance, the dream of living on Mars or the moons of Jupiter may indeed become a reality in the not-too-distant future.

Oxford, UK

Sangaralingam Ramesh

REFERENCES

- EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). (2021). Overview of Greenhouse Gases. <https://www.epa.gov/ghgemissions/overview-greenhouse-gases>
- Forster, P., Ramaswamy, V., Artaxo, P., Berntsen, T., Betts, R., Fahey, D. W., Haywood, J., & Lean, J. (2007). Changes in atmospheric constituents and in radiative forcing. In *Climate change 2007: The physical science basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.

⁸Hand, K. P., Chyba, C. F., Priscu, J. C., Carlson, R. W., & Nealson, K. H. (2009). Astrobiology and the potential for life on Europa. *Europa*, 589–629.

⁹Grasset, O., Dougherty, M. K., Coustenis, A., Bunce, E. J., Erd, C., Titov, D., ... & Reh, K. (2013). Jupiter Icy moons Explorer (JUICE): An ESA mission to orbit Ganymede and to characterise the Jupiter system. *Planetary and Space Science*, 78, 1–21.

¹⁰Jones, E. M., Robertson, R. A., Tolentino, M., Rooney, K. A., & Tarazona, V. (2018). Mitigating the psychological impact of space exploration through mindfulness training. *Acta Astronautica*, 145, 53–60.

- Grasset, O., Dougherty, M. K., Coustenis, A., Bunce, E. J., Erd, C., Titov, D., Blanc, M., Coates, A. J., Drossart, P., Fletcher, L. N., Hussmann, H., Jahnke, L., Kallenbach, R., Khurana, K. K., Langevin, Y., Maitra, D., Mitri, G., Mousis, O., Neubauer, F. M., ... Reh, K. (2013). Jupiter Icy moons Explorer (JUICE): An ESA mission to orbit Ganymede and to characterise the Jupiter system. *Planetary and Space Science*, 78, 1–21.
- Grotzinger, J. P., Sumner, D. Y., Gupta, S., Siebach, K., Mangold, N., Kah, L. C., Stack, K. M., Milliken, R. E., Conrad, P. G., Des Marais, D. J., Farmer, J. D., Siebach, C., Calef, F., Hurowitz, J., McLennan, S. M., Mischna, M., Blake, D., Gellert, R., Mahaffy, P., ... Crisp, J. A. (2014). A habitable fluvio-lacustrine environment at Yellowknife Bay, Gale Crater, Mars. *Science*, 343(6169), 1242777.
- Hand, K. P., Chyba, C. F., Priscu, J. C., Carlson, R. W., & Nealson, K. H. (2009). Astrobiology and the potential for life on Europa. In Pappalardo, R. T., McKinnon, W. B., & Khurana, K. (Eds.), *Europa* (pp. 589–629). University of Arizona Press.
- IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change). (2014). Climate change 2014: Synthesis Report. Contribution of Working Groups I, II and III to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Geneva, Switzerland: IPCC.
- Jones, E. M., Robertson, R. A., Tolentino, M., Rooney, K. A., & Tarazona, V. (2018). Mitigating the psychological impact of space exploration through mindfulness training. *Acta Astronautica*, 145, 53–60.
- Musk, E. (2017). Making life multi-planetary. *New Space*, 5(2), 46–61.
- Myhre, G., Shindell, D., Bréon, F.-M., Collins, W., Fuglestad, J., Huang, J., & Koch, D. (2013). Anthropogenic and natural radiative forcing. In *Climate change 2013: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.
- Smith, S. J., van Aardenne, J., Klimont, Z., Andres, R., Volke, A., & Delgado Arias, S. (2011). Anthropogenic sulphur dioxide emissions: 1850–2005. *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics*, 11(3), 1101–1116.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

I would like to thank Wyndham Hackett Pain, the Senior Economics Editor at Palgrave Macmillan, for his ongoing support with regard to the completion of this manuscript, the first volume in a series of two on *The Political Economy of Contemporary Human Civilisation*. Furthermore, I would also like to thank Heggidi Raju, the Project Co-Ordinator for Springer Nature, for co-ordinating the production of this book volume. In addition, I would also like to thank my colleague at University College London, Dr Vasos Pavlika, for his ongoing mentorship and support. Finally, I would like to thank the University of Oxford for the use of its world-class resources.

CONTENTS

1	Introduction	1
	<i>The Evolution of Homo sapiens</i>	4
	<i>Theories of Cognitive Development and Creative Innovation</i>	7
	<i>Destructive Innovation and Its Consequences</i>	10
	<i>Artificial Intelligence, Robotics, and the Future of Humanity</i>	14
	<i>Space Exploration, Quantum Computing, and the Search for Sustainable Solutions</i>	19
	<i>Conclusion: The Dual-Edged Sword of Innovation</i>	22
	<i>References</i>	24
2	The Rise of Homo sapiens	29
	<i>Bipedalism and Manual Dexterity and Brain Size</i>	33
	<i>The Emergence of Homo sapiens</i>	35
	<i>Early Civilizations</i>	37
	<i>Neolithic China</i>	60
	<i>References</i>	64
3	Theories of Cognitive Development	71
	<i>Introduction</i>	71
	<i>Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development</i>	75
	<i>Vygotsky's Theory of Cognitive Development</i>	84
	<i>The Development of Measured Intelligence</i>	89
	<i>The Development of Moral Understanding</i>	93
	<i>Conclusion</i>	99
	<i>References</i>	101

4	Climate Change	109
	<i>Introduction</i>	109
	<i>Chronology of Main Events of Climate Change Over the Last Five Million Years</i>	111
	<i>Theories Associated with Climate Change</i>	135
	<i>Natural Climatic Changes</i>	146
	<i>Civilizations Impacted by Climate Change</i>	149
	<i>Contemporary Threats</i>	153
	<i>Public Health Challenges</i>	163
	<i>Socioeconomic Impacts</i>	165
	<i>Conclusion</i>	168
	<i>References</i>	171
5	Migration	187
	<i>Introduction</i>	187
	<i>Early Hominin Migrations (Three Million to One Million Years Ago)</i>	188
	<i>Homo erectus and Early Human Expansion (1 Million to 300,000 Years Ago)</i>	195
	<i>The Emergence and Spread of Homo sapiens (300,000 Years Ago to Present)</i>	200
	<i>Post-Ice Age Human Migration (12,000 Years Ago to Present)</i>	203
	<i>Agricultural Revolution</i>	205
	<i>Oceanic Exploration and Colonization</i>	206
	<i>Theories Associated with Human Migration</i>	209
	<i>Contemporary Climate Change and Economic Migration</i>	213
	<i>Conclusion</i>	228
	<i>References</i>	230
6	Artificial Intelligence and Robotics	239
	<i>Introduction</i>	239
	<i>History of Artificial Intelligence and Robotics</i>	240
	<i>Revival and Growth</i>	250
	<i>Modern Developments in Artificial Intelligence</i>	253
	<i>History of Robotics</i>	260
	<i>Modern Developments in Robotics</i>	264

	<i>Transforming Industries</i>	272
	<i>Addressing Global Challenges</i>	274
	<i>Conclusion</i>	280
	<i>References</i>	284
7	Conclusion	293
	<i>Prologue to Volume 2: Frontier Technologies and the Future of</i>	
	<i>Humanity</i>	304
	<i>References</i>	312
	Index	317



CHAPTER 1

Introduction

The evolution of *Homo sapiens* marks a pivotal moment in the history of life on Earth, as our species' unique cognitive and social developments have allowed humans to exert an unparalleled influence on the environment. Emerging from Africa approximately 300,000 years ago, humans rapidly distinguished themselves through their capacity for advanced problem-solving, tool use, and social cooperation.¹ While many species exhibit forms of intelligence, such as tool use in primates and problem-solving in birds, it is the combination of *Homo sapiens*' complex language, abstract reasoning, and ability to cooperate in large groups that has made humans a dominant force across the globe.² Central to this evolutionary success is the development of language, which not only allowed for more effective communication but also enabled the transmission of knowledge across generations. This capacity for symbolic thinking gave rise to innovations in technology, art, and culture, setting *Homo sapiens* apart from other hominins and species.³ Coupled with manual dexterity, which facilitated the creation and use of sophisticated tools, early humans

¹Tattersall, I. (2017). *The Strange Case of the Ricketty Cossack: And Other Cautionary Tales from Human Evolution*. St. Martin's Press.

²Harari, Y. N. (2014). *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*. Harper.

³Mithen, S. (1996). *The Prehistory of the Mind: The Cognitive Origins of Art, Religion and Science*. Thames and Hudson.

were able to manipulate their environment in ways that no other species had achieved. The invention of agriculture approximately 12,000 years ago, for example, represents a milestone in human innovation that transformed social structures and economies, ultimately laying the foundation for modern civilization.⁴ However, the same cognitive abilities that enabled humans to create have also driven destructive innovations. From early weaponry to the development of nuclear technologies, humans have continually advanced their capacity for conflict, often with catastrophic consequences.⁵ The Anthropocene, a term used to describe the current geological age, is marked by significant human impact on Earth's ecosystems, driven largely by industrialisation, deforestation, and the extraction of natural resources. Climate change, biodiversity loss, and pollution are direct consequences of human ingenuity applied without sufficient foresight or responsibility.⁶ This dual-edged nature of human innovation—both creative and destructive—raises important questions about the future trajectory of human civilization. Technologies such as Artificial Intelligence, Biotechnology, and Quantum Computing offer the potential for solving some of the most pressing global challenges, from disease eradication to climate change mitigation. However, as explored in these same technologies also hold the potential for unprecedented destruction if misused or inadequately controlled.⁷ The balance between humanity's capacity to innovate for the betterment of society and the risks posed by unchecked technological development will be critical in shaping the future of civilization. As *Homo sapiens* continues to evolve—both culturally and potentially biologically—the impact of human cognitive abilities will reverberate across every dimension of life, influencing governance, economics, and the environment. Culturally, human societies are increasingly shaped by the acceleration of technological advancements, globalization, and interconnectedness, which are transforming how people communicate, govern, and engage with the world. This cognitive evolution, particularly in terms of information processing, is driving significant shifts in

⁴Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. W. W. Norton & Company.

⁵Bostrom, N. (2014). *Superintelligence: Paths, Dangers, Strategies*. Oxford University Press.

⁶McNeill, J. R., & Engelke, P. (2014). *The Great Acceleration: An Environmental History of the Anthropocene since 1945*. Harvard University Press.

⁷Bostrom, N. (2014). *Superintelligence: Paths, Dangers, Strategies*. Oxford University Press.

governance structures. In an era defined by rapid access to data and the proliferation of Artificial Intelligence, the way decisions are made at both national and international levels is becoming more complex and reliant on advanced computational tools.⁸ This evolution in governance, however, raises challenges in terms of ensuring ethical oversight, transparency, and accountability as governments increasingly integrate AI-driven systems into policymaking and administration.

Economically, the cognitive and technological evolution of *Homo sapiens* is redefining traditional economic models. The rise of digital currencies, automation, and global supply chains has shifted economic paradigms, challenging existing labour markets and wealth distribution models.⁹ Artificial Intelligence and machine learning are automating complex decision-making processes, from stock trading to logistics management, enhancing efficiency but also raising concerns about inequality and unemployment as traditional jobs are replaced by machines.¹⁰ As human cognition enables continuous innovation in these areas, the socioeconomic landscape is likely to face ongoing disruption, forcing governments and institutions to adapt rapidly or risk instability.

The cognitive evolution of humans also directly affects the environment, particularly through the application of advanced technologies that influence resource extraction, energy consumption, and environmental conservation. According to scholarly work on the Anthropocene, human ingenuity has allowed for unprecedented environmental manipulation, from agriculture to industrialisation.¹¹ However, the same cognitive advancements that drive innovation also exacerbate ecological degradation. The ongoing development of Artificial Intelligence, Biotechnology, and renewable energy technologies, while promising solutions to global environmental challenges, also introduces risks related to over-reliance on these technologies and their potential to produce unintended consequences.¹² The balance between technological advancement and ecological sustainability will be critical in determining the long-term impact of

⁸ Tegmark, M. (2017). *Life 3.0: Being Human in the Age of Artificial Intelligence*. Knopf.

⁹ Schwab, K. (2016). *The Fourth Industrial Revolution*. Penguin Random House.

¹⁰ Bostrom, N. (2014). *Superintelligence: Paths, Dangers, Strategies*. Oxford University Press.

¹¹ McNeill, J. R., & Engelke, P. (2014). *The Great Acceleration: An Environmental History of the Anthropocene since 1945*. Harvard University Press.

¹² Schneider, S. H. (2019). *Science as a Contact Sport: Inside the Battle to Save Earth's Climate*. National Geographic Society.

humanity's cognitive evolution on the planet. Finally, as human cognition continues to push the boundaries of what is possible in medicine, Biotechnology, and genetics, the possibility of biological evolution through technological intervention becomes more plausible. Advances in genetic engineering, particularly with tools such as CRISPR, open the door to potential future modifications of the human genome, raising ethical and philosophical questions about what it means to be human.¹³ As humanity continues to explore these frontiers, the cultural, economic, and environmental implications of our evolving cognitive capabilities will become increasingly significant. This is the Political Economy of Human Civilization.

THE EVOLUTION OF HOMO SAPIENS

The rise of *Homo sapiens* was marked by the development of highly advanced cognition. Theories of cognitive development, such as the 'Cognitive Revolution' proposed by Yuval Noah Harari¹⁴ argue that around 70,000 years ago, humans began to use their newfound cognitive abilities to cooperate in large groups, create sophisticated tools, and develop early forms of art and religion. The subsequent chapters of this book, beginning with 'The Rise of *Homo sapiens*', evaluates this transformative period, exploring how early humans used their cognitive skills to adapt to diverse environments and establish dominance over other species, including other hominins such as Neanderthals.

With the ability to innovate came the capacity for both creation and destruction. Human ingenuity has long been a double-edged sword, driving both the flourishing of civilizations and their potential undoing. From the earliest developments of stone tools to the sophisticated technologies of the twenty-first century, innovation has allowed humans to reshape their environment, improve living standards, and expand knowledge. Advances in agriculture, such as the domestication of plants and animals, allowed for the rise of complex societies by providing stable food sources. Over time, innovations in infrastructure, transportation, and communication systems furthered human progress, enabling trade, the spread of

¹³Doudna, J. A., & Sternberg, S. H. (2017). *A Crack in Creation: Gene Editing and the Unthinkable Power to Control Evolution*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

¹⁴Harari, Y. N. (2014). *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*. Harper.

ideas, and the development of political and social structures that supported thriving civilizations.¹⁵ However, this same ingenuity has also been applied to war, conflict, and environmental destruction. The Industrial Revolution, which brought about unprecedented economic growth, was simultaneously the catalyst for massive environmental damage due to the unchecked burning of fossil fuels and the exploitation of natural resources. The relentless pursuit of technological and industrial advancement has led to widespread deforestation, the depletion of finite resources, and the release of greenhouse gases that contribute to climate change, threatening the very ecosystems that sustain life.¹⁶

The rapid pace of technological advancement, particularly in recent centuries, has created a delicate balance between humanity's capacity for creative innovation—such as in Biotechnology, Artificial Intelligence, and space exploration—and destructive innovation, as seen in the proliferation of nuclear weapons, ecological degradation, and the perpetuation of global inequalities. The development of nuclear technology during the twentieth century epitomizes this paradox. While nuclear power holds the potential to provide nearly limitless energy, it also gave rise to nuclear weapons, which have the capacity to annihilate entire populations. The bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in 1945 demonstrated the devastating potential of nuclear warfare, ushering in an era of geopolitical tension defined by the threat of mutually assured destruction.¹⁷ Similarly, the rise of Artificial Intelligence (AI) presents both incredible opportunities and significant risks. AI has the potential to revolutionize industries such as healthcare, by improving diagnostics and personalized treatments, and climate science, by optimizing energy usage and modelling climate systems more accurately.¹⁸ However, it also poses risks of mass unemployment due to automation, as well as ethical concerns regarding the use of AI in autonomous weapons systems, which could make life-and-death decisions

¹⁵Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

¹⁶Steffen, W., Broadgate, W., Deutsch, L., Gaffney, O., & Ludwig, C. (2011). "The Anthropocene: Conceptual and Historical Perspectives." *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A*, 369(1938), pp. 842–867.

¹⁷Sagan, S. D. (1996). *The Limits of Safety: Organizations, Accidents, and Nuclear Weapons*. Princeton University Press.

¹⁸Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

without human intervention.¹⁹ The deployment of AI in warfare raises profound questions about accountability and the morality of using machines to kill, further complicating the balance between technological progress and ethical responsibility.

Biotechnology is another field where human creativity holds both promise and peril. Advances in genetic engineering, particularly through CRISPR-Cas9 technology, have the potential to eradicate hereditary diseases and enhance agricultural productivity, providing solutions to some of the most pressing global challenges, including food security and public health.²⁰ However, the ethical implications of gene editing—especially when applied to humans—are vast. The possibility of ‘designer babies’, where genetic traits such as intelligence or appearance can be selected or enhanced, raises concerns about exacerbating social inequalities and undermining the concept of human dignity. If access to these technologies is limited to the wealthy, it could lead to a society where genetic privilege is a new form of inequality, further entrenching existing disparities.²¹ Moreover, space exploration, while offering the potential to solve some of Earth’s resource constraints, poses its own set of challenges. Visionaries like Elon Musk have championed space colonization as a solution to existential threats such as climate collapse or nuclear war, advocating for humanity to become a multi-planetary species.²² Yet, the resources required for space exploration are immense, and the ethical questions surrounding the colonization of other planets—such as who will govern these new frontiers and who will benefit from their resources—remain unanswered. There is also the risk that focusing on space colonization could divert attention and resources from solving the critical environmental challenges on Earth, leading to a dangerous mind-set of escapism rather than sustainability.²³

¹⁹ Sharkey, N. (2010). “Saying ‘No!’ to Lethal Autonomous Targeting.” *Journal of Military Ethics*, 9(4), pp. 369–383.

²⁰ Doudna, J. A., & Sternberg, S. H. (2017). *A Crack in Creation: Gene Editing and the Unthinkable Power to Control Evolution*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

²¹ Sandel, M. J. (2007). *The Case Against Perfection: Ethics in the Age of Genetic Engineering*. Harvard University Press.

²² Musk, E. (2017). “Making Humans a Multi-Planetary Species.” *New Space*, 5(2), pp. 46–61.

²³ Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2020). “The costs of climate mitigation and the politics of escape: The planetary boundaries of Elon Musk’s Mars vision.” *Energy Research & Social Science*, 70, 101676.

Human innovation has brought about remarkable achievements, enabling civilizations to thrive and offering the potential to solve some of the most pressing challenges of our time. However, the same capacity for innovation has also led to destructive consequences, from the threat of nuclear warfare to the degradation of the environment and the perpetuation of global inequalities. The future of humanity will depend on our ability to navigate this delicate balance, ensuring that technological progress is guided by ethical considerations and a commitment to sustainability. Without responsible governance and global cooperation, the tools that have driven human advancement could become the very instruments of our undoing.

THEORIES OF COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT AND CREATIVE INNOVATION

The development of the human brain, specifically its capacity for abstract thinking and symbolic reasoning, is explored in ‘Theories of Cognitive Development’. Advances in neuroscience and psychology suggest that the human brain is wired for innovation, with an intrinsic drive to solve problems and create innovative solutions.²⁴ This chapter investigates how cognitive development paved the way for the invention of tools, the establishment of trade networks, and the birth of agriculture, all of which laid the groundwork for the complex economies that define modern civilization.

Creative innovation has consistently driven human progress, shaping the trajectory of civilizations from the Agricultural Revolution to the industrial revolution, and more recently, the digital revolution. The Agricultural Revolution enabled the transition from nomadic lifestyles to settled societies, supporting population growth and leading to the development of complex social structures.²⁵ The Industrial Revolution, marked by mechanization and mass production, ushered in unprecedented economic growth, technological advancements, and urbanization, albeit at the cost of environmental degradation due to heavy reliance on fossil

²⁴ Mithen, S. (1996). *The Prehistory of the Mind: The Cognitive Origins of Art, Religion and Science*. Thames and Hudson.

²⁵ Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

fuels.²⁶ Today, the Digital Revolution, characterized by the rapid expansion of computing technologies, Artificial Intelligence (AI), and automation, is reshaping nearly every aspect of modern life.

The emergence of Artificial Intelligence and Robotics, explored in Chap. 6, represents the latest frontier in human creativity. These technologies have the potential to revolutionize industries, increase efficiency, and solve some of the world's most pressing problems, including those related to climate change and resource scarcity. AI systems are already transforming industries such as healthcare, where machine learning algorithms are used to improve diagnostics and predict patient outcomes with greater accuracy than traditional methods.²⁷ In logistics, AI-powered platforms optimize supply chains, reduce waste, and improve delivery times, contributing to more sustainable business practices.²⁸ Similarly, Robotics is enhancing manufacturing by increasing precision, reducing errors, and minimizing human labour costs, which has significant implications for improving productivity and scaling industries to meet growing global demands.

In the context of climate change, AI is proving to be a valuable tool for environmental monitoring and energy management. Machine learning algorithms are being used to predict extreme weather patterns, model climate systems, and optimize the integration of renewable energy sources into national grids.²⁹ For example, Google's DeepMind has developed AI systems that help predict wind energy output thirty-six hours in advance, allowing for better planning and more efficient use of renewable energy.³⁰ These innovations highlight the potential for AI to accelerate the transition to cleaner energy systems, reduce reliance on fossil fuels, and mitigate the impacts of global warming. However, despite these promising developments, the risks associated with AI and Robotics cannot be ignored. The

²⁶ McNeill, J. R. (2000). *Something New Under the Sun: An Environmental History of the Twentieth-Century World*. W.W. Norton & Company.

²⁷ Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

²⁸ Brynjolfsson, E. & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

²⁹ Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2021). "Climate change and energy security: Unpacking the arguments and mobilizing solutions." *Energy Research & Social Science*, 79, 102078.

³⁰ DeepMind. (2019). "Wind power now predictably on the grid thanks to machine learning." Available at: <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/machine-learning-can-boost-value-wind-energy>.

chapters on Climate Change and Renewable Energy Technologies will discuss these innovations and how they may pose significant challenges, particularly if they exacerbate existing inequalities or lead to unintended environmental consequences. One concern is the potential for AI and automation to deepen economic disparities by displacing large segments of the workforce, especially in low-skilled jobs. According to a report by the International Labour Organization, up to 800 million jobs could be displaced by automation by 2030, disproportionately affecting workers in developing countries.³¹ This could exacerbate global inequality unless new policies, such as universal basic income or re-skilling programmes, are implemented to support displaced workers.³² Furthermore, the development and deployment of AI systems are heavily concentrated in wealthier nations, leading to concerns about unequal access to the benefits of AI-driven innovations. While developed countries are investing heavily in AI research and development, many developing countries lack the infrastructure, capital, and technical expertise to fully leverage these technologies. This digital divide risks creating a new form of technological neocolonialism, where wealthier nations and multinational corporations control the deployment and use of AI technologies, potentially reinforcing existing power dynamics and global inequalities.³³ In addition to economic and social concerns, the environmental impact of AI and Robotics must also be carefully considered. AI systems, particularly those used for large-scale data processing and machine learning, require vast amounts of computational power, which in turn consumes significant energy. Data centres, which are critical for supporting AI and other digital technologies, account for about 1% of global electricity consumption, a figure expected to rise as the demand for digital services grows.³⁴ While advancements in energy efficiency and the use of renewable energy sources can help mitigate the carbon footprint of these systems, the environmental impact of large-scale AI deployment must be closely monitored to avoid

³¹ International Labour Organization. (2020). “The Future of Jobs Report 2020.” Available at: https://www.ilo.org/wcmsp5/groups/public/%2D%2D-dgreports/%2D%2D-cabinet/documents/publication/wcms_752207.pdf.

³² Brynjolfsson, E. & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

³³ Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2021). “Climate change and energy security: Unpacking the arguments and mobilizing solutions.” *Energy Research & Social Science*, 79, 102078.

³⁴ Masanet, E., Shehabi, A., Lei, N., Smith, S., & Koomey, J. (2020). “Recalibrating global data center energy-use estimates.” *Science*, 367(6481), 984–986.

unintended consequences that could undermine broader sustainability efforts. Moreover, the development of AI and Robotics for military applications raises serious ethical concerns. The use of autonomous weapons systems, or ‘killer robots’, poses a significant threat to global security and human rights. These weapons, which can operate without human intervention, raise questions about accountability and the morality of allowing machines to make life-and-death decisions.³⁵ The proliferation of such technologies could escalate conflicts, lower the threshold for engaging in warfare, and make conflicts more lethal by removing the human element from critical decision-making processes. The international community has yet to fully address the legal and ethical implications of autonomous weapons, despite growing calls for a global ban on their development and use.³⁶ While AI and Robotics have the potential to drive positive change, they also present complex challenges that must be managed carefully. The same technological creativity that holds the promise to address climate change, increase productivity, and enhance human well-being also carries the risk of exacerbating inequalities, creating new forms of conflict, and causing unintended environmental harm. Responsible innovation, guided by ethical governance and a commitment to sustainability, is essential to ensuring that these powerful technologies are harnessed for the benefit of all, rather than for the privileged few.

DESTRUCTIVE INNOVATION AND ITS CONSEQUENCES

While creative innovation has led to immense progress, destructive innovation has often accompanied it. The same cognitive abilities that enable humans to develop advanced technologies also allow them to devise new means of conflict and destruction. War and Conflict, a later chapter in this book, examines the evolution of warfare and the role those technological advancements—such as nuclear fusion and Quantum Computing—may play in modern conflict. As explored in the chapter on Quantum Computing and Nuclear Fusion in Volume 2 of this book series, these innovations have dual uses: while they offer potential solutions for energy

³⁵ Sharkey, N. (2010). “Saying ‘No!’ to Lethal Autonomous Targeting.” *Journal of Military Ethics*, 9(4), 369–383.

³⁶ Asaro, P. (2012). “On banning autonomous weapon systems: Human rights, automation, and the dehumanization of lethal decision-making.” *International Review of the Red Cross*, 94(886), 687–709.

crises and computational limitations, they also present existential risks if used in warfare or uncontrolled experimentation.³⁷ Moreover, destructive innovation extends beyond war and conflict to the environmental impact of human activity.

Climate change is accelerating the catastrophic consequences of industrialisation and the burning of fossil fuels, which have already contributed to global warming, biodiversity loss, and the destabilization of ecosystems. Since the beginning of the Industrial Revolution, human activities, particularly the combustion of coal, oil, and natural gas, have significantly increased concentrations of greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the atmosphere, leading to a steady rise in global temperatures. According to the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, human activities have already caused approximately 1.1°C of warming above pre-industrial levels, with catastrophic consequences for ecosystems, economies, and human populations.³⁸ If current trends continue, the world is on track to exceed the 1.5°C or 2°C threshold, which scientists agree will lead to irreversible damage to ecosystems, sea-level rise, and more frequent and severe extreme weather events.

The destruction of biodiversity is one of the most visible consequences of climate change and industrialisation. Species extinction rates are accelerating at unprecedented levels. The United Nations' Global Biodiversity Outlook 5 indicates that biodiversity is declining faster than at any time in human history, with over one million species currently threatened with extinction.³⁹ Climate change exacerbates this loss by altering habitats, disrupting food chains, and intensifying the frequency of natural disasters. Coral reefs, for example, which are home to a quarter of all marine species, are especially vulnerable to rising ocean temperatures and acidification. The IPCC estimates that if global temperatures rise by 2°C, 99% of coral reefs could be lost, which would have devastating effects on marine biodiversity and the millions of people who depend on these ecosystems for

³⁷ Bostrom, N. (2014). *Superintelligence: Paths, Dangers, Strategies*. Oxford University Press.

³⁸ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2021). *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.

³⁹ United Nations Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). (2020). *Global Biodiversity Outlook 5*. Montreal: Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity. Available at: <https://www.cbd.int/gbo5>.

food and livelihood.⁴⁰ Moreover, climate change destabilizes ecosystems, leading to a cascade of negative effects. As temperatures rise, ecosystems that have long been stable are increasingly being thrown out of balance. Forest ecosystems, such as the Amazon rainforest, are at particular risk. The Amazon, often referred to as the ‘lungs of the Earth’, plays a critical role in regulating the global climate by absorbing vast amounts of carbon dioxide. However, deforestation and climate change are pushing the Amazon towards a tipping point, where it could shift from being a carbon sink to a carbon source, releasing more CO₂ than it absorbs, which would significantly accelerate global warming.⁴¹ Such feedback loops demonstrate the interconnectedness of ecosystems and climate, where damage to one system can have far-reaching implications for the entire planet. In addition to these environmental impacts, climate change is a major driver of human displacement, as will be discussed in Chap. 5. Climate-induced migration is becoming an increasingly urgent issue as rising sea levels, extreme weather events, and resource scarcity force millions of people to leave their homes in search of safety and livelihood. According to the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees, an average of 23.1 million people have been displaced by weather-related disasters each year since 2010.⁴² This figure is expected to rise significantly in the coming decades as the impacts of climate change intensify, particularly in vulnerable regions such as small island developing states and low-lying coastal areas.

Migration caused by climate change is not only a humanitarian crisis but also a political and economic challenge. As people move in search of refuge, both within and across borders, they place additional pressure on the infrastructure, services, and economies of host regions. In some cases, this influx of displaced populations has sparked social tensions and conflicts. For example, climate change has been linked to the exacerbation of the Syrian civil war, where prolonged drought, worsened by global warming, contributed to crop failures, food insecurity, and mass migration from rural to urban areas, creating social unrest and intensifying existing

⁴⁰ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2021). *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.

⁴¹ Lovejoy, T. E., & Nobre, C. (2019). “Amazon tipping point: Last chance for action.” *Science Advances*, 5(12), eaax893.

⁴² United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR). (2021). “Climate change and disaster displacement.” Available at: <https://www.unhcr.org/climate-change-and-disasters.html>.

political conflicts.⁴³ Similarly, in Sub-Saharan Africa, climate-related displacement is placing increasing stress on already fragile political systems, contributing to instability and conflict over resources like water and arable land.⁴⁴ Moreover, the economic impacts of climate-induced migration are significant. Displacement disrupts local economies, leading to loss of income, livelihoods, and productivity. In agricultural economies, particularly in the Global South, climate change is reducing crop yields and forcing farmers to abandon their land. A report by the World Bank projects that without urgent action, climate change could force more than 140 million people in Sub-Saharan Africa, South Asia, and Latin America to migrate within their countries by 2050.⁴⁵ This internal displacement could strain urban areas that are ill-prepared to accommodate such large numbers of people, leading to increased poverty and inequality and ultimately social conflict leading to political upheavals.

In wealthier countries like the United States, Canada, Great Britain and the European Union, the influx of climate and economic refugees from regions hit hardest by climate change is already becoming a political issue, leading to debates over immigration policies and international responsibilities. Many developed nations, while contributing disproportionately to global emissions, are reluctant to take responsibility for the climate refugees generated by their industrial activities. This raises ethical questions about global equity and justice, as the countries and populations most affected by climate change have contributed the least to the problem. To address these challenges, global cooperation and innovative solutions are needed. Mitigation strategies, such as transitioning to renewable energy sources and reducing GHG emissions, must be coupled with adaptation measures that help vulnerable communities cope with the impacts of climate change. International frameworks, like the Paris Agreement, provide a platform for countries to work together to limit global warming and

⁴³ Kelley, C. P., Mohtadi, S., Cane, M. A., Seager, R., & Kushnir, Y. (2015). "Climate change in the Fertile Crescent and implications of the recent Syrian drought." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 112(11), 3241–3246.

⁴⁴ Niang, I., Ruppel, O. C., Abdrabo, M. A., Essel, A., Lennard, C., Padgham, J., & Urquhart, P. (2014). "Africa." In Barros, V. R., et al. (Eds.), *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability*. Cambridge University Press.

⁴⁵ Rigaud, K. K., de Sherbinin, A., Jones, B., Bergmann, J., Clement, V., Ober, K., Schewe, J., Adamo, S., McCusker, B., Heuser, S., & Midgley, A. (2018). *Groundswell: Preparing for Internal Climate Migration*. Washington, DC: The World Bank. Available at: <https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/29461>.

address the root causes of climate-induced displacement. However, the success of these efforts will depend on political will, financial resources, and a collective commitment to equity and justice.

Climate change is not only an environmental issue but a multidimensional crisis that threatens ecosystems, economies, and human societies. The catastrophic consequences of industrialisation and fossil fuel combustion have set humanity on a collision course with nature. While technological innovation and global cooperation offer hope for mitigating these impacts, the path forward will require addressing the underlying inequalities that make some regions and populations more vulnerable than others. Without bold action, climate-induced migration will continue to grow, disrupting economies, destabilizing political systems, and exacerbating global inequalities.

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE, ROBOTICS, AND THE FUTURE OF HUMANITY

As humanity stands at the dawn of a new era, the advancements in Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics offer both tremendous opportunities and serious challenges. The transformative potential of AI and Robotics spans multiple sectors, from healthcare and manufacturing to transportation and finance. AI-driven automation is already reshaping industries by streamlining operations, optimizing supply chains, and significantly reducing human labour. For example, Amazon's use of AI-powered robots in its warehouses has allowed the company to reduce shipping times and costs, enhancing its competitive edge in global markets.⁴⁶ Similarly, AI's capacity to analyse vast amounts of data has revolutionized fields like personalized medicine, where algorithms can predict patient outcomes and tailor treatments to individual needs.⁴⁷ These developments hold the promise of increasing productivity, improving healthcare outcomes, and fostering economic growth. However, the widespread adoption of AI raises serious concerns, particularly regarding employment. While automation can increase efficiency, it also threatens to displace millions of jobs, particularly in low-skilled sectors. The International Labour Organization estimates

⁴⁶ Brynjolfsson, E., & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

⁴⁷ Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

that up to 800 million workers could lose their jobs to automation by 2030, exacerbating income inequality and social unrest.⁴⁸ Without proactive measures, such as re-skilling programmes and social safety nets, AI-driven automation could deepen the divide between those who benefit from technological progress and those who are left behind. Furthermore, privacy concerns have emerged as AI systems increasingly rely on the collection and analysis of personal data. The use of AI in surveillance, for instance, has sparked debates about the erosion of privacy and the potential for authoritarian regimes to use these technologies to monitor and control populations.⁴⁹ In addition to privacy and employment concerns, the development of autonomous systems in warfare presents another pressing challenge. The use of AI in military applications, such as drones and autonomous weapons, raises ethical questions about accountability and the dehumanization of conflict. The deployment of lethal autonomous systems could lower the threshold for war, as human decision-making is replaced by machines capable of making life-and-death decisions.⁵⁰ The potential for AI-driven warfare to escalate conflicts and increase civilian casualties highlights the urgent need for international regulations to govern the use of these technologies in combat. Similarly, the developments in cryptocurrencies, discussed in Chap. 4, Vol. 2, offer both promise and peril. Cryptocurrencies like Bitcoin and Ethereum have the potential to decentralize financial systems, promoting economic inclusion and reducing reliance on traditional banking institutions. By eliminating intermediaries, cryptocurrencies can reduce transaction costs, facilitate cross-border trade, and provide financial services to the unbanked. Approximately 1.7 billion adults worldwide remain without access to a bank account, and cryptocurrencies could offer a solution to this financial exclusion by enabling peer-to-peer transactions via mobile phones and other devices.⁵¹ However, the rapid rise of cryptocurrencies also presents significant risks. One major concern is the potential for these digital

⁴⁸ International Labour Organization. (2020). The Future of Jobs Report 2020. Available at: https://www.ilo.org/wcmsp5/groups/public/%2D%2D-dgreports/%2D%2D-cabinet/documents/publication/wcms_752207.pdf.

⁴⁹ Zuboff, S. (2019). The Age of Surveillance Capitalism: The Fight for a Human Future at the New Frontier of Power. PublicAffairs.

⁵⁰ Sharkey, N. (2010). "Saying 'No!' to Lethal Autonomous Targeting." *Journal of Military Ethics*, 9(4), pp. 369–383.

⁵¹ World Bank. (2021). The Global Findex Database 2021: Financial Inclusion and the Fintech Revolution. Available at: <https://globalfindex.worldbank.org>.

currencies to be used for illicit activities, including money laundering, tax evasion, and financing terrorism.⁵² Cryptocurrencies' decentralized nature and relative anonymity make them attractive tools for criminals seeking to circumvent traditional financial regulations. Furthermore, the volatility of cryptocurrency markets poses a risk to financial stability. Bitcoin, for example, has experienced extreme price fluctuations, with its value increasing by over 1000% in 2017 before crashing by more than 80% in the following months.⁵³ Such volatility can undermine confidence in digital currencies and create economic instability, particularly if cryptocurrencies are adopted on a larger scale. Another concern is the potential for cryptocurrencies to destabilize national currencies, particularly in developing economies where financial systems are more fragile. Countries like El Salvador, which adopted Bitcoin as legal tender in 2021, face significant risks as they integrate volatile digital currencies into their economies.⁵⁴ Critics argue that the adoption of Bitcoin could exacerbate existing economic challenges, such as inflation and currency depreciation, further marginalizing vulnerable populations. Moreover, there is the risk that cryptocurrencies could exacerbate wealth inequalities. While advocates argue that digital currencies promote financial inclusion, the reality is that early adopters of cryptocurrencies, particularly those in wealthy countries, have disproportionately benefited from their meteoric rise in value. As with previous technological innovations, the gains from cryptocurrency markets have primarily flowed to a small group of investors and technologists, reinforcing existing wealth disparities.⁵⁵

The dynamic tension between innovation and destruction is a recurring theme throughout the book series, as humanity continues to navigate the complex interplay between technological advancement and its societal impacts. Technological innovations like AI and cryptocurrencies hold the potential to solve some of the world's most pressing problems, from climate change to financial exclusion. However, they also bring with them new risks and challenges, requiring careful governance and ethical considerations. As history has shown, technological progress is not inherently

⁵² Zohar, A. (2015). "Bitcoin: under the hood." *Communications of the ACM*, 58(9), pp. 104–113.

⁵³ Ammous, S. (2018). *The Bitcoin Standard: The Decentralized Alternative to Central Banking*. Wiley.

⁵⁴ Kosse, A., Mattei, I., & Tejada, M. (2021). "El Salvador's adoption of Bitcoin: Challenges and potential impacts." *International Monetary Fund Working Papers*, 21/235.

⁵⁵ Piketty, T. (2014). *Capital in the Twenty-First Century*. Harvard University Press.

good or bad; its impact depends on how it is used and managed. The choices made today will shape the future of humanity, determining whether these innovations will be harnessed for the common good or exacerbate global inequalities and conflicts. The development of nuclear energy, for example, demonstrates how technology can offer sustainable energy solutions but also pose existential threats if misused.⁵⁶ For example, atomic bombs were dropped on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki in order to end World War II in 1945. On August 6, 1945, the United States dropped the first atomic bomb, nicknamed ‘Little Boy’, on the city of Hiroshima. The immediate explosion resulted in an estimated 70,000–80,000 deaths on the day of the bombing, accounting for about 30% of the city’s population.⁵⁷ In the following weeks, months, and years, radiation sickness, burns, and other related injuries increased the death toll to 140,000 by the end of 1945.^{58,59} Long-term effects such as cancer and chronic health problems led to even higher casualties in subsequent decades. Three days later, on August 9, 1945, a second bomb, ‘Fat Man’, was dropped on Nagasaki. The terrain of Nagasaki, which is hillier than Hiroshima, resulted in a slightly reduced blast radius, yet the bomb still caused 40,000–75,000 immediate deaths. By the end of 1945, the death toll was estimated at around 80,000, with long-term effects further increasing this number in the following years due to radiation exposure and related illnesses.^{60,61} The bombings had devastating long-term impacts. Survivors, known as hibakusha, suffered from radiation-induced cancers, genetic damage, and psychological trauma. These events also marked the first and only use of nuclear weapons in warfare, profoundly influencing global political dynamics and leading to the establishment of international non-proliferation efforts.⁶² As nuclear energy can provide benefits to humanity, Artificial Intelligence can optimize healthcare and resource

⁵⁶Rhodes, R. (1986). *The Making of the Atomic Bomb*. Simon & Schuster.

⁵⁷Sherwin, M. J. (2005). *A World Destroyed: Hiroshima and Its Legacies*. Stanford University Press.

⁵⁸Hersey, J. (1946). *Hiroshima*. Alfred A. Knopf.

⁵⁹Lifton, R. J. (1967). *Death in Life: Survivors of Hiroshima*. Random House.

⁶⁰Walker, J. S. (2005). *Prompt and Utter Destruction: Truman and the Use of Atomic Bombs Against Japan*. University of North Carolina Press.

⁶¹Ham, P. (2014). *Hiroshima Nagasaki: The Real Story of the Atomic Bombings and Their Aftermath*. Palgrave Macmillan.

⁶²Rhodes, R. (1986). *The Making of the Atomic Bomb*. Simon & Schuster.

management, yet without proper regulation, it could lead to job displacement and deepen existing inequalities.⁶³

The role of the ‘selfish gene’ explains how genes drive organisms to behave in ways that maximize their own replication.⁶⁴ This concept helps to understand why humans, like other animals, sometimes engage in behaviours that are not solely about survival but also about dominance, competition, and control over resources, which can indirectly enhance reproductive success. Historically, this has led to conflict; competition over territory, resources, and social status often escalates into violence, as seen in ancient tribal warfare and even in modern geopolitical conflicts.^{65,66} These genetic imperatives may have contributed to the evolution of human conflict, where securing resources ensured not just individual survival but the propagation of one’s genes. For instance, the pursuit of social dominance and control over resources like territory or mates has been linked to evolutionary strategies that favour aggressive behaviour.⁶⁷ Even when there is no direct need for food, individuals or groups might act violently to assert dominance and secure their lineage’s future. This instinct for competition, deeply rooted in our biology, could hinder collective action to solve global challenges, such as climate change and resource depletion.

The inherent drive for self-preservation and group loyalty often creates in-group versus out-group dynamics which can lead to the exclusion or exploitation of others.⁶⁸ These dynamics, when scaled globally, manifest as nationalism, ethnic conflicts, and economic protectionism, all of which can stifle international cooperation. For example, the reluctance of some nations to commit to global climate agreements stems from concerns about national economic competitiveness, despite the collective need for action.⁶⁹ Thus, while technological progress provides the tools for a more sustainable future, the human instinct to prioritize self-interest and

⁶³ Brynjolfsson, E., & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

⁶⁴ Dawkins, R. (1976). *The Selfish Gene*. Oxford University Press.

⁶⁵ Keeley, L. H. (1996). *War Before Civilization: The Myth of the Peaceful Savage*. Oxford University Press.

⁶⁶ Pinker, S. (2011). *The Better Angels of Our Nature: Why Violence Has Declined*. Viking.

⁶⁷ Daly, M., & Wilson, M. (1988). *Homicide*. Aldine de Gruyter.

⁶⁸ Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The Social Psychology of Intergroup Relations*.

⁶⁹ Pettenger, M. E. (2007). *The Social Construction of Climate Change: Power, Knowledge, Norms, Discourses*. Ashgate.

immediate gains over long-term, collective benefits presents a significant challenge. Whether the future leads to collaboration or conflict may depend on our ability to overcome these evolutionary predispositions and develop governance structures that promote cooperation over competition. Without such efforts, technological advancements may further entrench global inequalities and drive new forms of conflict over resources, power, and influence.

SPACE EXPLORATION, QUANTUM COMPUTING, AND THE SEARCH FOR SUSTAINABLE SOLUTIONS

As humanity looks beyond Earth, Space Exploration and Space Travel, a chapter in Volume 2 of this series, evaluates this ultimate expression of humanity's creative innovation. The desire to explore and inhabit other planets stems from humanity's innate curiosity and survival instinct. With the development of Quantum Computing, humanity could achieve unprecedented levels of computational power, unlocking new possibilities for space travel and problem-solving on Earth.⁷⁰ However, as discussed in Quantum Computing and Nuclear Fusion, the potential consequences of these advancements must be carefully managed to avoid unintended destruction on a planetary scale. Finally, the search for sustainable solutions is paramount as discussed in the chapter on 'Renewable Energy Technologies'. As global temperatures rise and natural resources are depleted, humanity faces an urgent challenge: harnessing the same cognitive capacities that fuelled past innovations to create new technologies that ensure the survival of future generations. The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change has made it clear that without rapid, unprecedented changes across industries and societies, global temperatures will rise by more than 1.5°C, with catastrophic consequences for ecosystems, economies, and human health.⁷¹ The depletion of natural resources, including fossil fuels, freshwater, and arable land, has intensified the need for technological solutions that can not only mitigate the damage already done but also create sustainable paths forward.

Energy innovation is at the forefront of this technological shift. Fossil fuels, the bedrock of industrial development since the nineteenth century,

⁷⁰Deutsch, D. (1997). *The Fabric of Reality*. Penguin Books.

⁷¹IPCC. (2021). *Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. IPCC.

have driven climate change and environmental degradation. To transition away from this dependence, humanity must innovate in areas such as nuclear fusion, solar power, and wind energy. Fusion energy, often referred to as the ‘holy grail’ of clean energy, has the potential to provide near-limitless power without the greenhouse gas emissions associated with fossil fuels.⁷² Unlike nuclear fission, fusion reactions do not produce long-lived radioactive waste, making them a safer and more sustainable option for future energy needs. While fusion energy remains decades away from commercial viability, the continued investment in projects like the International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor (ITER) in France reflects the global belief in fusion’s potential to revolutionize the energy landscape.⁷³ However, achieving a breakthrough in fusion energy requires significant financial resources and international collaboration, as no single nation can develop this technology in isolation.

Solar power, on the other hand, has already proven to be a transformative technology. Solar energy is now one of the fastest-growing sources of electricity worldwide. According to the International Energy Agency, solar power capacity increased by 22% in 2020, surpassing traditional sources like coal and natural gas in many regions.⁷⁴ This growth has been driven by falling costs, technological improvements, and government incentives that promote renewable energy. Countries like Germany, China, and the United States have invested heavily in solar infrastructure, contributing to the global shift towards cleaner energy sources. However, the uneven adoption of solar technology reflects broader patterns of inequality, where wealthier nations have the capital and technical expertise to implement large-scale renewable energy projects, while developing nations struggle to transition away from fossil fuels due to limited financial and technical resources.⁷⁵ Addressing these disparities will require global cooperation to ensure that all nations have access to the technologies needed to achieve a sustainable future. In addition to energy innovation, the sustainable management of natural resources is crucial for ensuring the survival of future generations. The depletion of freshwater resources, driven by

⁷² Sovacool, B. K., & Ramana, M. V. (2019). “Back to the Future: Small Modular Reactors, Nuclear Fantasies, and Symbolic Convergence.” *Science, Technology, & Human Values*, 44(4), 577–599.

⁷³ ITER. (2020). “Fusion Energy Progress.” Available at: <https://www.iter.org/>.

⁷⁴ IEA. (2021). *World Energy Outlook 2021*. International Energy Agency.

⁷⁵ Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2021). “Climate change and energy security: Unpacking the arguments and mobilizing solutions.” *Energy Research & Social Science*, 79, 102078.

overconsumption, pollution, and climate change, poses significant risks to global food security and human health. The World Bank projects that by 2050, water scarcity could displace up to 700 million people, particularly in regions such as the Middle East and North Africa, where water stress is already a critical issue. Innovative solutions, such as desalination technologies and water recycling systems, are becoming increasingly important in addressing the growing demand for freshwater.⁷⁶ Advances in Biotechnology, including genetically modified crops that require less water and are more resistant to drought, offer additional pathways for enhancing food security in a warming world.⁷⁷ However, the introduction of genetically modified organisms (GMOs) into agricultural systems has sparked debate about their long-term impact on biodiversity and ecological stability. As with any technological innovation, the responsible development and use of GMOs will require careful regulation to balance the need for increased agricultural productivity with the protection of natural ecosystems. Moreover, responsible innovation extends beyond energy and resource management. The rise of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics has the potential to revolutionize industries, improve efficiencies, and create new economic opportunities. AI can optimize energy grids, predict extreme weather events, and develop more accurate climate models, helping to mitigate the impacts of climate change.⁷⁸ However, the ethical implications of AI, particularly in areas such as job displacement and autonomous weapons systems, highlight the risks of unchecked technological advancement.⁷⁹ Ensuring that AI and other emerging technologies are developed and deployed in ways that promote equity and protect human rights will be essential for building a sustainable future.

Ultimately, the future of human civilization depends on our ability to innovate responsibly. Technological advancements must be guided by a

⁷⁶Damania, R., Desbureaux, S., Hyland, M., Islam, A., Moore, S., Rodella, A.-S., Russ, J., & Zaveri, E. (2017). *Uncharted Waters: The New Economics of Water Scarcity and Variability*. Washington, DC: The World Bank. Available at: <https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/28096>.

⁷⁷Fedoroff, N. V., Battisti, D. S., Beachy, R. N., Cooper, P. J. M., Fischhoff, D. A., Hodges, C. N., Knauf, V. C., Lobell, D., Mazur, B. J., Molden, D., Reynolds, M. P., Ronald, P. C., Rosegrant, M. W., Sanchez, P. A., Vonshak, A. & Ziegler, A. D. (2010) 'Radically rethinking agriculture for the 21st century', *Science*, 327(5967), 833–834.

⁷⁸Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

⁷⁹Brynjolfsson, E. & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

commitment to sustainability, equity, and global cooperation. The choices humanity makes in the coming decades—whether in the development of fusion energy, the expansion of solar power, or the governance of Artificial Intelligence—will determine whether future generations inherit a liveable planet. As history has shown, human ingenuity is capable of both creation and destruction. The challenge now is to harness that ingenuity for the greater good, ensuring that the technologies of tomorrow contribute to a sustainable and equitable future for all.

CONCLUSION: THE DUAL-EDGED SWORD OF INNOVATION

This chapter effectively presents the trajectory of human evolution, highlighting how *Homo sapiens*' cognitive development has positioned humanity at the apex of life on Earth. However, the evaluation makes it clear that this evolutionary success is a double-edged sword. While human creativity and innovation have led to significant technological and societal advancements, they have also precipitated grave ecological, social, and ethical crises. This paradox underpins the narrative of the Anthropocene, an era dominated by human impact on Earth's ecosystems.⁸⁰ From the dawn of agriculture to the heights of space exploration, the capacity for technological innovation has shaped and reshaped human civilization. The domestication of plants and animals was a transformative event, enabling the rise of complex societies and economic systems. However, the same innovations have fostered overexploitation of natural resources, contributing to environmental degradation and a warming climate. The discussion adeptly points out that while the invention of agriculture laid the groundwork for civilization, it also initiated humanity's exploitative relationship with nature, which continues to have profound consequences in the twenty-first century.

Humanity's capacity to innovate has also brought about the capacity for destruction. The rapid advancements in Artificial Intelligence, Biotechnology, and Quantum Computing offer unparalleled opportunities to solve global challenges but carry inherent risks. For instance, the development of nuclear technology epitomizes the balance between innovation for good

⁸⁰ Steffen, W., Broadgate, W., Deutsch, L., Gaffney, O., & Ludwig, C. (2011). "The Anthropocene: Conceptual and historical perspectives." *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences*, 369(1938), 842–867.

and the potential for catastrophic destruction.⁸¹ The bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki underscored the existential threats that nuclear weapons pose, and the potential for global nuclear conflict remains a pressing concern. Similarly, advancements in Artificial Intelligence (AI) present a significant ethical dilemma. While AI promises to revolutionize healthcare, logistics, and climate science,^{82,83} it also poses profound risks related to job displacement, privacy, and the dehumanization of decision-making, particularly in military applications.⁸⁴ As the narrative explains, AI's potential to automate warfare through autonomous weapons raises significant ethical concerns. If not governed properly, AI could exacerbate global inequalities and create new forms of social stratification, particularly between nations with advanced AI infrastructure and those without.⁸⁵ The discussion of genetic engineering, particularly CRISPR technology, also highlights the tension between creation and destruction. While CRISPR offers the potential to cure genetic diseases,⁸⁶ it also raises concerns about the ethics of gene editing in humans, particularly in relation to 'designer babies'. If access to genetic modification remains unequal, the risk of entrenching social inequalities at the genetic level is substantial.

The theme of ecological destruction is central to the book thesis that human cognition can lead to constructive as well as destructive end, particularly in its discussion of the Anthropocene. This introduction underscores the fact that humanity's unsustainable exploitation of the environment has led to biodiversity loss, climate change, and resource depletion. The ongoing destruction of ecosystems, such as deforestation in the Amazon, serves as a stark reminder of the environmental costs of

⁸¹ Sagan, S. D. (1996). *The Limits of Safety: Organizations, Accidents, and Nuclear Weapons*. Princeton University Press.

⁸² Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

⁸³ DeepMind. (2019). "Wind power now predictably on the grid thanks to machine learning." Available at: <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/machine-learning-can-boost-value-wind-energy>.

⁸⁴ Asaro, P. (2012). "On banning autonomous weapon systems: Human rights, automation, and the dehumanization of lethal decision-making." *International Review of the Red Cross*, 94(886), 687–709.

⁸⁵ Brynjolfsson, E., & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

⁸⁶ Doudna, J. A., & Sternberg, S. H. (2017). *A Crack in Creation: Gene Editing and the Unthinkable Power to Control Evolution*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

unchecked human innovation.⁸⁷ The evaluation suggests that while technologies such as AI, renewable energy, and nuclear fusion offer potential solutions to these problems, they also require careful governance and global cooperation to prevent further environmental harm. Finally, the discussion on exploration of space as a potential solution to Earth's challenges highlights the allure of escaping the consequences of industrialisation and climate change. Figures like Elon Musk have championed Mars colonization as a safeguard against existential threats.⁸⁸ Yet, this notion is rightly critiqued arguing that the resources devoted to space colonization could be better spent addressing the immediate problems of climate change, poverty, and inequality on Earth. The question of whether space exploration is a legitimate solution or an escapist fantasy remains open, but the chapter emphasizes the need for a balanced approach to technological progress.

This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the dual-edged nature of human innovation. While technological progress has enabled human flourishing, it has also created the conditions for potential self-destruction. The key challenge for the future of human civilization lies in the ability to harness innovation responsibly, ensuring that technological advancements are used to promote sustainability, equity, and global cooperation. Without such oversight, the very tools that have driven human progress could become the instruments of our undoing. The question remains, can humanity overcome the individual desire to survive and pass on genes to future generations which often leads to conflicts, in order to build a society through a mechanism of collective action in the knowledge that the use of emerging technologies through this mechanism will sustain human civilization?

REFERENCES

- Ammous, S. (2018). *The Bitcoin standard: The decentralized alternative to central banking*. Wiley.
- Asaro, P. (2012). On banning autonomous weapon systems: Human rights, automation, and the dehumanization of lethal decision-making. *International Review of the Red Cross*, 94(886), 687–709.

⁸⁷ Lovejoy, T. E., & Nobre, C. (2019). "Amazon tipping point: Last chance for action." *Science Advances*, 5(12), eaax893.

⁸⁸ Musk, E. (2017). "Making Humans a Multi-Planetary Species." *New Space*, 5(2), 46–61.

- Boström, N. (2014). *Superintelligence: Paths, dangers, strategies*. Oxford University Press.
- Brynjolfsson, E., & McAfee, A. (2014). *The second machine age: Work, progress, and prosperity in a time of brilliant technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- Daly, M., & Wilson, M. (1988). *Homicide*. Aldine de Gruyter.
- Damania, R., Desbureaux, S., Hyland, M., Islam, A., Moore, S., Rodella, A.-S., Russ, J., & Zaveri, E. (2017). *Uncharted waters: The new economics of water scarcity and variability*. The World Bank. <https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/28096>
- Dawkins, R. (1976). *The selfish gene*. Oxford University Press.
- DeepMind. (2019). Wind power now predictably on the grid thanks to machine learning. <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/machine-learning-can-boost-value-wind-energy>
- Deutsch, D. (1997). *The fabric of reality*. Penguin Books.
- Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, germs, and steel: The fates of human societies*. W. W. Norton & Company.
- Diamond, J. (2011). *Collapse: How societies choose to fail or succeed*. Penguin.
- Doudna, J. A., & Sternberg, S. H. (2017). *A crack in creation: Gene editing and the unthinkable power to control evolution*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.
- Fedoroff, N. V., Battisti, D. S., Beachy, R. N., Cooper, P. J. M., Fischhoff, D. A., Hodges, C. N., Knauf, V. C., Lobell, D., Mazur, B. J., Molden, D., Reynolds, M. P., Ronald, P. C., Rosegrant, M. W., Sanchez, P. A., Vonshak, A., & Ziegler, A. D. (2010). ‘Radically rethinking agriculture for the 21st century’, *Science*, 327(5967), 833–834.
- Foresight. (2011). *Migration and global environmental change*. The Government Office for Science.
- Ham, P. (2014). *Hiroshima Nagasaki: The real story of the atomic bombings and their aftermath*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Harari, Y. N. (2014). *Sapiens: A brief history of humankind*. Harper.
- Hersey, J. (1946). *Hiroshima*. Alfred A. Knopf.
- IEA. (2021). *World energy outlook 2021*. International Energy Agency.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2021). *Climate change 2021: The physical science basis. Contribution of working group I to the sixth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change*. Cambridge University Press.
- International Labour Organization. (2020). The future of jobs report 2020. https://www.ilo.org/wcmsp5/groups/public/%2D%2D-dgreports/%2D%2D-cabinet/documents/publication/wcms_752207.pdf
- IPCC. (2021). *Sixth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change*. IPCC.
- ITER. (2020). Fusion energy progress. <https://www.iter.org/>
- Keeley, L. H. (1996). *War before civilization: The myth of the peaceful savage*. Oxford University Press.

- Kelley, C. P., Mohtadi, S., Cane, M. A., Seager, R., & Kushnir, Y. (2015). Climate change in the Fertile Crescent and implications of the recent Syrian drought. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 112(11), 3241–3246.
- Kosse, A., Mattei, I., & Tejada, M. (2021). El Salvador's adoption of Bitcoin: Challenges and potential impacts. *International Monetary Fund Working Papers*, 21/235.
- Lifton, R. J. (1967). *Death in life: Survivors of Hiroshima*. Random House.
- Lovejoy, T. E., & Nobre, C. (2019). Amazon tipping point: Last chance for action. *Science Advances*, 5(12), eaax893.
- Masanet, E., Shehabi, A., Lei, N., Smith, S., & Koomey, J. (2020). Recalibrating global data center energy-use estimates. *Science*, 367(6481), 984–986.
- McNeill, J. R., & Engelke, P. (2014). *The great acceleration: An environmental history of the anthropocene since 1945*. Harvard University Press.
- Mithen, S. (1996). *The prehistory of the mind: The cognitive origins of art, religion and science*. Thames and Hudson.
- Musk, E. (2017). Making humans a multi-planetary species. *New Space*, 5(2), 46–61.
- Narayanan, A., Bonneau, J., Felten, E., Miller, A., & Goldfeder, S. (2016). *Bitcoin and cryptocurrency technologies: A comprehensive introduction*. Princeton University Press.
- Niang, I., Ruppel, O. C., Abdrabo, M. A., Essel, A., Lennard, C., Padgham, J., & Urquhart, P. (2014). Africa. In V. R. Barros et al. (Eds.), *Climate change 2014: Impacts, adaptation, and vulnerability*. Cambridge University Press.
- Pettenger, M. E. (2007). *The social construction of climate change: Power, knowledge, norms, discourses*. Ashgate.
- Piketty, T. (2014). *Capital in the twenty-first century*. Harvard University Press.
- Pinker, S. (2011). *The better angels of our nature: Why violence has declined*. Viking.
- Rhodes, R. (1986). *The making of the atomic bomb*. Simon & Schuster.
- Rigaud, K. K., de Sherbinin, A., Jones, B., Bergmann, J., Clement, V., Ober, K., Schewe, J., Adamo, S., McCusker, B., Heuser, S., & Midgley, A. (2018). *Groundswell: Preparing for internal climate migration*. The World Bank. <https://openknowledge.worldbank.org/handle/10986/29461>
- Sagan, S. D. (1996). *The limits of safety: Organizations, accidents, and nuclear weapons*. Princeton University Press.
- Sandel, M. J. (2007). *The case against perfection: Ethics in the age of genetic engineering*. Harvard University Press.
- Schneider, S. H. (2019). *Science as a contact sport: Inside the battle to save Earth's climate*. National Geographic Society.
- Schwab, K. (2016). *The fourth industrial revolution*. Penguin Random House.
- Sharkey, N. (2010). Saying 'no!' to lethal autonomous targeting. *Journal of Military Ethics*, 9(4), 369–383.

- Sherwin, M. J. (2005). *A world destroyed: Hiroshima and its legacies*. Stanford University Press.
- Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2020). The costs of climate mitigation and the politics of escape: The planetary boundaries of Elon Musk’s Mars vision. *Energy Research & Social Science*, 70, 101676.
- Steffen, W., Broadgate, W., Deutsch, L., Gaffney, O., & Ludwig, C. (2011). The anthropocene: Conceptual and historical perspectives. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A*, 369(1938), 842–867.
- Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The social psychology of intergroup relations*. Brooks/Cole.
- Tattersall, I. (2017). *The strange case of the Ricketty Cossack: And other cautionary tales from human evolution*. St. Martin’s Press.
- Tegmark, M. (2017). *Life 3.0: Being human in the age of artificial intelligence*. Knopf.
- Topol, E. (2019). *Deep medicine: How artificial intelligence can make healthcare human again*. Basic Books.
- United Nations Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD). (2020). *Global biodiversity outlook 5*. Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity. <https://www.cbd.int/gbo5>
- United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR). (2021). Climate change and disaster displacement. <https://www.unhcr.org/climate-change-and-disasters.html>
- Walker, J. S. (2005). *Prompt and utter destruction: Truman and the use of atomic bombs against Japan*. University of North Carolina Press.
- World Bank. (2018). *Uncharted waters: The new economics of water scarcity and variability*. The World Bank.
- World Bank. (2021). The Global Findex Database 2021: Financial inclusion and the Fintech revolution. <https://globalfindex.worldbank.org>
- Zohar, A. (2015). Bitcoin: Under the hood. *Communications of the ACM*, 58(9), 104–113.
- Zuboff, S. (2019). *The age of surveillance capitalism: The fight for a human future at the new Frontier of power*. PublicAffairs.



CHAPTER 2

The Rise of Homo sapiens

Shrew-like creatures which lived around 150 million years ago are the ancestors of humans and mammals.¹ Aquatic worms which lived over 600 million years ago are the ancestors of all amphibians, mammals, birds, reptiles, and fishes. Furthermore, the bacteria-like organisms which lived over three million years ago are the ‘parents’ of all living plants and animals.² The theory of evolution suggests that creatures evolve over time and acquire anatomical features and behaviours over time in response to adapting to their environment through processes associated with the biological pathways of genetic change. Due to the process of evolutionary change, after several successive splits from preceding family groups, the family ‘Hominoidea’ resulted. This family split over time to form the family groups of ‘Hominidae’ and ‘Pongidae’. These families sub-divided into ‘Homo’ and ‘Pongo, Gorilla, and Pan’ respectively. Some studies have found that the divergence time between ‘Homo’ and the great apes is between eleven and fourteen million years.³ On the other hand, other

¹ Ayala, F., and Cela-Conde, C. (2017), *Processes in Human Evolution: The journey from early hominins to Neanderthals and modern humans*, Oxford University Press, New York.

² Ayala, F., and Cela-Conde, C. (2017), *Processes in Human Evolution: The journey from early hominins to Neanderthals and modern humans*, Oxford University Press, New York.

³ Venn, O., Turner, I., Mathieson, I., de Groot, N., Bontrop, R., and McVean, G. (2014), *Strong male bias drives germline mutation in chimpanzees*, *Science*, 344 (6189): 1272–1275.

studies have found the divergence time between 'Homo' and 'Gorilla' to be about 7.2 million years, while the divergence time between 'Homo' and 'Pan' (chimpanzee) is about 4.7 million years.⁴ The genome DNA of humans and Chimpanzees is 98% to 99% similar.⁵ According to the latter, the implication of this difference is that since the divergence between the Chimpanzees and humans, 3% or ninety million nucleotides have either been replaced. The change in DNA nucleotides between Chimpanzees and humans is mainly associated with the non-coding DNA, which is associated with the development process.⁶ The non-coding DNA which humans have and Chimpanzees do not have is associated with brain development.⁷ Fossils found in Africa and attributed to belonging to *Homo habilis* reputed to the first incarnation of the genus 'Homo'. *Homo habilis* had a bigger brain than another earlier hominin, the *Australopithecines*. Archaeological evidence suggests that the *Australopithecines* may have practised butchery as cut marks have been found on the fossil bones of animals.⁸ The eating of meat by *Australopithecines* may have helped the evolutionary transition to *Homo habilis*.⁹ Although *Australopithecines* may have used crudely shaped rocks as knives to butcher animal carcasses, either hunted or the remains of kills by other animals, it is recognized that *Homo habilis* was the first maker of stone tools.¹⁰ However, there has been controversy surrounding *Homo habilis*, which may just not represent one hominin species but several co-existing in Africa between 2 and 1.6 million years ago.¹¹ The latter suggests that due to this controversy, the theory that two different species of early hominin gave rise to the next incarnations of the genus 'Homo', *Homo erectus* and *Homo sapiens*.

⁴ Takahata, N., Satta, Y., and Klein, J. (1995), Divergence Time and Population Size in the Lineage Leading to Modern Humans, *Theoretical Population Biology*, Volume 48, Issue 2, pp. 198–221.

⁵ Ayala, F., and Cela-Conde, C. (2017), *Processes in Human Evolution: The journey from early hominins to Neanderthals and modern humans*, Oxford University Press, New York.

⁶ Ibid.

⁷ Khaitovich, P., Hellman, I., Enard, W., Nowick, K., Leinweber, M., Franz, H., Weiss, G., Lachmann, M., and Paabo, S. (2005), *Parallel Patterns of Evolution in the Genomes and Transcriptomes of Humans and Chimpanzees*, Vol.309, Science.

⁸ Fleagle, J. (2013), *Primate Adaptation & Evolution*, Elsevier, London.

⁹ Wrangham, R. (2010), *Catching Fire: How Cooking Made Us Human*, Profile Books Ltd, London.

¹⁰ Bunney, S. (1988), Will the real *Homo habilis* stand up? *New Scientist*, No.1636.

¹¹ Ibid.

However, supposedly distinct species, based on skeletal differences, such as *Homo rudolfensis* could easily be included within the classification of *Homo habilis* if sexual dimorphism is accepted.¹² Sexual dimorphism refers to the physical differences between males and females in the same species. The next incarnation species in the genus ‘Homo’ was *Homo erectus*. This species was regarded as the intermediate link between early hominins and *Homo sapiens*.¹³ However, according to the latter, *Homo erectus* may be representative of itself and another species, *Homo ergaster*. With the latter being the immediate predecessor to *Homo erectus*, a species with new intellectual abilities and the capacity to leave Africa, the first hominin to do so, arose in Africa about two million years ago.¹⁴ The latter suggests that the move out to Africa, first to Asia and then to Europe, occurred about one million years ago. *Homo erectus* had a larger body frame compared to *Homo habilis*, as well as a larger brain. The move out of Africa could have occurred because of the need for *Homo erectus* to find new sources of food, perhaps due to a population explosion. In addition to extending its range beyond Africa and in comparison, to its predecessors, *Homo erectus* exhibited innovative behaviour in many ways. These included the first use of fire, systematic hunting, systematic tool making, the use of a consistent location to live, and the first indication of an extended childhood.¹⁵ The use of fire may have helped *Homo erectus* to cook meat. This allowed the meat to become more digestible, allowing nutrients in the meat to be absorbed and processed more easily by the body.¹⁶ This in turn facilitated the increase in the brain size of *Homo erectus*. This gave this species increased cognitive capacity and therefore the ability to live a more complex life than its ancestors. *Homo erectus* was the first hominin species to exhibit a nomadic, hunter-gatherer existence. This kind of behaviour would diffuse across time to be exhibited by his direct descendant, *Homo sapiens*. *Homo erectus* was followed by *Homo*

¹² Arsuaga, J., and Martinez, I. (1998), *The Chosen Species: The Long March of Human Evolution*, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

¹³ Lewin, R. (2005), *Human Evolution: An Illustrated Introduction*, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

¹⁴ Ibid.

¹⁵ Lewin, R. (2005), *Human Evolution: An Illustrated Introduction*, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

¹⁶ Wrangham, R. (2010), *Catching Fire: How Cooking Made Us Human*, Profile Books Ltd, London.

heidelbergensis, which was a species very similar skeletally to *Homo neanderthalensis*.¹⁷ This is perhaps because *Homo neanderthalensis* is the direct descendant of *Homo heidelbergensis*, and this species may have given rise to a third archaic human species, the Denisovans.¹⁸ However, there is not much fossilized evidence of the Denisovans, except a finger bone from which DNA was extracted for analysis. Modern-day Southeast Asians share 5% of Denisovan DNA.¹⁹ However, of the two species, *Homo neanderthalensis* evolved in Europe over several hundred thousand years. The species managed to survive until up to 30,000 to 24,000 years ago when the last of the species died in Iberia to where the species had been pushed by the ever-expanding groups of *Homo sapiens*, diffusing out of Africa through the Near East, Anatolia, and then into Europe, Asia, and the rest of the world. On the other hand, *Homo neanderthalensis* tended to stay in the valleys in which they were born and grew, although females may have moved from one group to another for mating practices.²⁰ The latter also suggests that *Homo neanderthalensis* did not travel far in order to source raw materials, maintained a small social network, and may have had cannibalistic tendencies. The young of *Homo neanderthalensis* matured more quickly than their *Homo sapiens* counterparts, typically by the age of fourteen.²¹ As a group, according to the latter, *Homo neanderthalensis* were less able to benefit from a division of labour as the entire group would join in the hunt for animals for meat. But there tended to be more division of labour amongst *Homo sapiens* groups. This ensured that for *Homo sapiens* a diversity of food resources ranging from plant matter to meat could be accumulated over a period of time. The *Homo sapiens* population would then be better able to balance and change their dietary intake as dictated by the environment.²²

¹⁷ Sarmiento, E., Sawyer, G., and Milner, R. (2007), *The Last Human: A Guide to Twenty-Two Species of Extinct Humans*, Yale University Press, London.

¹⁸ Coolidge, F., and Wynn, T. (2018), *The Rise of Homo sapiens: The Evolution of Modern Thinking*, Oxford University Press, New York.

¹⁹ Ibid.

²⁰ Ibid.

²¹ Coolidge, F., and Wynn, T. (2018), *The Rise of Homo sapiens: The Evolution of Modern Thinking*, Oxford University Press, New York.

²² Ibid.

BIPEDALISM AND MANUAL DEXTERITY AND BRAIN SIZE

While the use of fire and the subsequent ability to cook food, including meat, likely played a role in the increased brain size of *Homo erectus*, it is not the sole factor. Bipedalism and manual dexterity also contributed significantly to the evolutionary changes that led to the expansion of brain size in *Homo erectus*, and later, in *Homo sapiens*.

The ability to control fire did indeed enable *Homo erectus* to cook meat, making it easier to digest and allowing for more efficient absorption of nutrients.²³ Cooked meat provided more calories and essential nutrients, such as fats and proteins, which are vital for brain development. This increase in energy intake allowed for the development of a larger brain, as the brain is one of the most energy-demanding organs in the body.²⁴ The correlation between the use of fire and brain expansion is supported by archaeological evidence, which suggests that *Homo erectus* began controlling fire around 1.5 million years ago.²⁵ This control of fire had profound social and cultural implications, as it likely fostered greater social interaction and cooperation around campfires, which were important in the evolution of human communication and social structures.²⁶ However, bipedalism, which pre-dated the control of fire, also played a critical role in the evolution of *Homo erectus*. Walking upright freed the hands for other activities, including the manipulation of tools, which contributed to the development of manual dexterity.²⁷ This transition to bipedalism allowed early hominins to engage in complex foraging and hunting behaviours, which, combined with tool use, were vital for survival. Bipedalism also influenced other anatomical adaptations, such as changes in the spine, pelvis, and lower limbs, which enabled more efficient long-distance travel, an essential trait for scavenging and hunting.²⁸

²³ Wrangham, R.W., 2009. *Catching Fire: How Cooking Made Us Human*. Basic Books.

²⁴ Aiello, L.C. and Wheeler, P., 1995. 'The Expensive Tissue Hypothesis: The Brain and the Digestive System in Human and Primate Evolution', *Current Anthropology*, 36(2), pp.199–221.

²⁵ Gowlett, J.A.J., 2016. 'The Discovery of Fire by Humans: A Long and Convoluted Process', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 371(1696), p.20150164.

²⁶ Dunbar, R. (2014), *Human Evolution: Our Brains and Behavior*. Oxford University Press.

²⁷ Lovejoy, C.O. (1981), 'The Origin of Man', *Science*, 211(4480), pp.341–350.

²⁸ Rodman, P.S. and McHenry, H.M. (1980), 'Bioenergetics and the Origin of Bipedalism', *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 52(1), pp.103–106.

The development of manual dexterity, particularly the evolution of the opposable thumb, further facilitated the creation and use of increasingly complex tools. The ability to manipulate objects with precision enabled *Homo erectus* to engage in more complex foraging and hunting strategies, which required advanced cognitive abilities, such as spatial awareness and memory.²⁹ The cognitive demands of making and using tools likely stimulated neural development, contributing to the expansion of brain size.³⁰ Furthermore, tool use was not only physically demanding but also required the capacity for abstract thought and forward planning, abilities that are closely linked to larger brain sizes in early hominins.³¹ The combination of bipedalism and manual dexterity allowed *Homo erectus* to thrive in diverse environments, fostering the development of social cooperation and communication—factors that further enhanced the brain size. As social groups became larger and more complex, early humans required greater cognitive abilities to manage social relationships, leading to the further expansion of brain size.³² The cognitive demands of living in increasingly complex social groups may have driven the selection for larger brains, a process that continued in *Homo sapiens*. These evolutionary developments had significant implications for the rise of *Homo sapiens*. The increased brain size and cognitive abilities that began with *Homo erectus* were carried forward and further developed in *Homo sapiens*, enabling more sophisticated behaviours such as language, culture, and social structures. The expansion of brain size in early humans laid the foundation for the cognitive revolution that allowed *Homo sapiens* to dominate other species and create complex societies.³³ This cognitive revolution, which likely occurred around 70,000 years ago, enabled *Homo sapiens* to think abstractly, collaborate on large scales, and develop

²⁹ Marzke, M.W. (1997), 'Precision grips, hand morphology, and tools', *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(1), pp.91–110.

³⁰ Wynn, T. (2002), 'Archaeology and cognitive evolution', *Behavioural and Brain Sciences*, 25(3), pp.389–402.

³¹ Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K. and Chaminade, T. (2008), 'Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: technology, language and cognition in human evolution', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), pp.1939–1949.

³² Dunbar, R. (2014), *Human Evolution: Our Brains and Behavior*. Oxford University Press.

³³ Holloway, R.L. (1967), 'The Evolution of the Human Brain: Some Notes Toward a Synthesis Between Neural Structure and the Evolution of Complex Behavior', *General Systems*, 12, pp. 3–19.

advanced technologies, setting the stage for the development of civilization.³⁴ Thus, while the use of fire to cook meat played an important role in increasing the brain size of *Homo erectus*, it was not the only factor. Bipedalism and manual dexterity were equally critical in driving the cognitive evolution that eventually led to the rise of *Homo sapiens*. The combination of these factors allowed early humans to adapt to their environments, form complex social structures, and develop the cognitive abilities that define modern humanity.

THE EMERGENCE OF HOMO SAPIENS

The main anatomical differences between *Homo neanderthalensis* and *Homo sapiens* lie in the skeletal frame and the structure of the brain, although the brain of the former was bigger than that of the latter.³⁵ *Homo neanderthalensis* was stockier, shorter, and more muscular than *Homo sapiens*. However, there are many differences between the structures of the brains of the two species. Compared to the brain of *Homo sapiens*, the brain of *Homo neanderthalensis* had smaller olfactory bulbs, larger occipital cortices, narrower orbitofrontal cortices, narrower temporal lobes with less forward-projecting temporal lobes.³⁶ The olfactory bulbs encoded smell information from the nose to be sent to the brain. The occipital cortices were involved in the processing of information by the eyes. The orbitofrontal cortices were involved in decision making. The cerebellum was involved in the coherent co-ordination of limb movements. And the temporal lobes were involved in the processing and interpretation of sensory input so that it may be retained as memory. The structural differences between the brains of *Homo neanderthalensis* and *Homo sapiens* suggest that the former had a lower capacity for the retention in memory of sensory input, was less able to co-ordinate limb movements (was awkward), was indecisive and better able to process visual information, but less able to smell ‘danger’. In the context of differences in the structure of the brains of the two species, in a conflict between the

³⁴ Harari, Y.N. (2014), *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*. Harper.

³⁵ Dunbar, R. (2014), *Human Evolution: Our Brains and Behavior*. Oxford University Press.

³⁶ Wynn, T., Overmann, K., and Coolidge, F. (2016), The False Dichotomy; A Refutation of the Neanderthal Indistinguishability Claim, *Journal of Anthropological Sciences*, Vol.94, pp.201–221.

two species, *Homo sapiens* would have the advantage. This perhaps explains why *Homo neanderthalensis* was unable to survive in the face of competition from *Homo sapiens*. However, *Homo neanderthalensis* did exhibit some recognizable innovation in the context of developing ‘hafting’, attach handles to tools.³⁷ The latter suggests that *Homo neanderthalensis* also used the Levallois Technology, a method of using rocks to chip away at other rocks of a specific kind in order to create sharp edges for cutting.

While *Homo neanderthalensis* and *Homo sapiens* were co-existing contemporaries, *Homo erectus* was the direct descendant of both species. This may have arisen because of location-specific speciation in a group or multi-local speciation. For *Homo neanderthalensis*, speciation is more likely to have occurred in Europe from *Homo erectus* with *Homo heidelbergensis* acting as an intermediary. On the other hand, for *Homo sapiens* it is likely that speciation occurred in a group in Africa from where *Homo sapiens* moved out of Africa to inhabit other parts of the world. Location-specific speciation and multi-local specification represent two models of evolution.³⁸ On the balance, recent genetic evidence suggests that all the *Homo sapiens* on the planet today evolved from a small group in Africa between 180,000 years and 150,000 years ago.³⁹ This small group of early *Homo sapiens* which itself originated from one ‘Adam’ and ‘Eve’, with the ‘Eve’ appearing 80,000 years before the ‘Adam’.⁴⁰ *Homo sapiens* began to leave Africa 100,000 to 60,000 years ago and spread to Europe and Asia, reaching the Americas only 15,000 years ago.⁴¹ The migration out of Africa may have started due to climatic changes.⁴² A possible route out of Africa could have been through the present Red Sea, where in those times the sea levels would have been lower, allowing a

³⁷ Coolidge, F., and Wynn, T. (2018), *The Rise of Homo sapiens: The Evolution of Modern Thinking*, Oxford University Press, New York.

³⁸ Lewin, R. (2005), *Human Evolution: An Illustrated Introduction*, Blackwell Publishing, Oxford.

³⁹ Cartwright, J. (2016), *Evolution and Human Behaviour; Darwinian Perspectives on the Human Condition*, Palgrave Macmillan, New York.

⁴⁰ Wells, S. (2017), *The Journey of Man: A Genetic Odyssey*, Princeton University Press, Princeton.

⁴¹ Cartwright, J. (2016), *Evolution and Human Behaviour; Darwinian Perspectives on the Human Condition*, Palgrave Macmillan, New York.

⁴² Tierney, J., de Menocal, P., and Zander, P. (2017), A Climatic Context for the out of Africa migration, *Geology*, 45, 11, pp.1023–1026.

migration path for the first Homo sapiens to emerge from Africa. Waves and waves followed over subsequent millennia, using the coasts of the landmass to get to Australia 40,000 years ago. Innovativeness and adaptability allow the new Homo sapiens settlers to settle into diverse habitats, from hot to the extreme cold of Siberia. Crude sewing needles were developed to produce the clothing, from animal skins, needed to survive in extreme sub-zero temperatures. Crude structures, in the modern context, were built from timber and animal hides to live in. The racial diversity seen in modern-day humanity is a relatively recent phenomenon in the context of human evolution. Up to 15,000 years ago the migrating Homo sapiens were of one type of colour and facial features.⁴³ Racial differentiation has only happened within the last 15,000 years.

EARLY CIVILIZATIONS

Gobekli Tepe: 10,000 BC

It has long been considered that settled farming came before religion. Furthermore, the reasons why Homo sapiens as a hunter gatherer gave way to farming and animal husbandry at a single location have been a subject of debate. However, the Neolithic archaeological site at Gobekli Tepe may finally be able to settle this debate. Before the discovery of Gobekli Tepe, it had been thought that the Neolithic Revolution had been a moment of ‘genius’ in which the domestication of wild plants and animals occurred at a single site in the lands of present-day southern Iraq.⁴⁴ Perhaps this flash of genius could have been brought about by environmental change, which limited the quantity of wild plants which could be collected for consumption as well as reducing the availability of wild animals which could have migrated to other areas.

Gobekli Tepe is 15km north of the city of Sanliurfa in the southeast of modern-day Turkey. Archaeologists consider Gobekli Tepe to be the most ancient archaeological site to be found anywhere in the world.⁴⁵ However,

⁴³ Roberts, A. (2009), *The Incredible Human Journey*, Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.

⁴⁴ Mann, C. (2011), *The Birth of Religion*, National Geographic Magazine, <http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/print/2011/06/gobekli-tepe/mann-text>.

⁴⁵ Debertolis, P., Gulla, D., and Savolainen, H. (2017), *Archaeoacoustic Analysis in Enclosure D at Gobekli Tepe in South Anatolia, Turkey*, History and Archaeology, The 5th Human and Social Sciences at the Common Conference.

there may be even older archaeological sites which have yet to be found. When Gobekli Tepe was under construction between 9600BC and 9500BC, a mini-ice age was coming to an end in Europe.⁴⁶ According to the latter, Gobekli Tepe pre-dates the pyramids of ancient Egypt by at least 7000 years. The site constituted megalithic blocks, each weighing 7 to 50 tons in weight, with intricate carvings of animals, arms, hands, and clothing.^{47,48} The carvings of animals depicted insects, snakes, bulls, foxes, boars, and gazelles.⁴⁹ This animal symbolism might suggest that the rituals and rites celebrated at Gobekli Tepe were perhaps associated with nature. Some of the megalithic stones were over 18ft in height.⁵⁰ The latter suggests that in the area surrounding the megalithic stones, a large variety of ancient flint tools such as knives, axes, and spearhead points were also found. Moreover, at the site, archaeologists have also found a miniature Sphinx, with similar characteristics to the giant Sphinx of ancient Egypt, 7000 years later.⁵¹ Nevertheless, the hunter gatherers who built Gobekli Tepe did so without any knowledge of writing, pottery, and metal.⁵² However, the builders of Gobekli Tepe were innovative enough to develop the technology associated with stone masonry.⁵³ Nevertheless, linguistic expression in written form did not emerge until 3000BC, up to 6000 years after the completion of Gobekli Tepe.⁵⁴ It is now regarded as a site used for worship, celebrating and feasting and not as a permanent home.⁵⁵

⁴⁶ Collins, A. (2014), *Gobekli Tepe: Genesis of the Gods: The temple of the Watchers and the Discovery of Eden*, Bear & Company, Rochester, Vermont, USA.

⁴⁷ Vinter, J.C. (2011), *Ancient Earth Mysteries*, AEM Publishing.

⁴⁸ Notroff, J., Dietrich, O., Dietrich, L., Tvetmarken, C., Kinzel, M., Schindwein, J., Sanmez, D., and Clare, L. (2017), *Mediterranean Archaeology and Archaeometry*, Vol. 17, No. 2, pp.57–74.

⁴⁹ Ibid.

⁵⁰ Mann, C. (2011), *The Birth of Religion*, National Geographic Magazine, <http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/print/2011/06/gobekli-tepe/mann-text>.

⁵¹ Vinter, J.C. (2011), *Ancient Earth Mysteries*, AEM Publishing.

⁵² Mann, C. (2011), *The Birth of Religion*, National Geographic Magazine, <http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/print/2011/06/gobekli-tepe/mann-text>.

⁵³ Scranton, L. (2014), *China's Cosmological Prehistory: The Sophisticated Science Encoded in Civilisation's Earliest Symbols*, Simon & Schuster.

⁵⁴ Ibid.

⁵⁵ Schmidt, K. (2010), *Gobekli Tepe – the Stone Age Sanctuaries: New results of ongoing excavations with a special focus on sculptures and high reliefs*, *Documenta Praehistorica*, Ljubljana, Vol. 37, pp.239–256.

However, the earliest evidence of the earliest cultivated grain has been found in the region surrounding Gobekli Tepe.⁵⁶

Gobekli Tepe was constructed at a time when the Neolithic population was increasing causing increased pressures, perhaps greater conflicts, on the social fabric of Neolithic society. This led to the development of rituals.⁵⁷ Perhaps to bring about a sense of ‘community’ and maintain the cohesiveness of that society. However, the rituals could have been a cultural innovation symbolizing *Homo sapiens* conquest of nature.⁵⁸ It is not clear what kind of rituals were conducted at Gobekli Tepe, although no burials have been found on site.⁵⁹ However, where areas of the site have been filled in with soil, fragments of human bone have been found, including three partially preserved skulls. These shows cut marks, suggesting that when the victim had been killed, the skull was de-fleshed using flint tools.⁶⁰ The latter also suggests that the skulls had probably been hung from cords, with at least one skull modified using red ochre. But it is open to question as to whether ritual killings and/or cannibalism took place at the site.

The construction of Gobekli Tepe must have involved a sizable number of people over an extended period, a process of building and rebuilding over centuries, transporting heavy stones over a distance. The building of the religious architecture at the site can be split into two phases. The T-shaped monoliths incorporate the first phase of building and have been dated to the tenth millennium BC.⁶¹ On the other hand, the second phase incorporated the monumental round oval buildings, the older layer of which has been dated to the ninth millennium BC. Now all people around the world were living a hunter-gatherer existence except in the Fertile Crescent.⁶² However, some argue that smaller-scale

⁵⁶Scranton, L. (2014), *China’s Cosmological Prehistory: The Sophisticated Science Encoded in Civilisation’s Earliest Symbols*, Simon & Schuster.

⁵⁷Simmons, A. (2007), *The Neolithic Revolution in the Near East; Transforming the Human Landscape*, The University of Arizona Press, Tucson.

⁵⁸Mann, C. (2011), *The Birth of Religion*, National Geographic Magazine, <http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/print/2011/06/gobekli-tepe/mann-text>.

⁵⁹Gresky, J., Haelm, J., and Clare, L. (2017), *Modified human crania from Gobekli Tepe provide evidence for a new form of Neolithic skull cult*, *Science Advances*, Vol.3, No.6.

⁶⁰Ibid.

⁶¹Debertolis, P., Gulla, D., and Savolainen, H. (2017), *Archaeoacoustic Analysis in Enclosure D at Gobekli Tepe in South Anatolia, Turkey*, *History and Archaeology, The 5th Human and Social Sciences at the Common Conference*.

⁶²Ibid.

projects of a nature similar to Gobekli Tepe were occurring in other parts of the world, independently, albeit perhaps not at the same time.⁶³ The Fertile Crescent represents the present-day Middle East, incorporating present-day Iraq, Syria, Palestine, and Egypt. It was in this part of the world that permanent village settlements came into existence, although Gobekli Tepe was a site where communal rituals were conducted.⁶⁴ So far, no evidence has been found to suggest that it was a site of permanent human habitation.

The round oval buildings at the site were accumulated over a period of 1200 years, during what is known as the pre-pottery period.⁶⁵ The stones could have been moved by rolling and pulling them over a series of blocks. The enduring mystery of Gobekli Tepe is the contradiction between the level of technology and innovation used to build at the site and the apparent lack of technological sophistication in contemporary society, for example no pottery.⁶⁶ However, at an intuitive level, in a hunter-gatherer society why would anyone need pots? Food could be eaten from where it was either picked or killed, and storage could have been in pits perhaps lined with some protective substance. To sustain the builders, a large and consistent food supply would have been required, assuming there were no breaks in the time taken to construct the monument at Gobekli Tepe. There seems to have been significant feasts at the site, perhaps as a reward for the work undertaken there by its builders over a millennium.⁶⁷ The latter suggests that the groups in the region surrounding the site may have had a common culture with its own norms and values. This could have led to segmentation within the groups, such that a smaller number of people, the ‘nobility’, controlled a much larger ‘workforce’.⁶⁸ These cultural

⁶³ Stanish, C. (2017), *The Evolution of Human Co-operation: Ritual and Social Complexity in Stateless Societies*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

⁶⁴ Debertolis, P., Gulla, D., and Savolainen, H. (2017), *Archaeoacoustic Analysis in Enclosure D at Gobekli Tepe in South Anatolia, Turkey*, History and Archaeology, The 5th Human and Social Sciences at the Common Conference.

⁶⁵ Notroff, J., Dietrich, O., Dietrich, L., Tvetmarken, C., Kinzel, M., Schindwein, J., Sanmez, D., and Clare, L. (2017), *Mediterranean Archaeology and Archaeometry*, Vol. 17, No. 2, pp.57–74.

⁶⁶ Constable, N. (2009), *World Atlas of Archaeology*, Thalamus Publishing.

⁶⁷ Dietrich O., Notroff J., Schmidt K. (2017), *Feasting, Social Complexity, and the Emergence of the Early Neolithic of Upper Mesopotamia: A View from Gobekli Tepe*. In: Chacon R., Mendoza R. (eds) *Feast, Famine or Fighting?*, Studies in Human Ecology and Adaptation, Vol 8. Springer, Cham.

⁶⁸ Ibid.

norms and values would have established standards by which the members of the groups would behave as well as behaving with each other. In this case, it would have made sense to grow crops near the site of building as well as to maintain animals for slaughter, there too. This would be logical explanation as to why hunter gatherers made the transition to a settled life, laying the roots of early Western civilization. The Neolithic Revolution was important because of the location-specific crop cultivation and animal husbandry, perhaps in conjunction with a smaller-scale hunter-gathering existence.⁶⁹ The latter suggests that this may have involved some form of division of labour amongst the members of the settlement. Some gathering berries, some gathering firewood, some tending animals, some making sure that the communal fire did not go out, some collecting water, and some looking after the crops. This allowed individual to benefit from a sustained nutritional diet. In the foetal stage and in early life this would have allowed for an improvement in brain development.⁷⁰ An improved diet would have led to people having an increased and improved access to a range of foods. It follows that the consumption of a diverse range of foods would be micronutrient rich, and this would allow the body to absorb a range of micronutrients—vitamins and minerals. The assimilation of these micronutrients by the body would allow the brain's potential to be more utilized. Learning would become more efficient, and new ideas would arise which could be exchanged and discussed with individuals in a growing population. In other words, there would be greater technological and social innovation as a result.⁷¹ Thus, a combination of onsite crop cultivation, animal husbandry, the gathering of plants and fruits, and the hunting of animals and fish would lead to increased cognitive capacity due to the development and more efficient use of brain tissue. This would have an immediate impact on innovation and learning and would not need long-term evolutionary development over millennia. Therefore, it would

⁶⁹ Simmons, A. (2007), *The Neolithic Revolution in the Near East; Transforming the Human Landscape*, The University of Arizona Press, Tucson.

⁷⁰ Cakmak, I., Graham, R., and Welch, R. (2009), *Agricultural and Molecular Genetic Approaches to Improving Nutrition and Preventing Micronutrient Malnutrition Globally*, in 'Impacts of Agriculture on Human Health and Nutrition – Volume 1,' Cakmak, I., and Welch, R. (Eds), Eolss Publishers Co. Ltd, United Kingdom.

⁷¹ Mann, C. (2011), *The Birth of Religion*, National Geographic Magazine, <http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/print/2011/06/gobekli-tepe/mann-text>.

be justifiable that the roots of human civilization lie in the development of the human mind, the ability to absorb facts related to the environment, form ideas, and then project these ideas into reality by implementing practical applications.

Sumer: 3500 BC

Between 700,000 BC to 9000 BC there were no permanent settlements of Homo sapiens. Existence was at the hunter-gatherer level, in which groups would move from one location to another, gathering plants and seeds and hunting wild animals. Furthermore, technology had remained at a basic level, and it involved the use and the manufacture of stone implements.⁷² According to the latter the earliest permanent settlements began in the Near East in the Neolithic Period at around 9000BC. These settlements were based around the Tigris and the Euphrates Rivers.⁷³ Subsequently, this form of settlement spread to the rest of the world, including China by 4000BC. The most important feature of these earliest forms of permanent settlement was the onsite cultivation of crops and animal husbandry. In a contemporary sense, these early permanent settlements were made up of a few hundred individuals. However, as time went by individual settlements began to engage in trading activities, and as a result more complex forms of social organization evolved.⁷⁴ The latter suggests that in the period from 6000BC to 4000BC specific cultures emerged in northern Mesopotamia. These cultures included the Hassuna, Samarra, and the Halaf. In the period of the Hassuna culture, spindle whorls were used to produce cloth, gems evidenced trade, and private property rights existed.⁷⁵ This was denoted by the stamp of a seal as proof of ownership. Buildings were either connected with a central courtyard or were separate. Some of the larger buildings were designated for religious or ceremonial purposes.⁷⁶ The period of the Samarra culture was defined by its elaborately decorated pottery and architecture with buildings displaying wall junctions and external buttresses.⁷⁷ According to the latter, the period of the Halaf culture was characterized by workshops for pottery

⁷² Nemet-Nejat, K. (1998), *Daily Life in Ancient Mesopotamia*, Greenwood Press, London.

⁷³ Hunter, N. (2015), *Daily Life in Ancient Sumer*, Heinemann-Raintree, Chicago.

⁷⁴ Nemet-Nejat, K. (1998), *Daily Life in Ancient Mesopotamia*, Greenwood Press, London.

⁷⁵ Ibid.

⁷⁶ Ibid.

⁷⁷ Ibid.

production, indicating the specialized division of labour, and villages had cobbled streets. It was in the Halaf culture that the tournette was invented, to be followed by the potter's wheel in the following Ubaid period between 4000BC and 3500BC.⁷⁸ The invention and introduction of the potter's wheel into pottery production increased production through the division of labour and allowed to produce pottery of a uniform quality. The Ubaidian was the largest ethnic group of Mesopotamia, having settled there in small southern fishing villages which then expanded into sizable urban centres, for the time, such as Eridu, Ur, and Uruk, which was the largest of the three. Other cities included Umma and Lagash, together with Eridu, Ur, and Uruk. These cities exercised considerable economic, social, and political control over their respective surrounding areas. As such they formed the city states of the ancient Sumerian civilization.⁷⁹ The latter suggests that Sumerian cities were walled with a temple at the centre of the city. The king was divine, and Sumerian society was segmented into nobles, commoners, and slaves. The nobility included members of the royal family as well as the priests. The commoners included the people who worked for the palace and the temple as well as tradespeople, crafts people, farmers, and fishermen.⁸⁰ The latter suggests that 90% of the population were engaged in farming. The invention and exploitation of irrigation allowed the Sumerians to maximize the harvest potential of the nutrient-rich soil which composed their land.⁸¹ The use of irrigation and the rich fertile land allowed the Sumerians to produce surpluses of wheat and barley. These surpluses they could use for trade or to distribute to people when the harvest failed. However, while the economy was primarily agricultural, the Sumerians did produce pottery, textiles, and metal work. The Sumerians also imported copper, tin, and timber in exchange for wheat, barley, metal goods, and dried fish.⁸² They also traded with the peoples of the Mediterranean and with Meluhha, the Sumerian name for the Indus Valley Civilization, which would have been in modern-day northern India.⁸³ During the Harappan phase (2600 to 2500 BC), the

⁷⁸ Ibid.

⁷⁹ Duiker, W., and Spielvogel, J. (2007), *World History*, Thomson-Wadsworth.

⁸⁰ Ibid.

⁸¹ Kramer, S. (1963), *The Sumerians: Their History, Culture and Character*, The University of Chicago Press, London.

⁸² Ibid.

⁸³ Crawford, H. (1991), *Sumer and the Sumerians*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

people of the Indus Valley built ships with a 'house' on the deck, steered with an oar at the helm.⁸⁴ Using such ships, the people of the Indus Valley could traverse waterways and seas in order to trade with the Sumerian/Babylonian merchants, traders. The Sumerians valued the individual and the individual's achievement.⁸⁵ This ideal was enforced by laws, which the Sumerians were the first to enact anywhere in the world. The Sumerians were also able to express their language in written form. Possibly the first to do so in history. This was often on clay tablets, some of which have survived to this day. The combination of a consistent diet, the emphasis on individual achievement, and a written language allowed the Sumerians to be highly innovative. They have been reputed to have invented the wheel and to have been the first to divide the day into hours and minutes.⁸⁶

Tepe Gawra and Uruk were the dominant cultures of ancient Mesopotamia, with the former being prevalent in the north and the latter in the south of the country.⁸⁷ The latter suggests that between 3000BC and 2900BC the empty northern regions had been settled by Sumerian speakers. In the Uruk region large-scale building projects were undertaken. This would suggest that there was a small elite in control of a larger supply of craftsmen and builders. The number of buildings in the Uruk region was greater than those in the Tepe Gawra region. It follows that in Uruk, Babylonian Civilization was more complex in organization.⁸⁸ The latter attributes this to its large population density and a high level of productivity. By 3000BC the language spoken in Mesopotamia was Sumerian with the dominant ethnic group being the Sumerians. Writing on clay tablets was invented in the period from 3200BC to 2900BC, the Protoliterate Period; it was initially used for accounting purposes. During the Protoliterate Period, the main centres of economic, political, and social activity were the temples. The temples owned the land, hired labourers and specialist craftsmen, were responsible for co-ordinating trade; and they exercised political control across the city and its surroundings.⁸⁹ The latter suggests that each city was a self-contained irrigated environment

⁸⁴ Parpola, A. (2015), *The Roots of Hinduism: The Early Aryans and the Indus Civilisation*, Published to Oxford Scholarship Online: August 2015, DOI: 10.1093/acprof:oso/9780190226909.001.0001.

⁸⁵ Ibid.

⁸⁶ Hunter, N. (2015), *Daily Life in Ancient Sumer*, Heinemann-Raintree, Chicago.

⁸⁷ Nemet-Nejat, K. (1998), *Daily Life in Ancient Mesopotamia*, Greenwood Press, London.

⁸⁸ Ibid.

⁸⁹ Ibid.

surrounded by desert and swamps. These cities would eventually become city states, which were loosely connected through trade.

Sargon the Great (2334BC to 2279BC) was the first king to unite the city states of Mesopotamia, and by establishing his capital in the city of Akkad, his empire was named the Akkadian Empire. Sargon was the first ruler of a unified state to have a standing army and military installations dotted throughout his lands. The city of Akkad was one of the wealthiest cities of the ancient world.⁹⁰ The Akkadian Empire was located to the north of the Sumerian city states, and it conquered these states in 2340BC.⁹¹ The Akkadian Empire was ended by the Gutians, invaders from southeast Kurdistan.⁹² This happened in 2100BC after which the Sumerian city states regained their autonomy and continued to co-exist while warring with each other.⁹³ However, according to the latter the Sumerian city states were again unified by Hammurabi in 1792BC. As a king, Hammurabi built more irrigation channels, temples, and defensive walls.⁹⁴ Hammurabi also established a more robust codified system of law, now known as the Code of Hammurabi. These laws were received by Hammurabi from the Sun god in 2250BC and were found inscribed on a black diorite, 8ft high and about 6ft in circumference, in the ancient city of Susa in 1901.⁹⁵ The latter suggests that the Code of Hammurabi was written in a period of world history when the peoples of Western Europe were living far less sophisticated lives. The Code of Hammurabi was very comprehensive in covering the economic, social, and cultural lives of the citizens of Sumer. For example, the Code dealt with Family Law, the amounts of fees and salaries which should be paid to various occupations, compensation for merchants robbed by marauders, and the need for written contracts to facilitate transactions.⁹⁶ The Code of Hammurabi also specifies the social order of Babylonian society. This was structured into three levels.⁹⁷ The first tier included members of land-owning families, the

⁹⁰ Ibid.

⁹¹ Duiker, W., and Spielvogel, J. (2007), *World History*, Thomson-Wadsworth.

⁹² Saggs, H. (2000), *Peoples of the Past: Babylonians*, University of California Press, Berkeley, Los Angeles.

⁹³ Duiker, W., and Spielvogel, J. (2007), *World History*, Thomson-Wadsworth.

⁹⁴ Ibid.

⁹⁵ McNeil, D. (1967), *The Code of Hammurabi*, 53 A.B.A. J. 444.

⁹⁶ Ibid.

⁹⁷ Bertman, S. (2003), *Handbook to Life in Ancient Mesopotamia*, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

Awilum. The second tier included all freemen who did not own any land, the Mushkenum. The lowest, third tier included the slaves who owned neither their freedom nor land, the Wardum. According to the Code, inter-tier crime was less severely punished than was intra-tier crime. However, at the same time harsher penalties were specified for the privileged in Babylonian society, who infringed on any aspect of the Code in contrast to the less privileged.⁹⁸ The Code of Hammurabi also increases the opportunity for social mobility, perhaps through marriage. Nevertheless, property ownership became more concentrated during the reign of Hammurabi, and thus, political power.⁹⁹

Early Dynastic Period Egypt: 3100 BC

The ancient history of Egypt spans from 2950BC to 30BC. It encompasses thirty-one dynasties, not including the Macedonian Dynasty (332BC to 309BC) and the Ptolemaic Period (309BC to 30BC). The First Dynasty was established in 2950BC with the unification of Egypt by Narmer. And there are three other notable dynasties. Firstly, the Twelfth Dynasty (1938BC to 1755BC) included the reign of Amenemhat IV (1770BC to 1760BC) during which time the Shang Dynasty was founded in China in 1766BC.¹⁰⁰ The Eighteenth Dynasty (1190BC to 1069BC) includes the reign of Ramesses IV (1156BC to 1150BC), which encompasses the collapse of the Mycenaean Civilization in the Mediterranean.¹⁰¹ The Nineteenth Dynasty encompassed the reign of Ramesses II (1279BC to 1213BC), also known as Ramesses the Great. The Macedonian Dynasty encompassed the time of Alexander the Great, and the Ptolemaic Period encompasses the time of Cleopatra (51BC to 30BC) as well as the Roman invasion of Britain, which at that time was occupied by native British tribes such as the Iceni and the Trinovante. These tribes revolted against Roman rule in 60AD, following the invasion of Britain by Julius Caesar in 54AD.¹⁰² Julius Caesar's initial invasion of Britain in 54BC was followed by a more sustained Roman presence from 43AD under Emperor Claudius, who sought to consolidate Roman control over the British Isles. The Roman

⁹⁸ Ibid.

⁹⁹ Ibid.

¹⁰⁰ Wilkinson, T. (2010), *The Rise and Fall of Ancient Egypt: The History of a Civilisation from 3000BC to Cleopatra*, Bloomsbury, London.

¹⁰¹ Ibid.

¹⁰² Barker, H. (2004), *Iceni*, Bladud Books, Bath, United Kingdom.

conquest brought significant political and social disruption to the British tribes, leading to tensions that culminated in the revolt of 60AD, led by Boudica, the queen of the Iceni.¹⁰³

The revolt was driven by multiple factors. First, the Roman imposition of heavy taxes and the seizure of tribal lands created widespread resentment among the British tribes.¹⁰⁴ The Romans also disarmed the tribes and imposed harsh laws that undermined traditional tribal authority, further alienating the local population.¹⁰⁵ In the case of the Iceni, the revolt was triggered when the Romans ignored the will of the late King Prasutagus, who had left his kingdom jointly to his daughters and the Roman Empire. Instead, the Romans annexed Iceni lands entirely, flogged Boudica, and raped her daughters.¹⁰⁶ This act of violence sparked a full-scale rebellion, with the Iceni and the Trinovantes joining forces to drive out the Romans, sacking Roman settlements such as Camulodunum (modern-day Colchester), Londinium (London), and Verulamium (St Albans).¹⁰⁷ Despite the initial success of the revolt, the Roman military response, led by Governor Suetonius Paulinus, eventually crushed the rebellion. The Romans' ability to swiftly mobilize and use advanced military tactics, such as disciplined formations and superior weaponry, highlighted their innovative approach to warfare.¹⁰⁸ In contrast, the British tribes were less centralized, relying on guerrilla tactics and lacking the organizational structure of the Roman legions. The Roman use of roads and fortifications also facilitated their rapid response, further demonstrating the technological and infrastructural superiority of the Roman Empire.¹⁰⁹

The question of whether the Romans were more innovative than the British tribes can be explored by comparing the two societies. The Romans excelled in engineering, constructing roads, aqueducts, and military fortifications that would stand the test of time. They introduced new forms of

¹⁰³ Frere, S. S. (1987). *Britannia: A History of Roman Britain*. Routledge.

¹⁰⁴ James, S. & Millett, M. (eds.) (2001). *Britons and Romans: Advancing an Archaeological Agenda*. York: Council for British Archaeology.

¹⁰⁵ Todd, M. (2004). *Roman Britain*. Blackwell.

¹⁰⁶ Tacitus. (c. 116). *The Annals*. Translated by A. J. Woodman (2004) London: Penguin Classics.

¹⁰⁷ Mattingly, D. J. (2007). *An Imperial Possession: Britain in the Roman Empire, 54 BC – AD 409*. Penguin.

¹⁰⁸ Goldsworthy, A. (2003). *The Complete Roman Army*. Thames & Hudson.

¹⁰⁹ Salway, P. (1981). *Roman Britain*. Oxford University Press.

governance, economic systems, and urban planning to Britain, reshaping the landscape and integrating the island into the broader Roman economy.¹¹⁰ The British tribes, while skilled in metallurgy and local craftsmanship, did not possess the same level of technological or organizational sophistication as the Romans.¹¹¹ Thus, while the British revolt of 60AD was a significant moment of resistance against Roman occupation, it also underscored the power disparity between the two cultures, with Roman innovations ultimately securing their dominance in Britain.

During its unique geographical position, Egypt has served as part of the migratory route for hominin species, leaving East Africa to the other parts of the Old World.¹¹² However, according to the latter no human presence has been detected in Egypt between 11,000BC and 8000BC. Nevertheless, the earliest Neolithic cultures emerged in the Western Desert.¹¹³ The latter suggests that short-term camps were set up at Nabta Playa and Bir Kiseiba by hunter gatherers in the Early Neolithic Period between 8800BC to 6800BC. At Bir Kiseiba there is also evidence of well digging, semi-domestication of cattle for milk and blood, and the use of primitive grinding equipment.¹¹⁴ However, the people still led a hunter-gatherer existence despite the evidence of semi-permanent settlement. Moving from the Middle Neolithic (6500 BC to 5100 BC) to the Late Neolithic Period (5100 BC to 4700 BC) the human occupation of the Western Desert began to increase, perhaps because of an exceptionally wet period in its history. Moving through this period, there is also evidence of an increase in the number of wells as well as an increase in wattle and daub constructions.¹¹⁵ The earliest evidence for crop cultivation and animal husbandry, perhaps in permanent settlements, is to be found in the Badarian Culture, named after a site found near Sohag, of Upper Egypt.¹¹⁶ So around 5000

¹¹⁰ Wilson, R. J. A. (2002). *A Guide to the Roman Remains in Britain*. 4th edn. London: Constable and Robinson.

¹¹¹ James, S. & Millett, M. (eds.) (2001). *Britons and Romans: Advancing an Archaeological Agenda*. York: Council for British Archaeology.

¹¹² Hendrickx, S., and Vermeersch, P. (2000), Pre-history: From the Palaeolithic to the Badarian Culture (700,000 to 4000 BC, IN: *The Oxford History of Ancient Egypt*, Shaw, I. (Ed), Oxford University Press, New York.

¹¹³ Ibid.

¹¹⁴ Ibid.

¹¹⁵ Hendrickx, S., and Vermeersch, P. (2000), Pre-history: From the Palaeolithic to the Badarian Culture (700,000 to 4000 BC, IN: *The Oxford History of Ancient Egypt*, Shaw, I. (Ed), Oxford University Press, New York.

¹¹⁶ Ibid.

years ago people began to settle and build simple homes along the fertile land surrounding the River Nile, still the world's longest river.¹¹⁷ The latter suggests that for these early ancient Egyptians, life changed from a hunter gatherer like existence to that of a farmer. People caught fish in the Nile and still hunted, but at the same time they engaged in animal husbandry, cattle, sheep, and goats, as well as crop cultivation along the land surrounding the banks of the River Nile. They grew crops such as wheat and barley as well as cultivated fruits and vegetables.¹¹⁸ Over time, as more and more people began to settle, more and more villages and towns were established such that between 3900BC and 3100BC some of the towns became wealthy and powerful.¹¹⁹ This second period of early Egyptian predynastic culture was known as the Naqada Period (4000 BC to 3200 BC), named after the site of Naqada in Upper Egypt.¹²⁰ The increase in population and the agglomeration of the area led to the formation of two distinct regions, Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt. The rulers of these regions fought each other for supremacy. However, in 3100BC King Narmer of Upper Egypt conquered Lower Egypt to form the unified state of Egypt.¹²¹ The period encompassing the Egyptian Old Kingdom (2650 BC to 2134 BC) corresponded with the mature phase of urbanization in the Indus Valley Civilization and the presence of the Akkadian Empire (2350 BC to 2100 BC). So, it is conceivable that trade took place between these three ancient civilizations. Indeed, there is some evidence for a 'village' of Indus Civilization merchants in southern Iraq between 2114 and 2004BC.¹²²

In the early predynastic period, many innovations were introduced. The irrigation techniques were improved upon, and as a result, agricultural production increased.¹²³ During the period 3800 BC to 3500 BC,

¹¹⁷ Deady, K. (2012), *Great Civilisations, Ancient Egypt, Beyond Pyramids*, Capstone Press, Minnesota.

¹¹⁸ Ibid.

¹¹⁹ Ibid.

¹²⁰ Midant-Reynes, B. (2000), *Pre-history: From the Palaeolithic to the Badarian Culture (700,000 to 4000 BC)*: In *The Oxford History of Ancient Egypt*, Shaw, I. (Ed), Oxford University Press, New York.

¹²¹ Deady, K. (2012), *Great Civilisations, Ancient Egypt, Beyond Pyramids*, Capstone Press, Minnesota.

¹²² Lawler, A. (2008), *Boring No More, a Trade-Savvy Indus Emerges*, *Science*, Vol.320, Issue 5881, pp.1276–1281.

¹²³ Shaw, I. (2012), *Ancient Egyptian Technology & Innovation, Transformations in Pharaonic Material Culture*, Bloomsbury, London.

vessels made of stone and pottery were made in large numbers.¹²⁴ Furthermore, buildings made of mud brick were built during the early part of the Naqada Period, 4000 BC to 3600 BC. But these buildings co-existed with buildings made of wattle and mud. Perhaps buildings made of wattle and mud were cheaper to produce than were buildings made of mud brick. Developments in metallurgy occurred by 4000 BC, with the smelting of copper to produce woodworking tools.¹²⁵ The latter suggests that basket weaving techniques were applied to produce textiles using linen. The use of dyed thread and dyed cloth also began to make an appearance. Archaeological evidence also suggests that the ground or horizontal loom was used to weave textiles in the Badarian Period between 4500 BC and 3800 BC. Knowledge of copper smelting technology was expanded to the use and production of other metals such as gold, silver, and lead, which were used to make artefacts, chariot parts, and weapons. It was during the early Badarian period that the methods of artificial mummification also began to emerge.¹²⁶ Many interrelated innovations in the lands of what would become dynastical Ancient Egypt between 3400BC and 3000BC helped to establish a new society in around 3000BC.¹²⁷ The first of these innovations was the invention of writing in 3250BC.¹²⁸ However, this writing system has emerged as the ancient Egyptians had begun to use a pictorial system to denote meanings for their written language by 4000 BC.¹²⁹ There is some debate as to whether the ancient Egyptian writing system developed independently from the Sumerian writing system or if it developed as a result of the diffusion of knowledge. The latter is possible given the geographical closeness of the two civilizations, which also overlapped in time. The southern Mesopotamian city of Uruk is most likely to have invented writing.¹³⁰ Over time the idea, use, and benefits of writing diffused to the ancient Egyptians, who then set up their own pictorial system of writing. The knowledge of writing could

¹²⁴ Ibid.

¹²⁵ Ibid.

¹²⁶ Ibid.

¹²⁷ De Microop, M. (2011), *A History of Ancient Egypt*, John Wiley & Sons Ltd, Chichester, United Kingdom.

¹²⁸ Ibid.

¹²⁹ Shaw, I. (2012), *Ancient Egyptian Technology & Innovation, Transformations in Pharaonic Material Culture*, Bloomsbury, London.

¹³⁰ Wilkinson, T. (2010), *The Rise and Fall of Ancient Egypt: The History of a Civilisation from 3000BC to Cleopatra*, Bloomsbury, London.

have been spread from Uruk by travelling priests, scholars, merchants, or even through captured slaves and prisoners. As with all inventions throughout history, if the inventing society benefits from the discovery, other societies will adapt and use the invention for their benefit. The writing used in Uruk was in the form of simple pictorial depictions, in about 3100BC.¹³¹ According to the latter, the invention and use of writing can be ascribed to the ruler of Uruk Enmerkar has stated in the ancient texts of Uruk. The invention of writing in Uruk can be attributed to the need to maintain a written record of the transactions through trade, as well to ascertain the levels of state inventories of grain, gold, holdings of land and slaves, and the wealth of the citizens. This would allow the state to be in a better position to extract taxes from the households of Uruk. The simple pictorial script of Uruk took a longer period to develop into Sumerian cuneiform.¹³²

In ancient Egypt writing developed further over the subsequent centuries until the world's first complete sentence was constructed in 2750BC.¹³³ The benefits of writing are that it improves memory and allows the transmission of knowledge as well as its accumulation.¹³⁴ As a result, writing may help to indirectly stimulate the development of ideas based on existing knowledge. The oldest writing in ancient Egypt has been found in the predynastic tomb of King Abdu, an ancient Egyptian ruler who ruled 150 years before King Narmer unified Upper and Lower Egypt.¹³⁵ The writing found in the tomb was a short inscription, which was pictorial in nature, which evidenced the complexity which would be found in the Hieroglyphics which would develop over the next 3500 years.¹³⁶ The Egyptian form of writing was called Hieroglyphics, and was written on papyrus, Egyptian paper, to keep records. However, the people of ancient Egypt also studied Mathematics, Science, and Medicine and they built pyramids and obelisks.¹³⁷ These are still marvelled at in the modern world. Writing and

¹³¹ Dumper, M., and Stanley, B. (2007), *Cities of the Middle East and North Africa: A Historical Encyclopaedia*, ABC-CLIO Inc, Santa Barbara, California.

¹³² Ibid.

¹³³ De Mierop, M. (2011), *A History of Ancient Egypt*, John Wiley & Sons Ltd, Chichester, United Kingdom.

¹³⁴ Wilkinson, T. (2010), *The Rise and Fall of Ancient Egypt: The History of a Civilisation from 3000BC to Cleopatra*, Bloomsbury, London.

¹³⁵ Ibid.

¹³⁶ Ibid.

¹³⁷ Deady, K. (2012), *Great Civilisations, Ancient Egypt, Beyond Pyramids*, Capstone Press, Minnesota.

papyrus also enabled the ancient Egyptians to make mathematical calculations—number operations, areas, and angles.¹³⁸ The latter suggests that the ancient Egyptians may have used their knowledge of mathematics to aid their construction of the pyramids and obelisks. Along with limestone quarrying, pyramid construction began in the Third Dynasty in the period from 2686 BC to 2613 BC.¹³⁹

Aegean Civilization: 2700 BC

The civilizations of ancient Egypt, Mesopotamia, and the Indus Valley Civilization had arisen for centuries when Europe was still embracing the savagery of tribal hunter gatherer society. It would be centuries before Europe would emerge from the darkness of barbarity into the twilight of civilization on the shores of the Mediterranean.¹⁴⁰ The blossoming of culture in settlements, with people cultivating crops and engaging in animal husbandry alongside the odd bit of hunting and gathering, began in the late Neolithic at around 4000 BC.¹⁴¹ At this time the trajectory to the Mycenaean and Minoan civilizations was established.¹⁴² The developing cultures of the islands of the Aegean and southern Laconia came to be at the forefront of development and innovation. The Minoan culture, associated with Knossos, would develop the potter's wheel for producing pottery.¹⁴³ This would signify increasing demand from a growing population being met with increased specialization and division of labour. This would require people to be trained, workshops to be built, and wheels to be produced. The Minoan civilization would also produce distinct architecture on a big scale, record official transactions on documents, engage in long-distance trade, engage in ritual practice, store agricultural surpluses centrally, and practise political organization at a regional level.¹⁴⁴

¹³⁸ Shaw, I. (2012), *Ancient Egyptian Technology & Innovation, Transformations in Pharaonic Material Culture*, Bloomsbury, London.

¹³⁹ Ibid.

¹⁴⁰ Glotz, G. (1998), *The Aegean Civilisation*, Routledge.

¹⁴¹ Van Andel, T., and Runnels, C. (1988), An essay on the 'emergence of civilisation' in Greece and the Aegean, *Antiquity* 62: 234–247.

¹⁴² Ibid.

¹⁴³ Knappett, C.J. (1999), Tradition and Innovation in Pottery Forming Technology: Wheel-Throwing at Middle Minoan Knossos, *BSA* 94:101–129.

¹⁴⁴ Ibid.

Following the rise of settlements and culture on the islands of the Aegean in 4000 BC, the settlements of central and north-eastern Greece began to fall behind, and would not be able to catch up for centuries.¹⁴⁵ Excavations at Dimini and Sesklo in Thessaly, mainland Greece, and Knossos on the island of Crete have revealed stone tools and pottery made in the early Neolithic period.¹⁴⁶ Dimini was a settlement of 5000 BC. It covered a site with an area of one hectare which was divided into concentric walls with a three-roomed building in a central court.¹⁴⁷ It has been thought that the central structure is for the elite.¹⁴⁸ The implication is that Dimini society was hierarchical.¹⁴⁹ The first known human occupation of Knossos occurred at around 7000 BC. The pottery of this age found on Knossos bears a distinctively decorated style which is found nowhere else in the Aegean. It must be concluded that Knossos culture developed in isolation from the rest of the Mediterranean.¹⁵⁰ Furthermore, archaeological evidence suggests that the people of Knossos kept domesticated animals and cultivated crops from the time of the earliest occupation of the site.¹⁵¹ There has been controversy regarding the innovation of animal husbandry and crop cultivation creating agricultural economies, which over the centuries led to further innovation and development. The widely accepted hypothesis is that the practice of onsite animal husbandry and crop cultivation occurred in the Near East first, and then spread to the rest of the world. However, there is no reason why crop cultivation and animal husbandry did not occur independently at different times in different places. This view is supported by some evidence. For example, the domestication of the dog occurred at different times in different parts of the world.¹⁵² However, agricultural colonization may have spread agricultural

¹⁴⁵ Feuer, B. (1983), *The northern Mycenaean border in Thessaly*, British Archaeological Reports. International Series 176.

¹⁴⁶ Tomkins, P. (2010), *Neolithic Antecedents*, IN: *The Oxford Handbook of the Bronze Age* (ca. 3000–1000 BC), Cline, E.(Ed), Oxford University Press, New York.

¹⁴⁷ Tsountas, K. (1908). *Ai Proistorikai Acropolis Diminiou Kai Sesklo*, Athens: Athens, Archaeological Society.

¹⁴⁸ Halstead, P. (1993), *Spondylus shell ornaments from late Neolithic Dimini, Greece: specialised manufacture or unequal accumulation?* *Antiquity* 67, 603–609.

¹⁴⁹ Fried, M.H. (1967), *The evolution of political society*, New York (NY): Random House.

¹⁵⁰ Isaakidou, V., and Tomkins, P. (2008), *Escaping the Labyrinth: The Cretan Neolithic in Context*, Oxbow Books.

¹⁵¹ *Ibid.*

¹⁵² Higgs, E., and Jarman, M. (1969), *The Origins of Agriculture: A Reconsideration*, *Antiquity* XLIII.

practice and innovations such as the use of the plough. As would have knowledge of the exploitation of secondary products such as milk and wool which would have occurred in the period 3000 BC to 4000 BC.¹⁵³ As the population grew, land would have become scarcer leading to a dispersal of habitation leading to greater inter-settlement trade rather than just intra-settlement trade.¹⁵⁴ Furthermore, the archaeological evidence of burial sites and stone axes does suggest that there was contact between the peoples of Knossos and those on mainland Greece.¹⁵⁵ The flint sickles have also been found at Dimini and Sesklo,¹⁵⁶ on the mainland, and at Demeter¹⁵⁷ on Knossos. At Dimini and Sesklo archaeologists have also found storage and cooking pots, querns for grinding corn, and knives made of obsidian.¹⁵⁸

It was many centuries later, between 3000 BC and 2000 BC, that stone buildings and towns began to emerge, with the first palace on Knossos being built between 2000 BC and 1800 BC.¹⁵⁹ Minoan culture on Knossos was at its peak during the period 1600 BC to 1500 BC. Its architecture and decorative style was reflected across Crete and as far as Egypt.¹⁶⁰ By that period two types of written archaic scripts had emerged. These included Cretan hieroglyphics and Linear A; both scripts of the Minoan/Knossos culture have not been deciphered yet.¹⁶¹ Cretan hieroglyphics

¹⁵³ Sherratt, A. G. (1981), *Plough and pastoralism: aspects of the secondary products revolution*. IN *Pattern of the Past: Studies in Honour of David Clarke* (eds I. Hodder, G. Isaac and N. Hammond). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

¹⁵⁴ Halstead, P. (1981), *Counting sheep in Neolithic and bronze age Greece*. IN *Pattern of the Past: Studies in Honour of David Clarke* (eds I. Hodder, G. Isaac and N. Hammond). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. 307–339.

¹⁵⁵ Higgs, E., and Jarman, M. (1969), *The Origins of Agriculture: A Reconsideration*, *Antiquity* XLIII.

¹⁵⁶ Runnels, C., and Murray, P. (2001), *Greece Before History: An Archaeological Companion and Guide*, Stanford University Press, Stanford, California.

¹⁵⁷ Hagg, R. (1998), *Ancient Greek cult practice from the archaeological evidence: Proceedings of the Fourth International Seminar on Ancient Greek Cult*, organized by the ... Sueciae, series in 8) (Swedish Edition), Svenska Institutet i Athen.

¹⁵⁸ Runnels, C., and Murray, P. (2001), *Greece Before History: An Archaeological Companion and Guide*, Stanford University Press, Stanford, California.

¹⁵⁹ Scarre, C., and Steffoff, R. (2003), *The Palace of Minos at Knossos*, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

¹⁶⁰ Ibid.

¹⁶¹ Ferrara, S. (2015), *The beginnings of Writing on Crete: Theory and Context*, *The Annual of the British School at Athens*, 110 (1), pp.27–49.

appeared for the last time at around 1500 BC. It was exclusively used in Crete, with its syllabary being composed of 90 symbols.¹⁶² The first evidence of the use of Cretan hieroglyphics has been traced to the end of 3000 BC.¹⁶³ However, there is no evidence that suggest that it was used to convey a specific meaning.¹⁶⁴ Linear A was used more widely by people on the other islands of the Aegean as well as settlements on the mainland in southern Laconia, with its use continuing until 1450 BC.¹⁶⁵ It is believed that an archaic form of Linear A was used to inscribe the first text by stylus on clay tablets in 1800 BC, its syllabary being composed of seventy-five signs.¹⁶⁶ The third Aegean script was Linear B, derived from Linear A, which was used exclusively by the royalty for inscriptions on Mycenaean palaces on Knossos in Crete as well as at other sites on the mainland such as Pylos and Mycenae.¹⁶⁷ Linear B was used until 1200 BC, and its syllabary was represented by eighty-seven signs.¹⁶⁸ It is believed that Linear A was amended by the Mycenaeans in order to form Linear B so that they could write their own language, Greek, in visual form.¹⁶⁹ A version of Cretan writing survived in Cyprus until 1000 BC, its syllabary being represented by fifty-five signs.¹⁷⁰ The development of a written form of language possibly started with a need to record, store, and exchange information. When records of transactions could be ‘stored’, even in symbolic form, taxes to be collected by the state from individuals and households could be more easily calculated. As the population of the Aegean expanded and settlements dispersed, inter-settlement trade expanded generating information which needed to be recorded due to the limitations of human memory. Over time more and more uses for the writing came into being, and it ceased to be used just for recording and bronze stamps denoting

¹⁶² Oliver, J. (1986), Cretan Writing in the Second Millennium BC, *World Archaeology*, Vol.17, No.3, Early Writing Systems, pp.377–389.

¹⁶³ Yule, P. (1980), *Early Cretan Seals: A Study of Chronology*, Philipp von Zabern Verlag, Mainz.

¹⁶⁴ Oliver, J. (1986), Cretan Writing in the Second Millennium BC, *World Archaeology*, Vol.17, No.3, Early Writing Systems, pp.377–389.

¹⁶⁵ Ibid.

¹⁶⁶ Ibid.

¹⁶⁷ Ibid.

¹⁶⁸ Ibid.

¹⁶⁹ Ibid.

¹⁷⁰ Ibid.

either title or rank. Thus, there were economic reasons for the development of a written form of language over time.¹⁷¹

However, following an earthquake in 1480 BC, Mycenaeans took control of the administration of Knossos from 1450 BC to 1380 BC, with control ending in 1250 BC after which Knossos entered a phase of semi-habitation.¹⁷²

Indus Valley Civilization: 2600 BC

The Indus Valley Civilization was a contemporary civilization with that of ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia (Sumer and Akkadian), and ancient China (Dick, 2006). However, while its contemporary civilizations continued to prosper, the Indus Valley Civilization went into decline and eventually disappeared, leaving abandoned cities, towns, and villages (McIntosh, 2008). Nevertheless, based on the number of other excavated sites in the Indus Valley and its surrounding regions, the area covered by the Indus Valley Civilization extended 1100km north to south, and 1600 km from west to east.¹⁷³ Some archaeologists contend that the Indus Valley Civilization may have been much bigger extending as far as Mesopotamia.¹⁷⁴ Thus, at its height the Indus Valley Civilization would have covered an area much bigger than the areas covered by either the civilization of ancient Egypt or that of Mesopotamia (Sumer and Akkadian).

About 9000 years ago, people lived in the hills to the west of the Indus Valley through which the River Indus flows.¹⁷⁵ The people were still hunter gatherers but kept animals such as cows for milk. However, around 4000 BC people began to cultivate crops on the nutrient-rich lands surrounding and including the flood plains of the Indus River.¹⁷⁶ As a result, over the next few centuries permanent settlements were established. By 3000 BC a

¹⁷¹ Oliver, J. (1986), Cretan Writing in the Second Millennium BC, *World Archaeology*, Vol.17, No.3, Early Writing Systems, pp.377–389.

¹⁷² Scarre, C., and Steffoff, R. (2003), *The Palace of Minos at Knossos*, Oxford University Press, Oxford.

¹⁷³ Sen, S. (1988), *Ancient Indian History and Civilisation*, New age International, New Delhi.

¹⁷⁴ Ibid.

¹⁷⁵ Dick, R. (2006), *The Indus Valley Civilisation*, Evan Brothers Limited, London.

¹⁷⁶ Ibid.

process of urbanization had started. This can be associated with the establishment of cities such as Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro. The former was situated on the banks of the River Ravi, and the latter on land between the River Indus and the River Ghaggar-Hakra.¹⁷⁷ These ancient cities were 400 miles apart, but each had an identical architecture for the buildings, a layout of buildings and roads, with the same building technology having been used at both sites (Sen, 1988). However, Mohenjo-Daro was slightly bigger than Harappa, and the city occupied 200 square hectares with a population of 20,000 to 40,000 people.¹⁷⁸ It would have been comparable to today's cities of Ur in Iraq and Memphis in Iraq.¹⁷⁹ Other sites associated with the Indus Valley Civilization include Amri and Chanhudaro in southern Sind, Shortughai in north-east Afghanistan, and Lothal.¹⁸⁰ In Lothal, archaeologists found a brick dockyard which was linked to the Gulf of Cambay by a water channel.¹⁸¹ In Rakhigarhi, another Indus city 340km southeast of Harappa, archaeologists have found evidence of large-scale craft production.¹⁸² Rakhigarhi was situated on the banks of the River Sarasvati. When this river dried up and disappeared, Rakhigarhi lost the source of its water, and the people left the city which decayed.¹⁸³ Archaeological evidence from Dholavira, another Indus city 800km south of Harappa, suggests that the Indus Valley Civilization was based on a hierarchy of wealth rather than on totalitarianism.¹⁸⁴ This is evidenced by the fact that some homes had private wells and covered drains, while other homes had open drains and were next to cesspools.¹⁸⁵ It has also become evident that the people of Dholavira innovated and devised several hydraulic tools and strategies to ensure their city and land had a sufficient source

¹⁷⁷ Sen, B. (2011), *Smart Green Civilisations: Indus Valley: Green Lessons from The Past*, The Energy and Resources Institute, New Delhi.

¹⁷⁸ Lawler, A. (2008), *Boring no more, a Trade Savvy Indus Emerges*, Vol.320, Science.

¹⁷⁹ Ibid.

¹⁸⁰ Sen, S. (1988), *Ancient Indian History and Civilisation*, New age International, New Delhi.

¹⁸¹ Ibid.

¹⁸² Lawler, A. (2008), *Boring no more, a Trade Savvy Indus Emerges*, Vol.320, Science.

¹⁸³ Sankhyan, A., and Rao, V. (2007), *Human Origins, Genome and People of India: Genomic, Palaeontological & Archaeological Evidences*, Allied Publishers Private Limited, New Delhi.

¹⁸⁴ Lawler, A. (2008), *Boring no more, a Trade Savvy Indus Emerges*, Vol.320, Science.

¹⁸⁵ Ibid.

of water because their city was not close to river as were some of the other cities of the Indus Valley Civilization.¹⁸⁶

An analysis of the cities of Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro illustrates the detailed and thorough town planning of the peoples of the Indus Valley Civilization. Each city had a citadel to the west, with residential town to the east.¹⁸⁷ The houses were built of mud brick, and the brick junctures were sealed with bitumen to ensure water resistance. Moreover, each house had a central courtyard, a water well, as well as a bathroom. The waste point of each bathroom was connected to a central sewer system which ran at street level, covered by stone slabs or mud bricks.¹⁸⁸ The residential areas were laid out in a grid pattern with blocks of houses, connected by narrow roads, with no windows facing the road.¹⁸⁹ However, there was one main road which was about 30ft wide.¹⁹⁰ The cities also had granaries to stock the surplus of agricultural crops. Mohenjo-Daro also had a great bath, which was presumably used for communal bathing. However, it may also have been used to collect rainwater, functioning as a water reservoir. But while neither city had a palace, as did the cities of other ancient civilizations, each city was surrounded by a very tall and very thick mud brick wall. This probably reflected the external dangers faced by the civilizations of the time.

Not only was the Indus Civilization much bigger in terms of land area and population than its contemporary civilizations in ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia, it was also more advanced in some areas of engineering and technology.¹⁹¹ The latter suggests that the Indus Valley Civilization was also a major driver in the world's first era of globalization, 5000 years ago. In this case, it could trade goods with ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia. At the same time this helped spread ideas through the movement of people from one civilization to another such that an Indus translator went 'native' in Mesopotamia.¹⁹² The key characterization of Indus Valley Civilization was standardization, from cities, to weights and bricks.¹⁹³ Moreover, it has

¹⁸⁶ Possehl, G. (2002), *The Indus Civilisation: A Contemporary Perspective*, Rowman & Littlefield Publishers Inc, London.

¹⁸⁷ *Ibid.*

¹⁸⁸ *Ibid.*

¹⁸⁹ *Ibid.*

¹⁹⁰ *Ibid.*

¹⁹¹ Lawler, A. (2008), *Boring no more, a Trade Savvy Indus Emerges*, Vol.320, Science.

¹⁹² *Ibid.*

¹⁹³ *Ibid.*

been already discussed the houses of the Indus Valley people were more sophisticated than the houses of the peoples of other contemporary civilizations as they had wells to draw drinking water and bathrooms which fed into the city's sewer system. This kind of homely sophistication would not occur again until the period of the Roman Empire (27 BC–395 AD).¹⁹⁴ However, in contrast to its standardization, oven-baked bricks, and sewers, the Indus Valley Civilization did not leave behind any evidence of its cultural sophistication. There was no evidence of libraries with thousands of written clay tables, no temples, no palaces, no monuments, and no identifiable rulers of the time.¹⁹⁵ Furthermore, the written language of the Indus people has not been deciphered, and only consists of pictorial symbols on seals. No extensive form of the written language has yet been found. One possibility is that, unlike the written language of either Mesopotamia or ancient Egypt, the written language of the Indus Valley Civilization was written on some type of paper which decayed over time, leaving no trace other than dust. Moreover, the sudden appearance of the Indus Valley cities on virgin land, some 600 years after the emergence of the first cities in Mesopotamia in 3200 BC, has puzzled archaeologists.¹⁹⁶ Here the possibility arises that the peoples of the Indus Valley Civilization were either settlers from Mesopotamia or some other unknown civilization which archaeology has not yet found. However, recent excavations have found that some of the Indus cities were not built from scratch. For example, Harappa sits on a site which has been continuously occupied since 3700 BC.¹⁹⁷ Furthermore, archaeological evidence suggests that the pottery style was unique to the Indus Valley Civilization.¹⁹⁸ As was the religious practice which seems to have revolved around goddess worship, tree worship, and the sacred bull. This has some similarities with the type of Hinduism practised today in the villages of Gujarat in today's India, very close to the region which encompassed the Indus Valley Civilization.¹⁹⁹ In addition to having unique pottery and religious practice, the people of the Indus Valley Civilization learned how to mine metals such as copper and bronze, and then use these metals to produce weapons, and they also

¹⁹⁴ Ibid.

¹⁹⁵ Ibid.

¹⁹⁶ Ibid.

¹⁹⁷ Ibid.

¹⁹⁸ Ibid.

¹⁹⁹ Robinson, A. (2015), *The Indus: Lost Civilisations*, Reaktion Books, London.

used polished metal as mirrors.²⁰⁰ They also produced fish hooks and razors using mined metal.²⁰¹ The world's oldest glass has only been found at Harappa.²⁰² Other Indus Valley Civilizations included the circular saw, saws with cutting 'teeth', and tubular drills all of which would have been used for different types of woodworking.²⁰³

NEOLITHIC CHINA

Geographically, China can be divided between north and south. The division is created naturally by the Qinling Mountains. Northern China is dry and cool, and the climate is suitable for cultivating different types of crops such as millet, barley, and soya beans.²⁰⁴ On the other hand, the climate in Southern China is much wetter, and the region is blessed with more lakes and rivers than the north.²⁰⁵ Unlike the north, the south of China was home to a variety of ethnic peoples including the Han, the majority ethnic group in China today. However, many of these ethnic peoples were either absorbed or displaced because of Han migration in conjunction with overwhelming and superior military force.²⁰⁶

When fossilized *Homo erectus* fossils were found in a cave at Zhoukoudian, it was originally thought that the Han evolved from *Homo erectus*. However, mitochondrial DNA analysis has proved that Han Chinese people are descended, like all peoples around the world, from *Homo sapiens*, who left their East African homeland about 100,000 to 70,000 years ago. Between 8000 BC and 3000 BC, the climate in China was much wetter than it is today. In addition, the geographical structure of the land was also very much different. For example, Shandong was cut off from the rest of the mainland by a sea dried up over time and became filled in.²⁰⁷ It was in this environment that the ancestors of the modern

²⁰⁰ Sen, B. (2011), *Smart Green Civilisations: Indus Valley: Green Lessons from The Past*, The Energy and Resources Institute, New Delhi.

²⁰¹ Lawler, A. (2008), *Boring no more, a Trade Savvy Indus Emerges*, Vol.320, Science.

²⁰² Ibid.

²⁰³ Agrawal, D. (2007), *The Indus Civilisation: An Interdisciplinary Perspective*, Aryan Books International.

²⁰⁴ Tanner, H. (2010), *China – A History – Volume 1 – From Neolithic Cultures through the Great Qing Empire*, Hackett Publishing Company Inc, Indiana, USA.

²⁰⁵ Ibid.

²⁰⁶ Ibid.

²⁰⁷ Ibid.

Chinese took up farming and established permanent settlements. A warmer climate, a scarcity of edible wild plants, and the reduced number of animals to hunt in conjunction with increasing population densities may have created a need for people to find another source of sustenance.²⁰⁸ The people then turned to crop cultivation and animal husbandry. This could only be done efficiently in permanent fixed settlements. This gave rise to the emergence of agricultural settlements in the north and in the south of China. In the north, archaeological evidence from Henan, Hebei, Shaanxi, and Gansu supports the view of a dominant Peiligang Culture.²⁰⁹ On the other hand in the south, archaeological evidence from the provinces of Jiangxi, Guangxi, and Guangdong supports the view of a dominant cord-marked pottery culture.²¹⁰ The Peiligang Culture seems to have been the root of Chinese civilization. This is because they buried their dead with turtle shells, and other possessions, which had a symbol inscribed on them. This could have been the beginning of ancestor worship, which is still practised in China today.²¹¹ Turtle shells would then be used 6000 years later by the Shang people to conduct complex rites of divination, and the Peiligang symbols on the turtle shells resembled symbols in the Shang writing system from which contemporary Chinese writing is derived.²¹² While the symbols may not be sufficient evidence of the emergence of writing in Neolithic China, it could be a feature of the use of sign language which eventually led to the development of a written language.²¹³ Writing in China developed over a period of time. It was not until the late Shang period (1200 BC to 1045 BC) that the earliest bronze, on objects belonging to either the nobility or the political elite, inscriptions appear.²¹⁴ The inscriptions usually denoted the name of the owner and his/her family, and the inscriptions were usually found on weapons or containers.²¹⁵ The

²⁰⁸ Ibid.

²⁰⁹ Tanner, H. (2010), *China – A History – Volume 1 – From Neolithic Cultures through the Great Qing Empire*, Hackett Publishing Company Inc, Indiana, USA.

²¹⁰ Ibid.

²¹¹ Perkins, D. (1999), *Encyclopaedia of China: History and Culture*, Fitzroy Dearborn Publishers, New York, USA.

²¹² Tanner, H. (2010), *China – A History – Volume 1 – From Neolithic Cultures through the Great Qing Empire*, Hackett Publishing Company Inc, Indiana, USA.

²¹³ Li, X., G. Harbottle, J. Zhang, and C. Wang. (2003), The earliest writing? Sign use in the seventh millennium BC at Jiahu, Henan Province, China. *Antiquity* 77 (295): 31–44.

²¹⁴ Moore, O. (2000), *Reading the Past: Chinese*, University of California Press, Los Angeles.

²¹⁵ Ibid.

earliest literature in China emerged during the Zhou Dynasty. The literature was usually written on either silk or strips of bamboo and included historical records such as the 'Rites of Zhou' and poetry such as *The Book of Songs*.²¹⁶

The Peiligang Culture was not the only one in Neolithic China. It is more likely that in addition to the two mentioned cultures, these co-existed with other Neolithic Chinese cultures at the same time. These other cultures included the Longshan, Yangshao, Dawenkou, Xinle, and the Hongshan in the north, and the Majiabang, Hemudu, Daxi, Qujialing, and the Dapenkeng in the south.²¹⁷ Therefore, the impact on contemporary Chinese culture and society over time is most likely multicultural.

Two of the best-known Neolithic Chinese cultures are the Yangshao and the Longshan. The latter is the predecessor of the former. The Yangshao Culture was based around the middle reaches of the Yellow River and the valleys of the River Wei.²¹⁸ This encompassed the modern-day Chinese provinces of Gansu and Henan provinces. The Yangshao Culture existed between 5000 BC and 3000 BC. The innovative features of the Yangshao Culture were the production of advanced stoneware and the practice of advanced agriculture.²¹⁹ The Yangshao Culture cultivated dry crops such as millet and broomcorn millet.²²⁰ All the tools used in the Yangshao Culture were made of stone. Stone hammers were used for construction purposes. Thin stone shovels were used to dig the earth, for weeding and planting, and thin sickles with legs were used for harvesting crops.²²¹ For fishing, the peoples of the Yangshao Culture used lances and hooks. These could have been made from stone or bone, as these have been found at archaeological sites. Similarly, for hunting animals, the peoples of the Yangshao Culture used arrows, with inverted spikes, made from

²¹⁶ Duiker, W., and Spielvogel, J. (2007), *World History*, Thomson-Wadsworth.

²¹⁷ Ibid. Tanner, H. (2010), *China – A History – Volume 1 – From Neolithic Cultures through the Great Qing Empire*, Hackett Publishing Company Inc, Indiana, USA.

²¹⁸ Perkins, D. (1999), *Encyclopaedia of China: History and Culture*, Fitzroy Dearborn Publishers, New York, USA.

²¹⁹ Yinke, D. (2010), *Ancient Chinese Civilisations*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

²²⁰ The Editorial Committee of Chinese Civilisation. (2007), *China: Five Thousand Years of History and Civilisation*, City University of Hong Kong.

²²¹ Ibid.

bone and stone.²²² The inverted design of the arrowhead was innovative as it would be deadlier to animals than the normal arrowhead. The Yangshao people were also able to spin and weave cloth at a primitive level using spinning wheels made of pottery.²²³ They were also able to sew primitive cloth and animal skins using bone needles. However, the Yangshao Culture also exhibited very well-developed pottery making skills.²²⁴ They also exhibited spatial and environmental considerations by being able to draw geometric figures and patterns in the shape of animals. The earliest copper artefacts unearthed in the world were found in Anatolia, dating from 9000 years ago.²²⁵ However, the unearthed evidence of Yangshao bronze artefacts were dated to 3000 years later than the copper artefacts found in Anatolia. On the other hand, the Longshan Culture existed between 3000 BC and 1900 BC along the middle and the lower reaches of the Yellow River. This encompasses the locations of contemporary Chinese provinces of Shandong, Henan, Shanxi, and Shaanxi.²²⁶ The Longshan Culture served as the platform for the early Chinese states and the Xia (2100 BC–1600 BC), Shang (1600 BC to 1050 BC), and Zhou (1046 BC to 256 BC) Dynasties.²²⁷ Archaeological evidence supports the view that the Longshan Culture used bronze implements made from a combination of tin and copper. Some take the view that as time progressed this changed the hierarchical structure of society from a matriarchal one to a patriarchal one.²²⁸ In other words, the use of metal tools in agriculture may have favoured males and disadvantage females. As a result, there was a divergence between the crafts sector (copper/bronze metallurgy, pottery, weaving, silk manufacture, jade carving) to the agricultural sector of the primitive economy.²²⁹ However, there is no doubt that the Longshan Culture exhibited technological advancement in comparison to the Yangshao Culture. For example, the carving of jade and the production of silk would have required specific knowledge and a certain level of technical

²²² Ibid.

²²³ Ibid.

²²⁴ Yinke, D. (2010), *Ancient Chinese Civilisations*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

²²⁵ Ibid.

²²⁶ Ibid.

²²⁷ Liu, Li. (2004), *The Chinese Neolithic: Trajectories to Early States*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, England.

²²⁸ Ibid.

²²⁹ Ibid.

sophistication. The Longshan Culture also exhibited a complex social organization as well as class stratification.²³⁰ This could have been due to differences in agricultural production between different farmers. Those farmers who produced more surpluses could accumulate wealth much faster. The wealth would have given these farmers a higher social status than farmers who did not produce as much. Overtime, the differences in wealth in Longshan Culture could have given rise to nobility and commoner. Complex social organization and class stratification could have been associated with increasing population which would have stimulated increasing urbanization and the emergence of walled towns. The fortified walls of Longshan cities were built using a technique known as ‘hangtu’. This technique involved ramming earth into a dense structure for building the walls of cities as well as platforms in buildings.²³¹ The Longshan Culture shares many similarities with the later Shang and Zhou Dynasties: the use of jade in rituals, oracle bones in divination, well-made wheels, and standardized hard-fired pottery.²³²

REFERENCES

- Agrawal, D. (2007). *The Indus civilisation: An interdisciplinary perspective*. Aryan Books International.
- Aiello, L. C., & Wheeler, P. (1995). The expensive tissue hypothesis: The brain and the digestive system in human and primate evolution. *Current Anthropology*, 36(2), 199–221.
- Arsuaga, J., & Martinez, I. (1998). *The chosen species: The long march of human evolution*. Blackwell Publishing.
- Ayala, F., & Cela-Conde, C. (2017). *Processes in human evolution: The journey from early hominins to Neanderthals and modern humans*. Oxford University Press.
- Barker, H. (2004). *Iceni*. Bladud Books.
- Bertman, S. (2003). *Handbook to life in ancient Mesopotamia*. Oxford University Press.
- Bunney, S. (1988). Will the real Homo habilis stand up? *New Scientist*, 120(1636), 33.

²³⁰ Dematte, P. (1999), Longshan-Era Urbanism: The Role of Cities in Predynastic China, *Asian Perspectives*, Vol.38, No.2, pp.119–153.

²³¹ Ibid.

²³² Ibid.

- Cakmak, I., Graham, R., & Welch, R. (2009). Agricultural and molecular genetic approaches to improving nutrition and preventing micronutrient malnutrition globally. In I. Cakmak & R. Welch (Eds.), *Impacts of agriculture on human health and nutrition – volume 1*. Eolss Publishers Co. Ltd.
- Cartwright, J. (2016). *Evolution and human behaviour; Darwinian perspectives on the human condition*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Collins, A. (2014). *Gobekli Tepe: Genesis of the gods: The temple of the watchers and the discovery of Eden*. Bear & Company.
- Constable, N. (2009). *World atlas of archaeology*. Thalamus Publishing.
- Cooldige, F., & Wynn, T. (2018). *The rise of Homo sapiens: The evolution of modern thinking*. Oxford University Press.
- Crawford, H. (1991). *Sumer and the Sumerians*. Cambridge University Press.
- De Mieroop, M. (2011). *A history of ancient Egypt*. John Wiley & Sons Ltd.
- Deady, K. (2012). *Great civilisations, ancient Egypt, beyond pyramids*. Capstone Press.
- Debertolis, P., Gulla, D., & Savolainen, H. (2017). *Archaeoacoustic analysis in enclosure D at Gobekli Tepe in South Anatolia, Turkey, history and archaeology*. The 5th Human and Social Sciences at the Common Conference.
- Dick, R. (2006). *The Indus Valley civilisation*. Evan Brothers Limited.
- Dietrich, O., Notroff, J., & Schmidt, K. (2017). Feasting, social complexity, and the emergence of the early Neolithic of Upper Mesopotamia: A view from Gobekli Tepe. In R. Chacon & R. Mendoza (Eds.), *Feast, famine or fighting? Studies in human ecology and adaptation* (Vol. 8). Springer.
- Duiker, W., & Spielvogel, J. (2007). *World history*. Thomson-Wadsworth.
- Dumper, M., & Stanley, B. (2007). *Cities of the Middle East and North Africa: A historical encyclopaedia*. ABC-CLIO Inc.
- Dunbar, R. (2014). *Human evolution: Our brains and behavior*. Oxford University Press.
- Ferrara, S. (2015). The beginnings of writing on Crete: Theory and context. *The Annual of the British School at Athens*, 110(1), 27–49.
- Feuer, B. (1983). The northern Mycenaean border in Thessaly, British Archaeological Reports. International Series 176.
- Fleagle, J. (2013). *Primate adaptation & evolution*. Elsevier.
- Frere, S. S. (1987). *Britannia: A history of Roman Britain*. Routledge.
- Fried, M. H. (1967). *The evolution of political society*. Random House.
- Glotz, G. (1998). *The Aegean civilisation*. Routledge.
- Goldsworthy, A. (2003). *The complete Roman army*. Thames & Hudson.
- Gowlett, J. A. J. (2016). The discovery of fire by humans: A long and convoluted process. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 371(1696), 20150164.

- Gresky, J., Haelm, J., & Clare, L. (2017). Modified human crania from Gobekli Tepe provide evidence for a new form of Neolithic skull cult. *Science Advances*, 3(6), e1700564.
- Hagg, R. (1998). Ancient Greek cult practice from the archaeological evidence: Proceedings of the Fourth International Seminar on Ancient Greek Cult, organized by the ... Sueciae, series in 8) (Swedish Ed.). Svenska Institutet i Athen.
- Halstead, P. (1981). Counting sheep in Neolithic and bronze age Greece. In I. Hodder, G. Isaac, & N. Hammond (Eds.), *Pattern of the past: Studies in honour of David Clarke* (pp. 307–339). Cambridge University Press.
- Halstead, P. (1993). Spondylus shell ornaments from late Neolithic Dimini, Greece: Specialised manufacture or unequal accumulation? *Antiquity*, 67, 603–609.
- Harari, Y. N. (2014). *Sapiens: A brief history of humankind*. Harper.
- Hendrickx, S., & Vermeersch, P. (2000). Pre-history: From the Palaeolithic to the Badarian culture (700,000 to 4000 BC). In I. Shaw (Ed.), *The Oxford history of ancient Egypt*. Oxford University Press.
- Higgs, E., & Jarman, M. (1969). The origins of agriculture: A reconsideration. *Antiquity*, XLIII, 31–41.
- Holloway, R. L. (1967). The evolution of the human brain: Some notes toward a synthesis between neural structure and the evolution of complex behavior. *General Systems*, 12, 3–19.
- Hunter, N. (2015). *Daily life in ancient Sumer*. Heinemann-Raintree.
- Isaakidou, V., & Tompkins, P. (2008). *Escaping the labyrinth: The Cretan Neolithic in context*. Oxbow Books.
- James, S., & Millett, M. (Eds.). (2001). *Britons and Romans: Advancing an archaeological agenda*. Council for British Archaeology.
- Khaitovich, P., Hellman, I., Enard, W., Nowick, K., Leinweber, M., Franz, H., Weiss, G., Lachmann, M., & Paabo, S. (2005). Parallel patterns of evolution in the genomes and transcriptomes of humans and chimpanzees. *Science*, 309(5742), 1850–1854.
- Knappett, C. J. (1999). Tradition and innovation in pottery forming technology: Wheel-throwing at middle Minoan Knossos. *BSA*, 94, 101–129.
- Kramer, S. (1963). *The Sumerians: Their history, culture and character*. The University of Chicago Press, London.
- Lawler, A. (2008). Boring no more, a trade-savvy Indus emerges. *Science*, 320(5881), 1276–1281.
- Lewin, R. (2005). *Human evolution: An illustrated introduction*. Blackwell Publishing.
- Li, X., Harbottle, G., Zhang, J., & Wang, C. (2003). The earliest writing? Sign use in the seventh millennium BC at Jiahu, Henan Province, China. *Antiquity*, 77(295), 31–44.

- Lovejoy, C. O. (1981). The origin of man. *Science*, 211(4480), 341–350.
- Mann, C. (2011). The birth of religion. *National Geographic Magazine*. <http://ngm.nationalgeographic.com/print/2011/06/gobekli-tepe/mann-text>
- Marzke, M. W. (1997). Precision grips, hand morphology, and tools. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(1), 91–110.
- Mattingly, D. J. (2007). *An imperial possession: Britain in the Roman Empire, 54 BC – AD 409*. Penguin.
- McIntosh, J. (2008). *The ancient Indus Valley: New perspectives*. ABC-CLIO.
- McNeil, D. (1967). The code of Hammurabi. *A.B.A. J.*, 53, 444.
- Midant-Reynes, B. (2000). Pre-history: From the Palaeolithic to the Badarian culture (700,000 to 4000 BC). In I. Shaw (Ed.), *The Oxford history of ancient Egypt*. Oxford University Press.
- Moore, O. (2000). *Reading the past: Chinese*. University of California Press.
- Nemet-Nejat, K. (1998). *Daily life in ancient Mesopotamia*. Greenwood Press.
- Notroff, J., Dietrich, O., Dietrich, L., Tvetmarken, C., Kinzel, M., Schlindwein, J., Sanmez, D., & Clare, L. (2017). More than a vulture: A response to sweat-man and tsikritsis. *Mediterranean Archaeology and Archaeometry*, 17(2), 57–74.
- Oliver, J. (1986). Cretan writing in the second millennium BC. *World Archaeology. Early Writing Systems*, 17(3), 377–389.
- Parpola, A. (2015). *The roots of Hinduism: The early Aryans and the Indus civilisation*. Published to Oxford Scholarship Online. <https://doi.org/10.1093/acpr/oso/9780190226909.001.0001>
- Perkins, D. (1999). *Encyclopaedia of China: History and culture*. Fitzroy Dearborn Publishers.
- Possehl, G. (2002). *The Indus civilisation: A contemporary perspective*. Rowman & Littlefield Publishers Inc.
- Roberts, A. (2009). *The incredible human journey*. Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.
- Robinson, A. (2015). *The Indus: Lost civilisations*. Reaktion Books.
- Rodman, P. S., & McHenry, H. M. (1980). Bioenergetics and the origin of bipedalism. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 52(1), 103–106.
- Runnels, C., & Murray, P. (2001). *Greece before history: An archaeological companion and guide*. Stanford University Press.
- Saggs, H. (2000). *Peoples of the past: Babylonians*. University of California Press.
- Salway, P. (1981). *Roman Britain*. Oxford University Press.
- Sankhyan, A., & Rao, V. (2007). *Human origins, genome and people of India: Genomic, palaeontological & archaeological evidences*. Allied Publishers Private Limited.
- Sarmiento, E., Sawyer, G., & Milner, R. (2007). *The last human: A guide to twenty-two species of extinct humans*. Yale University Press.
- Scarre, C., & Steffoff, R. (2003). *The palace of Minos at Knossos*. Oxford University Press.

- Schmidt, K. (2010). Gobekli Tepe – the Stone Age sanctuaries: New results of ongoing excavations with a special focus on sculptures and high reliefs. *Documenta Praehistorica, Ljubljana*, 37, 239–256.
- Scranton, L. (2014). *China's cosmological prehistory: The sophisticated science encoded in civilisation's earliest symbols*. Simon & Schuster.
- Sen, B. (2011). *Smart green civilisations: Indus Valley: Green lessons from the past*. The Energy and Resources Institute.
- Sen, S. (1988). *Ancient Indian history and civilisation*. New Age International.
- Shaw, I. (2012). *Ancient Egyptian technology & innovation, transformations in pharaonic material culture*. Bloomsbury.
- Sherratt, A. G. (1981). Plough and pastoralism: Aspects of the secondary products revolution. In I. Hodder, G. Isaac, & N. Hammond (Eds.), *Pattern of the past: Studies in honour of David Clarke*. Cambridge University Press.
- Simmons, A. (2007). *The Neolithic revolution in the near east; transforming the human landscape*. The University of Arizona Press.
- Stanish, C. (2017). *The evolution of human co-operation: Ritual and social complexity in stateless societies*. Cambridge University Press.
- Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K., & Chaminade, T. (2008). Neural correlates of early Stone Age toolmaking: Technology, language and cognition in human evolution. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), 1939–1949.
- Tacitus. (c. 116). (2004). *The annals* (A. J. Woodman, Trans.). Penguin Classics.
- Takahata, N., Satta, Y., & Klein, J. (1995). Divergence time and population size in the lineage leading to modern humans. *Theoretical Population Biology*, 48(2), 198–221.
- Tanner, H. (2010). *China – a history – volume 1 – from Neolithic cultures through the Great Qing Empire*. Hackett Publishing Company Inc.
- The Editorial Committee of Chinese Civilisation. (2007). *China: Five thousand years of history and civilisation*. City University of Hong.
- Tierney, J., de Menocal, P., & Zander, P. (2017). A climatic context for the out of Africa migration. *Geology*, 45(11), 1023–1026.
- Todd, M. (2004). *Roman Britain*. Blackwell.
- Tomkins, P. (2010). Neolithic antecedents. In E. Cline (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of the Bronze Age (ca. 3000–1000 BC)*. Oxford University Press.
- Tsountas, K. (1908). *Ai Proistorikai Acropolis Diminiou Kai Sesklo*. Athens, Archaeological Society.
- Van Andel, T., & Runnels, C. (1988). An essay on the ‘emergence of civilisation’ in Greece and the Aegean. *Antiquity*, 62, 234–247.
- Venn, O., Turner, I., Mathieson, I., de Groot, N., Bontrop, R., & McVean, G. (2014). Strong male bias drives germline mutation in chimpanzees. *Science*, 344(6189), 1272–1275.

- Vinter, J. C. (2011). *Ancient Earth mysteries*. AEM Publishing.
- Wells, S. (2017). *The journey of man: A genetic odyssey*. Princeton University Press.
- Wilkinson, T. (2010). *The rise and fall of ancient Egypt: The history of a civilisation from 3000BC to Cleopatra*. Bloomsbury.
- Wilson, R. J. A. (2002). *A guide to the Roman remains in Britain* (4th ed.). Constable and Robinson.
- Wrangham, R. (2010). *Catching fire: How cooking made us human*. Profile Books Ltd.
- Wrangham, R. W. (2009). *Catching fire: How cooking made us human*. Basic Books.
- Wynn, T., Overmann, K., & Coolidge, F. (2016). The false dichotomy; a refutation of the Neanderthal indistinguishability claim. *Journal of Anthropological Sciences*, 94, 201–221.
- Yinke, D. (2010). *Ancient Chinese civilisations*. Cambridge University Press.
- Yule, P. (1980). *Early Cretan seals: A study of chronology*. Philipp von Zabern Verlag.



Theories of Cognitive Development

INTRODUCTION

The first few years of a child's life are important for its mental and physical development.¹ This is because it is in the early years of a child's life that there is the most significant lifetime growth of the brain and the nervous system. This is specifically with regard to new neural connections and the strengthening of existing connections.² Furthermore, the early years of a child's life are also important with regard to overall motor development.³ This is due to the fact that in the early years of a child's life the roots of the advanced motor responses, such as being able to jump up in the air and land on two feet, of later life are put down due to the physical interactions of the infant with its external environment.⁴ Imaging of the brain suggests that motor activity and the completion of cognitive tasks co-activate both

¹ Gabbard, C. (2008), *Lifelong Motor Development*, 5th ed., Pearson Education, San Francisco.

² Shonkoff, J., and Phillips, D. (2000), *From Neurons to Neighbourhoods: The Science of Early Childhood Development*, National Academy Press, Washington.

³ Veldman, S., Santos, R., Jones, R., Sousa-Sa, E., and Okely, A. (2019), Associations between gross motor skills and cognitive development in toddlers, *Early Human Development*, 132, pp.39–44.

⁴ Gallahue, D., and Ozmun, J., (2002), *Understanding Motor Development: Infants, Children, Adolescents, Adults*, fifth edition, McGraw-Hill, New York.

the neo-cerebellum and the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex.⁵ This causality is also supported by the experiences of psychologists and educationalists specializing in childhood development.⁶ Moreover, the theories associated with childhood development rely upon the causality between motor and cognitive development. Piaget's theory on the childhood development of cognition is associated with the actualization of the brain associated with thinking due to physical movements.⁷ Similarly, Systems Theory proposes that the movement of body parts such as the limbs and eyes is caused by the joint action of cognitive and motor processes.⁸ Moreover, the theory of the Ecological Perspective suggests that infants can draw upon and process visual information so as to produce physical movements.⁹ Those motor skills more closely associated with interaction with cognition were those associated with picking up and holding objects as well as the timing of the associated movements, these effects being stronger in the pre-teenage years of a child than in its teenage years.¹⁰ A bi-directionality has also been detected with regard to the cognition-academic nexus.¹¹ In other words, consistent exposure to high-quality schooling will aid the development of a child's cognitive and academic ability. Pre-school education is also important as it is at this stage of development that a child acquires the beginnings of the Theory of Mind concepts, perpetual awareness, and the start of inductive and deductive reasoning.¹² The pre-school enrolment will help the child develop his/her language and mathematics

⁵ Diamond, A. (2007), Interrelated and interdependent, *Dev. Sci.* 10, 152–158.

⁶ Bowman, B., Donovan, S., and Bums, S. (2001), (Eds.), *Committee on Early Childhood Pedagogy*, National Academy Press: National Research Institute, Washington, DC.

⁷ Piaget, J., and Cook, M. (1952), *The Origins of Intelligence in Children*, International Universities Press, New York.

⁸ Thelen, E., and Smith, L. (1994), *A Dynamic Systems Approach to the Development of Cognition and Action*, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.

⁹ Gibson, J. (1979), *The Ecological Approach to Visual Perception*, Lawrence Erlbaum, Hillsdale, NJ.

¹⁰ Veldman, S., Santos, R., Jones, R., Sousa-Sa, E., and Okely, A. (2019), Associations between gross motor skills and cognitive development in toddlers, *Early Human Development*, 132, pp.39–44.

¹¹ Peng, P., and Kievit, R. (2020), The Development of Academic Achievement and Cognitive Abilities: A Bidirectional Perspective, *Child Development Perspectives*, Vol.14, No.1, pp.15–20.

¹² Kazi, S., Kazali, E., Makris, N., Spanoudis, G., and Demetriou, A. (2019), Cognizance in Cognitive Development: A Longitudinal Study, *Cognitive Development*, 52, 100805.

skills.¹³ It has also been found that early pre-school enrolment will have a positive impact on a child's cognitive development from an age of six to late adolescence, aged eighteen.¹⁴ The level of development accessible to a child in the first three years of its life will have a lifetime impact.¹⁵ However, it is at this stage that parents struggle with balancing work with childcare; more free time for the parents may allow them to give quality parenting to their child. Families would benefit from the public provision of in-kind quality child care, in this case.¹⁶ However, it is only in late childhood that children acquire or complete the development of inferential awareness, relational and deductive reasoning, and the awareness of cognitive processes.¹⁷ The link between the development of cognitive abilities in children and specific parts of the brain by such programmes as the Adolescent Brain Cognitive Development (ABCD) study makes available baseline data on the brain development of over 11,000 US children.¹⁸ The data associated with brain development is acquired using magnetic resonance imaging. Other studies have shown that the causality between motor skills and cognitive activity is the strongest in infants.¹⁹ In the study of cognition in infants, executive functions such the ability to concentrate, working memory, and mental agility have been used as measure of cognition.²⁰ The level of development of executive functions in infants is seen as efficient indicators of a child's school academic performance.²¹ This has been

¹³Drange, N., and Havnes, T. (2019), Early Childcare and Cognitive Development: Evidence from an Assignment Lottery, *Journal of Labour Economics*, Vol.37, No.2.

¹⁴Dhuey, E., Figlio, D., Karbownik, K., and Roth, J. (2019), School Starting Age and Cognitive Development, *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, Vol.38, No.3, pp.538–578.

¹⁵Chaparro, J., Sojourner, A., and Wiswall, M. (2020), Early Childhood Care and Cognitive Development, National Bureau of Economic research, Working Paper 26813.

¹⁶Ibid.

¹⁷Kazi, S., Kazali, E., Makris, N., Spanoudis, G., and Demetriou, A. (2019), Cognizance in Cognitive Development: A Longitudinal Study, *Cognitive Development*, 52, 100805.

¹⁸Compton, W., Dowling, G., and Garavan, H. (2019), Ensuring the Best Use of Data: The Adolescent Brain Cognitive Development Study, *JAMA Paediatrics*, Vol.173, No.9.

¹⁹Pereira, K., Valentini, N., and Saccani, R. (2016), Brazilian infant motor and cognitive development: longitudinal influence of risk factors, *Pediatr. Int.* 58, 1297–1306.

²⁰Diamond, A. (2013), Executive functions, *Annu. Rev. Psychol.* 64, 135–168.

²¹Best, J., Miller, P., Naglieri, J. (2011), Relations between executive function and academic achievement from ages 5 to 17 in a large, representative national sample, *Learn. Individ. Differ.* 21, 327–336.

specifically associated with the level of working memory.²² The development of working memory will also allow young children to develop the ability to order events.²³ The lateral prefrontal cortex of the brain is associated with the development of behaviour, language, and cognition.²⁴ Some studies have also shown a strong connection between the level of agility and working memory as well as between the level of agility and the depth of concentration.²⁵ However, although the interrelatedness of motor development and cognitive ability has been recognized through research, the emotional development of the child is also important in facilitating the development of learning in a child's early years.²⁶ Nevertheless, the motor development of a child up to the age of four will have a positive impact of the child's cognitive capacity in terms of working memory capacity and the ability to solve problems from the ages of six to eleven.²⁷ But the facilitation of the development of the motor skills of very young children will also facilitate the lifelong development of cognitive ability.²⁸ There is therefore the possibility that the development of cognition from a very young age to adulthood and beyond may follow in sequential stages.²⁹

²²Veldman, S., Santos, R., Jones, R., Sousa-Sa, E., and Okely, A. (2019), Associations between gross motor skills and cognitive development in toddlers, *Early Human Development*, 132, pp.39–44.

²³Gelman, R. (1978), Cognitive Development, *Ann.Rev. Psychol*, 29, pp.297–332.

²⁴Fuster, J. (2002), Frontal Lobe and Cognitive Development, *Journal of Neurocytology*, 31, pp.373–385.

²⁵Niederer, I., Kriemler, S., Gut, J., Hartmann, T., Schindler, C., Barral, J et al. (2011), Relationship of aerobic fitness and motor skills with memory and attention in preschoolers (Ballabeina): a cross-sectional and longitudinal study, *BMC Pediatr*. 11, 34.

²⁶Veldman, S., Santos, R., Jones, R., Sousa-Sa, E., and Okely, A. (2019), Associations between gross motor skills and cognitive development in toddlers, *Early Human Development*, 132, pp.39–44.

²⁷Piek, J., Dawson, L., Smith, L., Gasson, N. (2008), The role of early fine and gross motor development on later motor and cognitive ability, *Hum. Mov. Sci.* 27 (2008) 668–681.

²⁸Veldman, S., Santos, R., Jones, R., Sousa-Sa, E., and Okely, A. (2019), Associations between gross motor skills and cognitive development in toddlers, *Early Human Development*, 132, pp.39–44.

²⁹Flavell, J. (1982), On Cognitive Development, *Child Development*, Vol.53, No.1, pp.1–10.

PIAGET'S THEORY OF COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT

Piaget's theory of cognitive development is based on the notion of 'constructivism'; complex cognitive processes emerge from the incremental moulding of psychological changes in the brain with environmental experiences.³⁰ Although the hierarchical development of cognitive thought and its physiological structures is universal to all of humanity, the way in which these structures or basic cognitive processes interact with the environment is dependent on the culture of the individual.³¹ The roots of Piaget's work lay in his search for how knowledge developed in a child.³² Indeed, Piaget's focus of analysis was with a human development and genetics emphasis.³³ Much of the research Piaget conducted by observing the reactions of his own children to differently presented scenarios as they grew up.³⁴ The scenario-induced reactions of children were used to observe their reasoning processes across different states of development.³⁵ This kind of analysis of childhood responses and behaviours allowed Piaget to put forward the idea that there was a state of correlation between the brain development of children and their behavioural development.³⁶ However, during Piaget's time, the technology was not available in order to fully explore this correlation and evaluate its truthfulness or its falsehood.³⁷ However, in recent times with the development of scanning techniques the stages of the brain development of a child can be technologically assessed and correlations

³⁰Johnson, S. (2003), *The Nature of Cognitive Development*, TRENDS in Cognitive Science, Vol.7, No.3.

³¹Dasen, P. R. (1994), *Culture and cognitive development from a Piagetian perspective*. In W. J. Lonner & R. Malpass (Eds.), *Psychology and culture* (pp. 145–149). Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

³²Mayer, S. J. (2005), *The early evolution of Jean Piaget's clinical method*. *History of Psychology*, 8(4), 362–382.

³³Duveen, G. (2000), *Piaget ethnographer*. *Social Science Information*, 39(1), 79–97.

³⁴Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), *Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development*, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

³⁵Mayer, S. J. (2005), *The early evolution of Jean Piaget's clinical method*. *History of Psychology*, 8(4), 362–382.

³⁶Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), *Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development*, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

³⁷Kolb, B., & Fantie, B. D. (2009), *Development of the child's brain and behavior*, IN C. R. Reynolds & E. Fletcher-Janzen (Eds.), *Handbook of clinical child neuropsychology* (3rd ed., pp. 19–46). Springer, New York, NY.

made with changes in behaviour during the process of ageing. While Piaget's work and theory were developed in the 1920s they did not become widely available until the 1950s and the 1960s when English translations of his books became widely available.³⁸

In any case, Piaget identified four major stages of development in childhood, the success of each successive stage being dependent on the success of the previous stage of development.³⁹ The first stage is the Sensorimotor Period, which lasted from birth to the age of two. The second stage of development is the Preoperational Thought Period, which lasted from the age of two to the age of seven. The third stage of development is the Concrete Operations Period from the age of seven to the age of eleven. And finally, the Formal Operations Period from the age of eleven to the age of fifteen. The results of Neuroscience research suggest that the infant's experiences and environment in the Sensorimotor Period will set the trajectory of development for an entire lifetime.⁴⁰ The development of the brain from birth to the age of two is probably the most dynamic compared to the other years in the life of a human being.⁴¹ During this period of brain development, the experiences and activities of the infant will influence the emergence of the foundations of cognitive framework upon which abstract thinking, reasoning, and planning abilities will be developed.⁴² So complex is the Sensorimotor Period from birth to the age of two that Piaget was able to sub-divide this stage into six sub-stages across which an infant's learning was based on the use of its five senses as well as being dependent upon the movement of its limbs.⁴³ The six sub-stages of development in the Sensorimotor Period included birth to one month, one month to four months, four months to eight months, eight months

³⁸ Silverthorn, P. (1999), Jean Piaget's theory of development. Available from: <http://chd.gse.gmu.edu/immersion/knowledgebase/theorists/constructivism/Piaget.htm>.

³⁹ Piaget, J. (1973), *The child and reality: Problems of genetic psychology*, Penguin Books, New York, NY.

⁴⁰ Shonkoff, J. P., & Phillips, D. (2000), *From neurons to neighbourhoods: The science of early childhood development*. National Academy Press, Washington, DC.

⁴¹ Knickmeyer, R. C. et al. (2008). A structural MRI study of human brain development from birth to 2 years. *The Journal of Neuroscience*, 28(47), 12176–12182.

⁴² Levin, H. S., Culhane, K. A., Hartmann, J., Evankovich, K., & Mattson, A. J. (1991), Developmental changes in performance on tests of purported frontal lobe functioning, *Developmental Neuropsychology*, 7, 377–395.

⁴³ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

to twelve months, twelve months to eighteen months, and eighteen months to twenty-four months.⁴⁴ During sub-stage one, the development of the brain, which at birth only weighs 25% of the adult weight,⁴⁵ develops through three processes.⁴⁶ Through the first process, dendritic arborization, more and more neurons become interconnected through the branching out of dendrites. The communication between the neurons because of activation or firing as a result of stimulation by neurotransmitters is at the heart of the functioning of the brain.⁴⁷ The repeated firing of neurons strengthens their connections, and it is in this process that the roots of learning are to be found.⁴⁸ The activities of the infant responsible for brain development in the first sub-stage of the Sensorimotor Period include stimulus received visually as well as the stimulation of muscles and the movement of the limbs.⁴⁹ Through this kind of stimuli up to 40,000 synapses a second are formed in the brain of an infant in the first twelve months of its life.⁵⁰ It is therefore apparent that during the first sub-stage, the infant is becoming acquainted with and acquiring knowledge about its environment by using its senses.⁵¹ Like all animals, human infants are also born with reflexes. However, whereas in other animals these reflexes act to determine their behaviour, in human infants these reflexes allow for the learning from the environment, which facilitates the incremental

⁴⁴ Ibid.

⁴⁵ DiPietro, J. A. (2000), Baby and the brain: Advances in child development. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 21, 455–471.

⁴⁶ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁴⁷ Webb, S. J., Monk, C. S., & Nelson, C. A. (2001), Mechanisms of postnatal neurobiological development: Implications for human development, *Developmental Neuropsychology*, 19(2), 147–171.

⁴⁸ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁴⁹ Piaget, J., & Inhelder, B. (1969), *The Psychology of the Child*, Basic Books, New York, NY.

⁵⁰ Tau, G. Z., & Peterson, G. S. (2010), Normal development of brain circuits. *Neuropsychopharmacology Reviews*, 35, 147–168.

⁵¹ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

development of physiological neural pathways and structures in the brain.⁵² Furthermore, Piaget associated two processes with a human infant's ability to adapt to its environment.⁵³ These processes included the assimilation of information and knowledge from the infant's external environment through a reflexive strategy and the accommodation of physiological structures in the brain according to these interactive inputs.⁵⁴ However, the processes of accommodation and assimilation are not limited to use in a human's infant stage but is also applicable throughout life during which adaptation to an ever-changing complex environment takes place.

After birth, the primary motor cortex of the infant's brain encompassing the brainstem, the thalamus, the sensorimotor cortex, and the cerebellar vermis experiences rapid development.⁵⁵ Moreover, as the infant consumes more food the metabolic rate⁵⁶ of the brain is at its highest levels in these regions⁵⁷ in comparison to other regions of the brain. In the first sub-stage, the myelin sheath which encapsulates the axons also develops and thickens.⁵⁸ And as this process occurs, the speed of transmission of stimuli between the neurons begins to increase as well. The more efficient the development of the myelin sheath, the process of myelination, the better the co-ordination of the visual tracking and the limb movements of the infant.⁵⁹ The second sub-stage of the Sensorimotor Period, aged from one to four months, involves the infant developing habits as well as improved co-ordination due to learning. An example of this would be that the infant sucking its thumb is no longer a matter of chance but a deliberate act of

⁵² Huitt, W., and Hummel, J. (2003), *Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development*, Educational Psychology Interactive, Valdosta, GA: Valdosta State University.

⁵³ Ibid.

⁵⁴ Ibid.

⁵⁵ Terumitsu, M., Ikeda, K., Kwee, I. L., & Nakada, T. (2009), Participation of primary motor cortex area 4a in complex sensory processing: 3.0-T fMRI study, *Neuroreport*, 20(7), 679–683.

⁵⁶ Chugani, H. T., Phelps, M. E., & Mazziotta, J. C. (1987), Positron emission tomography study of human brain functional Development, *Annals of Neurology*, 22, 487–497.

⁵⁷ Johnson, M. H. (2001), Functional brain development in humans, *Nature*, 2, 475–483.

⁵⁸ Webb, S. J., Monk, C. S., & Nelson, C. A. (2001), Mechanisms of postnatal neurobiological development: Implications for human development, *Developmental Neuropsychology*, 19(2), 147–171.

⁵⁹ Deoni, S. C. et al. (2011). Mapping infant brain myelination with magnetic resonance imaging. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 31(2), 784–791. doi: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.2106-10.2011.

co-ordination between the thumb and the mouth.⁶⁰ Furthermore, communication in the infant's brain improves in the first four months of its life as white matter, myelinated axons, develops.⁶¹ The level of integration of motor, sensory, and cognitive information by the infant is very much dependent on the state of development of communication in the brain itself.⁶² The development of the ability of the infant to tell its self a part from its environment forms the third stage of the Sensorimotor Period, when the infant is aged between four and eight months. At this stage connections in the hippocampus region of the brain are rapidly laid down, facilitating greater learning and memory.⁶³ This type of brain development at this stage may help to explain why the infant is engaged in a repetitive learning process during which it identifies specific actions it takes with specific results.⁶⁴ The infant also shows greater balance and motor co-ordination during this stage because the cerebellum, the part of the brain responsible for this type of activity, doubles in size.⁶⁵ This period marks a transition in the behaviour of the infant from an unintentional impact on its environment to an intentional one.⁶⁶ The fourth stage of Piaget's Sensorimotor Period, during which the infant is aged eight to twelve months, shows the infant developing planning skills at a foundation level. Furthermore, at this age the infant's cognitive development allows it to combine interactions with real-world objects and dialogue with others to

⁶⁰ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁶¹ Barkovich, J. A., Kjos, B. O., Jackson, D. E., & Norman, D. (1988), Normal maturation of the neonatal and infant brain: MR imaging at 1.5 T1. *Neuroradiology*, 166, 173–180.

⁶² Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁶³ Paldino, A., & Purpura, D. (1979), Quantitative analysis of the spatial distribution of axonal and dendritic terminals of hippocampal pyramidal neurons in immature human brain. *Experimental Neurology*, 64, 604–619.

⁶⁴ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁶⁵ Knickmeyer, R. C., et al. (2008). A structural MRI study of human brain development from birth to 2 years. *The Journal of Neuroscience*, 28(47), 12176–12182.

⁶⁶ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

articulate meaningful statements.⁶⁷ The emergence of planning at this stage of the infant's life is accompanied by the development of the frontal cortex, which increases in synaptic density,⁶⁸ which is instrumental in enabling higher-order cognitive functions.⁶⁹ Furthermore, as the number of connections increases in the hippocampus, neuromuscular functioning also increases such that the actions of the infant become more and more intentional. This is particularly because the extent and the quality of the outer sheathing of the corticospinal tract in the brainstem are at a very advanced state within twelve months of birth, and that of the spinal cord within twenty-eight months.⁷⁰ The ability of the infant to engage in conscious thought and sensory perception⁷¹ also develops during the fourth stage of the Sensorimotor Period. This will result in the improved physical articulation of thoughts by the infant, resulting in the more effective planning of its actions.⁷² This is primarily because of the increased sheathing of three lobes of the brain, including the parietal, occipital, as well as the frontal.⁷³ In stage 5, twelve to eighteen months, the infant will begin to experiment with its actions in order to determine if an action taken in different ways will produce the same or a similar result.⁷⁴ At this stage of development, the infant is able to develop the ability to not only visualize its relationship with other objects in the world but also the relationship

⁶⁷ Smillie, D. (1982), *Rethinking Piaget's Theory of Infancy*, Human Development, 25, pp.282–294.

⁶⁸ Huttenlocher, P. R. (1990), Morphometric study of human cerebral cortex development. *Neuropsychologia*, 28, 517–527.

⁶⁹ Luna, B., et al. (2001), Maturation of widely distributed brain function subserves cognitive development. *Neuroimage*, 13, 786–793.

⁷⁰ Brody, B., Kinney, H., Kloman, A., & Gilles, F. (1987), Sequence of central nervous system myelination in human infancy: I. An autopsy study of myelination. *Journal of Neuropathology & Experimental Neurology*, 46, 283–301.

⁷¹ Paterson, S. J., Heim, S., Friedman, J. T., Choudhury, N., & Benasich, A. A. (2006), Development of structure and function in the infant brain: Implications for cognition, language and social behavior. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 30, 1087–1105.

⁷² Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁷³ Paterson, S. J., Heim, S., Friedman, J. T., Choudhury, N., & Benasich, A. A. (2006), Development of structure and function in the infant brain: Implications for cognition, language and social behavior. *Neuroscience and Bio-Behavioral Reviews*, 30, 1087–1105.

⁷⁴ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

between objects.⁷⁵ The infant also develops the ability to visualize and to think about an object even when it cannot be seen, perceiving that it is located out of sight.⁷⁶ The perception that objects exist even if they cannot be seen is a big stride in the development of the cognition of the infant.⁷⁷ The cognitive skills associated with the retrieval of objects by the infant are associated with the development of the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DPC) of the brain.⁷⁸ The DPC region of the brain is responsible for the organization and regulation of motor responses as well as the planning of these responses by the infant.⁷⁹ During this stage the basal ganglia caudate nucleus also develops in volume, and this correlates with the motor development of the infant.⁸⁰ The developments in the brain during this period can be associated with the infant gaining the ability to walk and crawl to different locations by facilitating muscle co-ordination. The sixth and final stage (eighteen to twenty-four months) of the Sensorimotor Period is associated with the development of the infant's creativity and insight, leading the path to Piaget's pre-functional thought period.⁸¹ During this stage, the infant can use symbols to pretend that a horse can be represented by a stick, for example.⁸² By interacting with objects, infants at this stage of development can develop their own techniques in dealing with the objects. This is intelligence acquired through reflective learning.⁸³ Nevertheless, there is some evidence to suggest that cognitive development and

⁷⁵ Thomas, R. M. (1996), *Comparing theories of child development*, Brooks/Cole Publishing Company, Pacific Grove, CA.

⁷⁶ Ibid.

⁷⁷ Piaget, J., & Cook, M. (Trans.) (1954), *The development of object construct*. In *The construction of reality in the child* (pp. 3–96). New York, NY: Basic Books.

⁷⁸ Diamond, A. (1990), The development and neural bases of memory functions as indexed by the AB and delayed response tasks in human infants and infant monkeys. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 60, 231–267.

⁷⁹ Johnson, M. H. (2001), Functional brain development in humans. *Nature*, 2, 475–483.

⁸⁰ Herrero, M. T., Barcia, C., & Navarro, J. M. (2002), Functional anatomy of thalamus and basal ganglia. *Child's Nervous System*, 18, 386–404.

⁸¹ Thomas, R. M. (1996), *Comparing theories of child development*. Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole Publishing Company.

⁸² Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

⁸³ Piaget, J. (1963), *The origins of intelligence in children*, W.W. Norton & Company, Inc, New York, NY.

adaptation to the environment are dependent on social structures.⁸⁴ For example, cognitive development may be more favourable in environments and cultures in which education is valued. In the sixth and the final stage of development, the infant is also able to control its behaviour, initiating actions and then curtailing these as required by the environment. This behavioural control is associated with the development of connections in the cerebellum, thalamus, striatum, and the neocortex regions of the infant's brain.⁸⁵ By the end of the first twenty-four months of an infant's life, its brain size and development with regard to the density of neurons, glia, axons, and dendritic connections is just over 80% of the adult size.⁸⁶ It is estimated that the brain of the infant grows in capacity over the first twelve months of its life by just over 100% and by 15% in the subsequent twelve months.⁸⁷ However, in addition to the increase in the size of the brain of the infant in the first twelve months of its life, the ongoing efficient organization of synaptic connections to allow for the more effective transmission of information through the different regions of the brain is also important.⁸⁸ Thus, increasing cognitive capacity is associated with increasing synaptic connections, the loss of weak synaptic connections and the strengthening of stronger (reinforced), important connections are an important features of brain development during early childhood.⁸⁹ Moreover, as the physiological structures develop and become used more often, the better these perform with regard to cognitive thinking.⁹⁰ Therefore, it follows intuitively that as people get older, the better they

⁸⁴ Buck-Morss, S. (1975), *Socio-Economic Bias in Piaget's Theory and Its Implications for Cross-Cultural Studies*, *Hum. Dev* 18, pp.35–49.

⁸⁵ Luna, B., et al., (2001). Maturation of widely distributed brain function subserves cognitive development. *Neuroimage*, 13, 786–793.

⁸⁶ Knickmeyer, R. C. et al. (2008). A structural MRI study of human brain development from birth to 2 years. *The Journal of Neuroscience*, 28(47), 12176–12182.

⁸⁷ Webb, S. J., Monk, C. S., & Nelson, C. A. (2001). Mechanisms of postnatal neurobiological development: Implications for human development. *Developmental Neuropsychology*, 19(2), 147–171.

⁸⁸ Luna, B., et al., (2001). Maturation of widely distributed brain function subserves cognitive development. *Neuroimage*, 13, 786–793.

⁸⁹ Casey, B. J., Giedd, J. N., & Thomas, K. M. (2000), Structural and functional brain development and its relation to cognitive development. *Biological Psychology*, 54, 241–257.

⁹⁰ Larsen, R. (1973), Levels of Conceptual Development in Melodic Permutations Concepts Based on Piaget's Theory, *Journal of Research in Music Education*, Vol.21, No.3, pp.256–263.

will be able to solve problems and tasks with practice.⁹¹ While Piaget's theory of cognitive development may explain how the interactions of an infant may facilitate the development of physiological cognitive structures in the brain, it may not fully explain the creativity and emotions of human adulthood.⁹²

Knowledge of the development of the brain of an infant in the very first years of its life will allow policymakers to devise public policies that will facilitate more effective brain development.⁹³ State-led interventions on how infants are nurtured will thus have a positive effect on its entire life. It is also self-evident that there is a causal relationship between the development axons, neurons, and dendritic connections and the environment in which a child is nurtured.⁹⁴ It therefore follows that if the environment in which an infant is nurtured is changed, then the neural pathways or connections between neurons in its brain will also change.⁹⁵ In this case, it is evident that maturation by itself is not enough to explain the cognitive development of an individual, but that the social and cultural influences in the environment of an infant are also important.⁹⁶ Moreover, the time each infant spends developing in the context of Piaget's sub-stages of the Sensorimotor Period will vary.⁹⁷ This may suggest that teachers should devise individual student teaching plans and not use a generic teaching plan for all students.⁹⁸ Suitable individual teaching plans may help to

⁹¹Larsen, R. (1973), Levels of Conceptual Development in Melodic Permutations Concepts Based on Piaget's Theory, *Journal of Research in Music Education*, Vol.21, No.3, pp.256–263.

⁹²Riegel, K. (1973), Dialectic Operations: The Final Period of Cognitive Development, *Human Develop*, 16, pp.346–370.

⁹³Egan, M., Neely-Barnes, S., & Combs-Orme, T. (2011), Integrating neuroscience into the lifespan. *Journal of Social Work Education*, 47(2), 269–282.

⁹⁴Schore, A. N. (2001), Effects of a secure attachment relationship on right brain development, affect regulation, and infant mental health. *Infant Mental Health Journal*, 22(1–2), 7–66.

⁹⁵Clark, D. A., & Beck, A. T. (2010), Cognitive theory and therapy of anxiety and depression: Convergence with neurobiological findings. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 14(9), 418–424.

⁹⁶Driver, R. (1978), When is a stage not a stage? A Critique of Piaget's theory of cognitive development and its application to science education, *Educational Research*, 21;1, 54–61.

⁹⁷Kamii, C. (1982), Number in preschool and kindergarten: Educational implications of Piaget's theory. National Association for the Education of Young Children, Washington, DC.

⁹⁸Driver, R. (1978), When is a stage not a stage? A Critique of Piaget's theory of cognitive development and its application to science education, *Educational Research*, 21;1, 54–61.

accelerate the cognitive development of each student.⁹⁹ The more teachers are able to ascertain and understand the state of cognitive development of each student, the more productive the teaching will be in facilitating learning.¹⁰⁰ Moreover, teaching and learning techniques which facilitate a higher level of thinking in learners will facilitate greater levels of intellectual development, and the generation of new knowledge.¹⁰¹ Therefore, a better understanding of human behaviour can only be achieved through a biological approach.¹⁰² Thus, an appreciation of the biology of the human being is important for devising interventionist strategies.¹⁰³

VGOTSKY'S THEORY OF COGNITIVE DEVELOPMENT

Vygotsky was a psychologist based in the former USSR. His analysis of human psychological functioning was based not on a modular approach but on a systems approach.¹⁰⁴ The implication of this is that Vygotsky did not believe that psychological functions such as the development of memory should be studied separately from the development of the psychological system itself.¹⁰⁵ Moreover, Vygotsky believed that the focus of research should be on the changing nature of the relationships between the different psychological functions.¹⁰⁶ This, therefore, emphasizes a systems approach to the analysis of psychological functions rather than a modular one. The systemic approach to the analysis of psychological functions views these functions as arising from a synergy of biological and

⁹⁹ Zimmerman, B. J., & Whitehurst, G. J. (1979). Structure and function: A comparison of two views of the development of language and cognition. In G. J. Whitehurst and B. J. Zimmerman (Eds.), *The functions of language and cognition*, Academic Press, New York.

¹⁰⁰ Ojose, B. (2008), Applying Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development to Mathematics Instruction, *The Mathematics Educator*, Vol.18, No.1, pp.26–30.

¹⁰¹ Wach, H. (1981), Visual Implications of Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Learning Disabilities*, Vol.14, No.10.

¹⁰² Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Epigenesis and the social work imperative. *Social Work*, 58(1), 23–30.

¹⁰³ Lefmann, T., and Combs-Orme, T. (2013), Early Brain Development for Social Work Practice: Integrating Neuroscience with Piaget's Theory of Cognitive Development, *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, pp. 640–647.

¹⁰⁴ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹⁰⁵ Ibid.

¹⁰⁶ Luria, A. R., and Vygotsky, L. S. (1930/1992), *Ape, primitive man and child*, 1930/1992, Harvester Wheatsheaf: Great Britain

psychological processes. This is in contrast to the reductionist view in psychological research, encompassing Cartesian thinking which views a divergence between biological and psychological processes.¹⁰⁷ However, Vygotsky believed that an individual could not be separated from either its social or its biological environment.¹⁰⁸ The implication is that an analysis of both is important for reaching a better understanding of the cognitive and psychological development of the individual. Nevertheless, although Vygotsky believed in the robustness of the systemic analysis of psychological functions, he also believed a single unique psychological system is made up of many interdependent components.¹⁰⁹ Each of the elements of the psychological system contributes to the functioning of the system as a whole, and if one element changes then the whole system will be affected.¹¹⁰ Similarly, when an element of the psychological system becomes one of its constituents, then the element also changes. Analogously, if the human mind can be a psychological system, then the elements which make it a whole functioning system must have developed from earlier basic elements. However, as the human mind becomes as one through the fusion of its elements, then the way in which psychological functioning behaves acquires new features. For example, decision making is affected by emotional states.¹¹¹ Nevertheless, the organization of elements in a psychological system will follow a hierarchical structure. The implication is that some elements may be functionally below those above them.¹¹² With regard to the human mind, Vygotsky may have held the view that its elements were also structured in a hierarchical manner. For example, higher-level psychological functions such as decision making and the transmission of knowledge via language and speech are dependent on lower-level psychological

¹⁰⁷Toomela, A. (2015), Vygotsky's theory on the Procrustes' bed of linear thinking: looking for structural-systemic theses to save the idea of 'social formation of mind, *Cult. Psychol.* 21, 318–339. doi: 10.1177/1354067X15570490.

¹⁰⁸Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹⁰⁹Toomela, A. (2015), Vygotsky's theory on the Procrustes' bed of linear thinking: looking for structural-systemic theses to save the idea of 'social formation of mind. *Cult. Psychol.* 21, 318–339. doi: 10.1177/1354067X15570490.

¹¹⁰Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹¹¹*Ibid.*

¹¹²*Ibid.*

functions such as the formation of concepts and memory.¹¹³ It was Vygotsky's contention that isolated elements of cognition such as memory would 'merge' with higher-order psychological functions which developed much earlier, for example speech.¹¹⁴ However, it is not clear how lower-level psychological functions may affect higher-level psychological functions, especially in development.¹¹⁵ Nevertheless, the system approach to the development of psychological functions led Vygotsky to acknowledge that the hierarchical organization of psychological functions into systems would mean that a better understanding of the developmental processes an individual is subject to then increases the chances of achieving a better understanding of the human mind.¹¹⁶ Moreover when a component of a psychological system becomes fully integrated with it, then the properties of both the system and the component change.¹¹⁷ Once a child acquires the ability to speak and to understand language, this then acts as a medium of transmission of information between the mind of the child and its environment. This is in addition to the other ways in which a child can acquire information about its environment, for example through its eyes, ears, touch, and smell. However, language has the biggest impact on shifting psychological functions to a higher level as the new-born baby transits into childhood and then adulthood.¹¹⁸ Furthermore, from Vygotsky's perspective to understand how human cognition develops, it is not enough to study the mind of an adult, which typically represents the final product of several years of psychological development. In this case the development of cognition and the human mind can only be better understood through the study of how the brain of a new-born develops subject to the environment. This is specifically in the context of psychological processes which promotes the development of a hierarchical psychological system and its functionality. Moreover, over time as the child

¹¹³ Ibid.

¹¹⁴ Ibid.

¹¹⁵ Wertsch, J. V., and Tulviste, P. (1992), L. S. Vygotsky and contemporary developmental psychology. *Dev. Psychol.* 28, 548–557. doi: 10.1037/0012-1649.28.4.548.

¹¹⁶ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹¹⁷ Kohler, W. (1947). *Gestalt psychology*, Liveright, New York.

¹¹⁸ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

has new experiences using physical activity and verbal communications, neural connections in the brain will reorganize to form new psychological functional systems.¹¹⁹ Thus, the first few years of a child's life is accompanied by a recurring series of rewiring's of the brain.¹²⁰ Disorders arising from both brain damage and disorders which affect brain development can be better understood by considering the brain as a hierarchical structure.¹²¹ In this hierarchical ordering of psychological functions, damage to lower levels will affect higher-level functions, and damage to higher-level sub-systems may affect lower-level functions.

A systemic analysis of psychological functions can also benefit from cultural knowledge.¹²² This is in the context of a search by psychological researchers in the last century for a universal theory of the development of the human brain and mind.¹²³ However, research in the first decade of the twenty-first century has indicated that culture does matter in affecting psychological functions and abilities.¹²⁴ In this case whereas human beings are born with the same psychological mechanisms, processes, and systems, cultural differences may result in the development of varying levels of psychological functions. Furthermore, differences in language complexity between diverse cultures may also facilitate differences in the development of not only psychological functions but also brain development. And in the context of language development and the mind, Vygotsky believed that the age of two is an important point for cognitive development because it is at this age speech and thought processes begin to integrate.¹²⁵

¹¹⁹ Ibid.

¹²⁰ De Graaf-Peters, V. B., and Hadders-Algra, M. (2006), Ontogeny of the human central nervous system: what is happening when? *Early Hum. Dev.* 82, 257–266. doi: 10.1016/j.earlhumdev.2005.10.013.

¹²¹ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹²² Ibid.

¹²³ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹²⁴ Benson, J. E., and Sabbagh, M. A. (2010), Theory of mind and executive functioning: a developmental neuropsychological approach, IN *Developmental social cognitive neuroscience*, Zelazo, P., Chandler, M., and Crone, E. (eds), Psychology Press, New York.

¹²⁵ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

Moreover, according to Vygotsky it is at the age of two that a child's knowledge of vocabulary increases rapidly, and it is able to associate the extent of the use of language with behaviours, actions, and the immediate environment.¹²⁶ As a result the developing child is not only able to use language and thought processes for communication but also for problem solving. In the development of human cognition, language therefore plays numerous roles.¹²⁷ Firstly, language allows an infant to not only acquire knowledge, but overtime to construct distinct pieces of knowledge into a coherent framework. Secondly, language is required for the acquisition of knowledge and knowledge is required for the acquisition of language. Thirdly, the thoughts of children will be evident in the language they use. Lastly, the use of language allows children to not only solve problems but also to reflect on their own behaviours.

In terms of Vygotsky's thinking, the environment faced by a human being is one that is affected by both social and cultural factors.¹²⁸ Moreover, the environment is most immediately created by humans, and the space between humans is integrated through communication using language. It was the connection of a human environment and the use of language which was most important for Vygotsky, especially from the perspective of the development of cognition, a process he referred to as internalization.¹²⁹ The latter could also be thought of as the process of generating and organizing thoughts, which Vygotsky referred to as inner speech, using language by the child.¹³⁰ Inner speech not only facilitates the organization of thoughts but also the exchange of thoughts through language and the use of speech. However, in addition to the environment and the use of language in mediating the environment, the development of human

¹²⁶ Ibid.

¹²⁷ Mahmoodi-Shahrehabaki, M. (2019). Vygotsky, Education, and Literacy. Unpublished manuscript, Department of Literacy Studies, Middle Tennessee State University.

¹²⁸ Stetsenko, A., and Arievidtch, I. M. (2010), Cultural-historical activity theory: foundational worldview and major principles, IN *The sociocultural turn in psychology: The contextual emergence of mind and self*, Martin, J., and Kirschner, S. (Eds), Columbia University Press, New York.

¹²⁹ Vasileva, O., and Balyasnikova, N. (2019), (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's Thought: From Historical Overview to Contemporary Psychology, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Volume 10, Article 1515.

¹³⁰ Lewis, C. (2019), Vygotsky and Moral Education: A Response to and expansion of Tappan, *Educational Philosophy and Theory*, 51:1, 41–50.

cognition is dependent on more knowledgeable others (MKOs) and zone of proximal development (ZPD).¹³¹ The former represents individuals who are more cognitively developed than the learner is, a parent in the eyes of a child, while the latter is the gap between potential cognitive development and actual cognitive development as measured through problem-solving ability.¹³² Learners can internalize skills and increase their ZPDs in the process by gaining knowledge from the MKOs.¹³³ An analytical framework, for studying the development of cognitive processes, which encompasses the acquisition and use of language by an infant in its socio-economic environment is crucial to understanding that such processes are non-individualistic.¹³⁴

THE DEVELOPMENT OF MEASURED INTELLIGENCE

Intelligence can be defined from three perspectives.¹³⁵ These include measured intelligence, social intelligence, and biological intelligence. Measured intelligence is a composite of three features: error checking, persistence, and mental processing speed. Eysenck's model of measured intelligence arises from the feature of tests that different individuals may achieve the same result while at the same time getting different questions wrong.

The relationship between intelligence and personality has been empirically evaluated by using three different methodologies.¹³⁶ The first method involves analysing correlations between measured indicators of personality and intelligence.¹³⁷ The second approach considers that intelligence is a composite part of personality, involving the development of measures of

¹³¹ Ibid.

¹³² Ibid.

¹³³ Ibid.

¹³⁴ Kontopodis, M. (2019) Transformative activist stance and pedagogy of daring: Moving beyond Lev Vygotsky in dialogue with Anna Stetsenko, *Pedagogy, Culture & Society*, 27:2, 301–304, DOI: 10.1080/14681366.2018.1475890.

¹³⁵ Eysenck, H. J. (1992). Intelligence: the one and the many? IN Detterman, D.K (Ed.), *Current topics in human intelligence*, Vol. 2: is mind modular or unitary? (pp. 83–116). Ablex, Norwood, NJ.

¹³⁶ Harris, J. (2004), Measured Intelligence, achievement, openness to experience and creativity, *Personality and Individual Differences*, 36, pp.913–929.

¹³⁷ Zeidner, M. (1995). Personality and trait correlates of intelligence IN Saklofske, D.H and Zeidner, M. (Eds.), *International handbook of personality and intelligence* (pp. 299–319). New York: Plenum Press.

intelligence as a personality trait.¹³⁸ The third approach to investigating the link between intelligence and personality involves analysing the links between the dimensions of intelligence with the dimensions of personality.¹³⁹ This third approach has been used to evaluate the relationship between intelligence and personality using achievement requirements as a personality trait.¹⁴⁰ The findings of this empirical research used Eysenck's model of intelligence¹⁴¹ in order to evaluate the relationship between personality traits and intelligence. In this case, error checking and persistence, behavioural features specified by Eysenck (1982) in his model, contributors to intelligence, were taken to be personality traits. The resulting analysis indicated that there was a positive relationship between intelligence and these personality traits. The idea that intelligence may be a composite of an individual's personality may also be rooted in the link associated with 'openness to experience'.¹⁴² The latter is associated with the creative aspects of an individual.¹⁴³ It has also been empirically found that there is a positive correlation between 'openness to experience' and intelligence.¹⁴⁴ The link between 'openness to experience' and intelligence may be better understood by evaluating the differences in verbal reasoning scores between twins and single births.¹⁴⁵ In this case, the verbal reasoning scores of twins were much lower than that of single births.¹⁴⁶ The reason for this may be that differences in the post-natal environment favoured the cognitive development of the single birth child compared to that of twins; and that both pre-birth and birth experiences had no impact on the cognitive

¹³⁸ Ackerman, P. L. (1997). Personality, self-concept, interests and intelligence: which construct doesn't fit? *Journal of Personality*, 65, 171–204.

¹³⁹ Raad, B., and Schouwenburg, H. (1996), *Personality in Learning and Education: A Review*, *European Journal of Personality*, Vol.10, Issue 5.

¹⁴⁰ Harris, J. (2004), Measured Intelligence, achievement, openness to experience and creativity, *Personality and Individual Differences*, 36, pp.913–929.

¹⁴¹ Eysenck, H. J. (1982), *A model for intelligence*, Springer-Verlag, New York.

¹⁴² McCrae, R. R., and Costa, P. T. Jr, (1997), Conceptions and correlates of openness to experience IN Hogan, R., Johnson, J.A and Briggs, S. R (Eds.), *Handbook of personality psychology* (pp. 825–847), Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

¹⁴³ McCrae, R. R. (1987), Creativity, divergent thinking, and openness to experience. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 52, 1258–1265.

¹⁴⁴ Harris, J. (2004), Measured Intelligence, achievement, openness to experience and creativity, *Personality and Individual Differences*, 36, pp.913–929.

¹⁴⁵ Record, R.G., McKeown, T., and Edwards, J. (1970), An Investigation of the difference in measured intelligence between twins and single births, *Ann. Hum. Genet.*, Lond, 34, 11.

¹⁴⁶ Ibid.

development of either single births or on the twins.¹⁴⁷ The difference between the measured intelligence of twins and single births highlights the importance of the quality of a child's post-natal environment for its cognitive development.

There are two types of processes associated with human cognition.¹⁴⁸ The first is a sub-conscious emotional response which does not involve a 'cognitive' assessment of the situation, and is therefore automatic. The second is a measured response based on a cognitive assessment of the situation. This second response may be comparable with the axioms of probability theory.¹⁴⁹ The former can be defined as emotional intelligence (EI). Emotional intelligence (EI) is the ability to recognize, show, appreciate, control, and utilize human emotions.¹⁵⁰ Some researchers believe that EI is different from features of measured intelligence associated with personality and intelligence, playing an important role in the development of an individual.¹⁵¹ Moreover, empirical findings suggest that the quality of such an ability will have positive feedback effects on performance at work, in relationships, as well as on health, and academic performance.¹⁵² For example, the development of team emotional intelligence has a positive feedback effect on separating relationship conflict and task conflict.¹⁵³ Therefore, if constructive ways can be found to improve emotional intelligence then the effects on individual psychological well-being can only be positive.¹⁵⁴ But in order to improve the level of an individual's emotional intelligence, it is first necessary to measure it. This is achievable using a

¹⁴⁷ Ibid.

¹⁴⁸ Kahneman, D. (2011), *Thinking, fast and slow*, Palgrave Macmillan, London.

¹⁴⁹ Dellermann, D., Ebel, P., Sollner, M., and Leimeister, J. (2019), *Hybrid Intelligence*, *Bus Inf Syst Eng* 61 (5), pp. 637–643.

¹⁵⁰ Petrides, K. V., and Furnham, A. (2003). Trait emotional intelligence: Behavioural validation in two studies of emotion recognition and reactivity to mood induction. *European Journal of Personality*, 17, 39–57. doi:10.1002/per.466.

¹⁵¹ Ciarrachi, J., Chan, A., and Bajgar, J. (2001). Measuring emotional intelligence in adolescents, *Personality and Individual Differences*, 31, pp.1105–1119.

¹⁵² Martins, A., Ramalho, N., & Morin, E. (2010). A comprehensive meta-analysis of the relationship between emotional intelligence and health. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 49, 554–564. doi: 10.1016/j.paid.2010.05.029.

¹⁵³ Lee, C., and Wang, C. (2017), The Effect of Team Emotional Intelligence on Team Process and Effectiveness, *Journal of Management and Organisation*, 25:6, pp.844–859.

¹⁵⁴ Kotsou, I., Mikolajczak, M., Heeren, A., Gregoire, J., and Leys, C. (2019), Improving Emotional Intelligence: A Systematic Review of Existing Work and Future Challenges, *Emotion Review*, Vol.11, No.2, pp.151–165.

competency-based measure based upon which a questionnaire can be derived.¹⁵⁵ Nevertheless, perhaps further empirical work is required to confirm whether policies to develop emotional intelligence will have a positive impact on work performance, both academic and non-academic.¹⁵⁶ However, it has been empirically found that in an organization context, emotional intelligence is a contributing factor towards individual success.¹⁵⁷ However, emotional intelligence falls within the context of ‘multiple intelligences,’ which also includes cognitive abilities.¹⁵⁸ The latter is dependent on the environment in which an individual lives and works. Therefore, if the work environment is not sufficiently conducive, then it may be the case that not only do cognitive intelligence fail to develop but also emotional intelligence.¹⁵⁹ In the context of the nature versus the nurture debate it has been found that both intelligence and practice are important for the lifelong development of complex cognitive skills.¹⁶⁰ And while IQ is a measure of general cognitive ability, it should be a measure of an evolutionary formative construct.¹⁶¹

Cognitive ability may be difficult to compare because current tests provide a range of scores which do not have any basis in psychometric theory.¹⁶² The dearth of test scores available commercially may be due to the need of the test publishers to generate revenues.¹⁶³ Studies into the impact of training on the development of emotional intelligence also have flaws, although it is evident that such training does positively impact on

¹⁵⁵ Dulewicz, V., and Higgs, M. (1999), Can emotional intelligence be measured and developed, *Leadership & Organisation. Development Journal* 20/5, pp.242–252.

¹⁵⁶ Ibid.

¹⁵⁷ Dulewicz, S.V. and Higgs, M.J. (1998a), “Emotional intelligence: managerial fad or valid construct?”, Henley Working. Paper 9813, Henley Management College.

¹⁵⁸ Gardner, H. (1983), *Frames of Mind*, Harper-Collins, New York, NY.

¹⁵⁹ Dulewicz, S.V. and Higgs, M.J. (1998a), “Emotional intelligence: managerial fad or valid construct?”, Henley Working. Paper 9813, Henley Management College.

¹⁶⁰ Vaci, N., Edelsbrunner, P., Stern, E., Neubauer, A., Bilalic, M., and Grabner, R. (2019), The Joint Influence of Intelligence and Practice on Skill Development Throughout the Life Span, *PNAS*, Vol116, No.37.

¹⁶¹ Kovacs, K., and Conway, A. (2019), What is IQ? Life Beyond ‘General Intelligence,’ *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, Vol.28(2), pp.189–194.

¹⁶² Beaujean, A., and Benson, N. (2019), Theoretically Consistent Cognitive Ability Test Development and Score Interpretation, *Contemporary School Psychology*, 23, pp. 126–137.

¹⁶³ Frazier, T. W., and Youngstrom, E. A. (2007), Historical increase in the number of factors measured by commercial tests of cognitive ability: are we over factoring? *Intelligence*, 35, 169–182. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intell.2006.07.002>.

emotional intelligence.¹⁶⁴ For example, a study has found that following emotional intelligence training, optimal performance was reached in decision-making tasks which involved emotions.¹⁶⁵ Nevertheless, there are a number of reasons as to why the impact of training on improving emotional intelligence may be inconclusive. Firstly, the emotional intelligence conceptual model may be devised incorrectly with the result that measurement problems may emerge. Secondly, there could be information asymmetry regarding the treatment especially with regard to the duration of the treatment as well as the nature of the training involved. And lastly the lack of a control group may have prevented a viable analysis of the success or failure of the study to be concluded. Nevertheless, self-report measures may be developed which allow EI in adolescents to be reliably measured while controlling for the personality and cognitive measures of intelligence.¹⁶⁶ This would allow for training programmes to be developed which would facilitate skills development in adolescents enabling them to manage the emotional difficulties they may encounter in their daily lives.¹⁶⁷ The need for the adolescents to develop skills associated with emotion management acknowledges to a certain extent the emotional and mental health challenges faced by adolescents in today's world.¹⁶⁸

THE DEVELOPMENT OF MORAL UNDERSTANDING

Moral reasoning from a Piagetian perspective is to see the moral value of actions and decisions from the perspective of another person.¹⁶⁹ The transition from childhood to adulthood, adolescence is representative of a

¹⁶⁴ Groves, K., McEnrue, M., and Shen, W. (2006), Developing and Measuring the emotional intelligence of Leaders, *Journal of Management Development*, Vol.27, No.2, pp.225–250.

¹⁶⁵ Alkazei, A. et al. (2009), Increases in Emotional Intelligence After an Online Training Program Are Associated with Better Decision Making On the Iowa Gambling Task, *Psychological Reports*, Vol.122 (3), pp.853–879.

¹⁶⁶ Ciarrachi, J., Chan, A., and Bajgar, J. (2001), measuring emotional intelligence in adolescents, *Personality and Individual Differences*, 31, pp.1105–1119.

¹⁶⁷ Salovey, P., and Sluyter, D. J. (1997), *Emotional Development and emotional intelligence: Educational Implications*, Basic Books, New York.

¹⁶⁸ Asher, S.R., and Rose, A.J. (1997), *Promoting children's social-emotional adjustment with peers IN Emotional development and emotional intelligence: Educational Implications*, Basic Books, New York.

¹⁶⁹ Siregar, R., Taufik, A., and Yustiana, Y. (2020), Development of Moral Reasoning Using Cognitive Behavioral Therapy, *The 2nd International Conference on Elementary*

period in one's life during which there is a conscious search for an identity of the self.¹⁷⁰ It may also be a period in one's life during which there may be a range of negative behaviours in evidence, primarily due to a lack of moral reasoning ability. In this case, it would seem appropriate if some form of moral reasoning training could be developed by reorganizing cognitive thinking so that the development of moral reasoning is facilitated.¹⁷¹ One way in which this can be achieved is by using cognitive behavioural therapy to restructure cognitive processes such that thinking will allow for negative behaviours to become 'overruled' by positive behaviours through improved moral reasoning.

Piaget believed that according to the level of the maturity of development, the state of a child's moral reasoning could be defined in two diverse ways. These included heteronomous morality and autonomous morality.¹⁷² Nevertheless, children between the ages of seven and ten are in a state of transition between heteronomous morality and autonomous morality, exhibiting features of both states and are said to be in a semi-autonomous state. And it is the transition from heteronomous to autonomous moral reasoning which defines its development. In this case, it becomes evident from a Piagetian perspective that individuals who can think autonomously in the presence of laws and regulations, and in the context of the difference between right and wrong have a well-developed sense of moral reasoning. In contrast to the Piagetian perspective, Kohlberg defines moral reasoning with regard to the structuring of thought rather than with content and the difference between right and wrong.¹⁷³ Therefore, moral reasoning should not be an automatic ability to distinguish between good and bad behaviours but the cognitive processes which result in the making of that distinction. Thus, Kohlberg's theory of moral reasoning is one which is based on structure (thought processes) rather than content (innate ability to determine if an action is good or bad).¹⁷⁴

Education, Vol.2, Nomor 1.

¹⁷⁰ Ibid.

¹⁷¹ Ibid.

¹⁷² Ibid.

¹⁷³ Kohlberg, L. (1976), *Moral Stages and Moralization* IN Lickona, T. (Ed.), *Moral Development and Behavior: Theory, Research and Social Issues*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York.

¹⁷⁴ Siregar, R., Taufik, A., and Yustiana, Y. (2020), *Development of Moral Reasoning Using Cognitive Behavioral Therapy*, The 2nd International Conference on Elementary Education, Vol.2, Nomor 1.

There are six stages to Kohlberg's theory of moral development.¹⁷⁵ These include punishment and obedience, actions satisfying self and others, behaviours allowing for peer approval, behaviour towards authority, behaviours according to acceptable societal standards, and finally universal ethical principles.¹⁷⁶ These stages suggest a consistency in reasoning, although Kohlberg emphasizes perspective taking in the context of moral reasoning.¹⁷⁷ Reasoning may become inconsistent in the case of different perspectives. Another critique of Kohlberg's theory of moral development is that it may not be possible to apply it cross-culturally.¹⁷⁸ This is particularly because in Western tradition man is seen as a rational agent, whereas in Confucian tradition, for example, man is seen as an integral component of the universe.

It may also be considered that moral reasoning is a process which is guided by a framework of moral rules and responsibilities but based on individual circumstances as well as an understanding of social circumstances.¹⁷⁹ Although Kohlberg and Piaget focus on developing a theory of moral development based on the development of cognitive ability, there are differences between the works of the two.¹⁸⁰ In this context, there is a difference between the theories of moral development between Kohlberg and Piaget. On the one hand Piaget emphasizes problems which are physical and logical. But Kohlberg emphasizes problems which are associated with reasoning as well as with society. Therefore, Kohlberg's theory of moral development has been more broadly developed than that of Piaget. Kohlberg's theory of moral reasoning breaks down the process of reasoning into three levels: the pre-conventional, the conventional, and the post-conventional.¹⁸¹ However, according to Piaget, moral development relies upon the interaction with others which in his view also stimulates the

¹⁷⁵ Sullivan, E. (1977), *A Study of Kohlberg's Structural Theory of Moral Development: A Critique of Liberal Social Science Ideology*, *Hum. Dev.*, 20, pp.352–376.

¹⁷⁶ *Ibid.*

¹⁷⁷ Carpendale, J. (2000), *Kohlberg and Piaget on Stages and Moral Reasoning*, *Developmental Review*, 20, pp.181–205.

¹⁷⁸ Dien, D. (1982), *A Chinese Perspective on Kohlberg's Theory of Moral Development*, *Developmental Review*, 2, pp. 331–341.

¹⁷⁹ Kurtines, M. W and Gerwitz, J. L. (1992), *Morality, Moral Behavior & Moral Development*, Universitas Indonesia Press, Jakarta.

¹⁸⁰ Siregar, R., Taufik, A., and Yustiana, Y. (2020), *Development of Moral Reasoning Using Cognitive Behavioral Therapy*, *The 2nd International Conference on Elementary Education*, Vol.2, Nomor 1.

¹⁸¹ *Ibid.*

structures of cognitive development in the brain. Therefore, from the Piagetian perspective there is a line of causation from the development of cognitive abilities of an individual to his/her moral development. Moreover, according to Piaget, moral reasoning can be developed in children through their education. Nevertheless, Kohlberg suggests that the development of moral reasoning may be dependent on three factors: opportunities to take specific roles, a particular moral situation, and cognitive moral conflicts.¹⁸² In the case of opportunities to take specific roles, the development of moral reasoning may be facilitated when circumstances expose individuals to other viewpoints. Contextually, this may occur when parents morally educate their children on the rights and the wrongs of actions. For example, if a child is caught cheating in an exam at school, the parents of the child may be summoned to school by its headmaster. In this case, the child may be further reprimanded at home that it is morally wrong to cheat. Secondly, moral reasoning may develop in the context of a moral situation. For example, if a child witnesses a bullying incident at school, he/she may decide to report it to teachers out of a moral responsibility for the person/s being bullied. Lastly, moral reasoning may develop because of differences in the moral reasoning between individuals with higher and lower reasoning abilities. In this context, when children conflict with others with higher-level moral reasoning skills, it is evident that such children will themselves develop higher-level moral reasoning skills. It has been found contextually that moral reasoning can also develop either through cultural factors¹⁸³ or being emphasized in a family environment. In this case, the parents define the norms and boundaries of what they perceive to be morally correct, and this may facilitate the development of moral reasoning in the child.¹⁸⁴ Nevertheless, as discussed previously, the level of the development of moral reasoning is also dependent on the extent of cognitive development according to Kohlberg. In this case, the state of the level of education has an impact on the level of cognitive development and thus indirectly on the level of development of moral

¹⁸² Janssens, J and Geris, J. (1992), *Child Rearing: Influence on Prosocial and Moral Development*. University of Nijmegen, Netherlands.

¹⁸³ Zhang, Z. (2013), *Children's Moral Reasoning: Influence of Culture and Collaborative Discussion*. Thesis, Publication: University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.

¹⁸⁴ Janssens, J and Geris, J. (1992), *Child Rearing: Influence on Prosocial and Moral Development*, University of Nijmegen, Netherlands.

reasoning.¹⁸⁵ In other words the higher the level of education, the more likely that a higher level of moral reasoning will develop. The positive correlation of higher levels of education with higher levels of moral reasoning may suggest that a programme of education to 'rewire' cognitive thinking towards improved moral reasoning may be beneficial for children and young adolescents. This rewiring of cognitive thinking processes is the emphasis of cognitive behavioural therapy.¹⁸⁶ However, Kohlberg's model of moral development, involves moral development evolving to higher stages over a six stage sequence,¹⁸⁷ maybe of no significant value to educators in assessing the extent of moral development in children because it relies upon knowing the effects of an individual's environment on the development of moral reasoning.¹⁸⁸ Although the emphasis of the model is on the rational thought of the individual rather than the impact of the environment in the context of the development of moral reasoning,¹⁸⁹ however, it is important to understand the processes which lead to the effects. In contrast to Kohlberg's stage theory of moral development,¹⁹⁰ Vygotsky (1978) proposed a zone of proximal development theory for better understanding the context of learning situations.¹⁹¹ This zone of proximal development allows for researchers to gain better insights into the development of moral reasoning not only through processes which have already occurred but also through processes which are in

¹⁸⁵ Mayhew, M.J., Seifert, T.A., Pascarella, E.T. et al, (2012), Going Deep into Mechanisms for Moral Reasoning Growth: How Deep Learning Approaches Affect Moral Reasoning Development for First-year Students. *Res High Educ* 53, 26–46. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11162-011-9226-3>.

¹⁸⁶ Siregar, R., Taufik, A., and Yustiana, Y. (2020), Development of Moral Reasoning Using Cognitive Behavioral Therapy, *The 2nd International Conference on Elementary Education*, Vol.2, Nomor 1.

¹⁸⁷ Tappan, M., and Brown, L. (1989), Toward a Narrative Approach to Moral Development and Moral Education, *Harvard Educational Review*, Vol.59, No.2.

¹⁸⁸ Crawford, P. (2001), Educating for Moral Ability: Reflections on Moral Development based on Vygotsky's Theory of Concept Formation,' *Journal of Moral Education*, 30, 2, pp.113–129.

¹⁸⁹ Nokes, K. (1989), Rethinking Moral Reasoning Theory, *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, Vol. 21, No.3.

¹⁹⁰ Kohlberg, L. (1976) Moral stages and moralization: the cognitive developmental approach, IN: *Moral Development and Behaviour: theory, research, and social issues*, Lickona, T. (Eds), Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York.

¹⁹¹ Vygotsky, L.S. (1978), *Mind in Society: the development of higher psychological processes*, Cole, M., John-Steiner, S., Scribner, S., and Soubberman, E. (Eds), Harvard University Press, Cambridge.

formation.¹⁹² The Vygotskian approach to moral development allows for an analysis which combines the study of the development of self-awareness of moral values as well as those which result due to the moral intervention of elders, such as the parents of the child.¹⁹³ In fact research evidence suggests that there is a positive causative relationship between relevant parental behaviours, especially the level of moral reasoning when interacting with children, and the development of moral reasoning in a child.¹⁹⁴ This is also dependent on the state of the attitude of the child to its environment as well as its behaviour. These are developed by the age of seven, increasing to the age of ten, then with no change until the age of fourteen, showing a progressive decline thereafter.¹⁹⁵ However, in the development of moral judgement in children, this is characterized by a conceptual continuity rather than a discontinuity.¹⁹⁶ In the context of a child's environmental attitude, parental behaviour will also impact upon the emotional and social competence of the child. More specifically, when a child expresses emotions and parent/s respond negatively, then this will facilitate the development of low social competence and negative emotions on the part of the child.¹⁹⁷ Therefore, it is evident that the embedding of moral values within the psyche of adolescents in particular is very much dependent upon good parenting.¹⁹⁸ Therefore, parents should be guided towards crafting a parenting style which allows for a positive enriching and nourishing environment for children to grow.¹⁹⁹ Research suggests that the emotional development of a child also contributes to its moral

¹⁹² Crawford, P. (2001), 'Educating for Moral Ability: Reflections on Moral Development based on Vygotsky's Theory of Concept Formation,' *Journal of Moral Education*, 30, 2, pp.113–129.

¹⁹³ Tappan, M. (1998), 'Moral education in the zone of proximal development,' *Journal of Moral Education*, 27, pp. 141–160.

¹⁹⁴ Walker, L., and Hennig, K. (1999), 'Parenting Style and the Development of Moral Reasoning,' *Journal of Moral Education*, 28, 3, pp.359–374.

¹⁹⁵ Otto, S., Evans, G., Moon, M., and Kaiser, F. (2019), 'The Development of Children's Environmental Attitude and Behaviour,' *Global Environmental Change*, 58.

¹⁹⁶ Margoni, F., and Sunan, L. (2020), 'Conceptual Continuity in the Development of Intent-Based Moral Judgement,' *Journal of Experimental Child Psychology*, 194.

¹⁹⁷ Eisenberg, N., Cumberland, A., and Spinrad, T. (1998), 'Parental Socialisation of Emotion,' *Psychological Inquiry*, 9, 4.

¹⁹⁸ Fatima, S., Dawood, S., and Munir, M. (2020), 'Parenting Styles, Moral Identity and Prosocial Behaviours in Adolescents,' *Current Psychology*, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12144-020-00609-3>.

¹⁹⁹ Ibid.

development.²⁰⁰ Emotional dispositions are common to all animals.²⁰¹ But in humans a level of rationality is able to control emotions such that moral development evolves. The development of moral reasoning is also important for effective cooperation amongst individuals who as they age recognise the importance of moral norms and social norms, such as loyalty to the group, for such co-operation to be effective.²⁰² Furthermore, in the context of the development of moral reasoning, younger children are more likely to make moral judgements of others based on their intentions rather than on the outcomes of their actions while in older children the case is not so clear cut.²⁰³

CONCLUSION

The first few years of a child's life are ones in which there is significant development of the brain, the nervous system, as well as motor development. This is specifically in the context of the addition of not only new connections but also the strengthening of existing connections. Moreover, it has been found through neuro-imaging techniques that movement (motor activity) and the completion of tasks which require thinking processes serve to simultaneously activate two regions of the brain—the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex as well as the neo-cerebellum. The simultaneous motor activity and the completion of tasks requiring thinking and the stimulation of brain areas is not a coincidence. In this case theories associated with cognitive development rely upon this causality. Piaget's theory of cognitive development is dependent upon the causality between simultaneous thinking and physical movement and the actuation of areas of the brain. Therefore, it is evident that Piaget's theory promotes the idea that as incremental psychological changes occur in the brain leading to a change in its overall structure, cognitive processes develop as a result. Piaget's theory is based on four stages of psychological development.

²⁰⁰ Eisenberg, N. (2000), *Emotion, Regulation and Moral Development*, *Annu. Rev. Psychol.* 51, pp.665–697.

²⁰¹ Pipatti, O. (2019), *Morality Made Visible: Edward Westermarck's Moral and Social Theory*, Routledge, New York.

²⁰² McGuire, L., Rizzo, M., Killen, M., and Rutland, A. (2019), *The Role of Competitive and Cooperative Norms in the Development of Deviant Evaluations*, *Child Development*, Vol.90, No. 6.

²⁰³ Hilton, B., and Kuhlmeier, V. (2019), *Intention Attribution and the Development of Moral Evaluation*, *Frontiers in Psychology*, Vol.9.

These include the Sensorimotor Period (birth to the age of two), the Preoperational Thought Period (age two to age seven), the Concrete Operations Period (age seven to age eleven), and the Formal Operations Period (age eleven to age fifteen). Research suggests that the environment and the experiences faced by an infant in the Sensorimotor Period will set the foundations for a lifetime of development. Furthermore, during this period much of an infant's brain development takes place due to the stimulation of the brain via movement of limbs and muscles as well as through its senses. The latter allows the infant to become more aware of its environment. As a result of mental and physical stimulation, over 2.4 million synapses are formed every minute in the brain of an infant in its first twelve months. And within the first twenty-four months of the life of an infant, its brain has already reached 80% of an adult's brain size. Typical measures of cognition in infants have been identified as the level of working memory, the level of concentration, and the ability to multi-task. These measures are also indicators of executive function. The level of development of this in infants is seen as predictors of future academic performance.

In contrast to Piaget's theory of cognitive development, which emphasizes modular changes in the psychological cognitive system, Vygotsky places greater emphasis on the development of the entire psychological system. In this case, according to Vygotsky the development of one component in a psychological system changes the functionality of the entire system. Thus, the development of memory may change the way in which the brain functions because it will be able to 'store' more information. Therefore, it may be the case that with more information, the functioning of the brain can lead to better decisions. Furthermore, when a child acquires the ability to speak then information in the mind of the child about its thoughts, feelings, and the environment can be exchanged with others. It has also been found through research that the nature of the post-natal environment of a child is especially important for the extent of its potential for cognitive development. As a child develops, however, in adapting to its environment the intelligent control of its emotions (emotional intelligence) may be important to its overall development.

Moral reasoning, the ability to discern from good and bad behaviour, may also be important for the development of a child into adulthood. The ability to discern the content of one's own actions and the action of others, good actions, or bad actions, is a typical Piagetian perspective. In contrast, according to the Kohlberg perspective the structure of thought

is more important than its content awareness for the development of moral reasoning. Therefore, according to Kohlberg the cognitive processes which lead to content awareness are more important than the automatic recognition of content awareness with regard to the development of moral reasoning. However, the automatic recognition of content awareness of behaviours, one which arises from an increasing self-awareness and that instilled by peers and elders, represents the Vygotskian approach to moral development.

REFERENCES

- Ackerman, P. L. (1997). Personality, self-concept, interests and intelligence: Which construct doesn't fit? *Journal of Personality*, 65, 171–204.
- Alkazei, A., et al. (2009). Increases in emotional intelligence after an online training program are associated with better decision making on the Iowa gambling task. *Psychological Reports*, 122(3), 853–879.
- Asher, S. R., & Rose, A. J. (1997). *Promoting children's social-emotional adjustment with peers IN Emotional development and emotional intelligence: Educational Implications*. Basic Books.
- Barkovich, J. A., Kjos, B. O., Jackson, D. E., & Norman, D. (1988). Normal maturation of the neonatal and infant brain: MR imaging at 1.5 T1. *Neuroradiology*, 166, 173–180.
- Beaujean, A., & Benson, N. (2019). Theoretically consistent cognitive ability test development and score interpretation. *Contemporary School Psychology*, 23, 126–137.
- Benson, J. E., & Sabbagh, M. A. (2010). Theory of mind and executive functioning: A developmental neuropsychological approach. In P. Zelazo, M. Chandler, & E. Crone (Eds.), *Developmental social cognitive neuroscience*. Psychology Press.
- Best, J., Miller, P., & Naglieri, J. (2011). Relations between executive function and academic achievement from ages 5 to 17 in a large, representative national sample. *Learning and Individual Differences*, 21, 327–336.
- Bowman, B., Donovan, S., & Bums, S. (Eds.). (2001). *Committee on early childhood pedagogy*. National Academy Press.
- Brody, B., Kinney, H., Kloman, A., & Gilles, F. (1987). Sequence of central nervous system myelination in human; infancy: I. An autopsy study of myelination. *Journal of Neuropathology & Experimental Neurology*, 46, 283–301.
- Buck-Morss, S. (1975). Socio-economic bias in Piaget's theory and its implications for cross-cultural studies. *Human Development*, 18, 35–49.
- Carpendale, J. (2000). Kohlberg and Piaget on stages and moral reasoning. *Developmental Review*, 20, 181–205.

- Casey, B. J., Giedd, J. N., & Thomas, K. M. (2000). Structural and functional brain development and its relation to cognitive development. *Biological Psychology*, 54, 241–257.
- Chaparro, J., Sojourner, A., & Wiswall, M. (2020). Early childhood care and cognitive development. National Bureau of Economic research, Working Paper 26813.
- Chugani, H. T., Phelps, M. E., & Mazziotta, J. C. (1987). Positron emission tomography study of human brain functional development. *Annals of Neurology*, 22, 487–497.
- Ciarrachi, J., Chan, A., & Bajgar, J. (2001). Measuring emotional intelligence in adolescents. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 31, 1105–1119.
- Clark, D. A., & Beck, A. T. (2010). Cognitive theory and therapy of anxiety and depression: Convergence with neurobiological findings. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 14(9), 418–424.
- Combs-Orme, T. (2013). Epigenesis and the social work imperative. *Social Work*, 58(1), 23–30.
- Compton, W., Dowling, G., & Garavan, H. (2019). Ensuring the best use of data: The adolescent brain cognitive development study. *JAMA Paediatrics*, 173, 9.
- Crawford, P. (2001). Educating for moral ability: Reflections on moral development based on Vygotsky's theory of concept formation. *Journal of Moral Education*, 30(2), 113–129.
- Dasen, P. R. (1994). Culture and cognitive development from a Piagetian perspective. In W. J. Lonner & R. Malpass (Eds.), *Psychology and culture* (pp. 145–149). Allyn & Bacon.
- De Graaf-Peters, V. B., & Hadders-Algra, M. (2006). Ontogeny of the human central nervous system: What is happening when? *Early Human Development*, 82, 257–266. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.earlhumdev.2005.10.013>
- Dellermann, D., Ebel, P., Sollner, M., & Leimeister, J. (2019). Hybrid intelligence. *Business and Information Systems Engineering*, 61(5), 637–643.
- Deoni, S. C., et al. (2011). Mapping infant brain myelination with magnetic resonance imaging. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 31(2), 784–791. <https://doi.org/10.1523/JNEUROSCI.2106-10.2011>
- Dhuey, E., Figlio, D., Karbownik, K., & Roth, J. (2019). School starting age and cognitive development. *Journal of Policy Analysis and Management*, 38(3), 538–578.
- Diamond, A. (1990). The development and neural bases of memory functions as indexed by the AB and delayed response tasks in human infants and infant monkeys. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 60, 231–267.
- Diamond, A. (2007). Interrelated and interdependent. *Developmental Science*, 10, 152–158.
- Diamond, A. (2013). Executive functions. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 64, 135–168.

- Dien, D. (1982). A Chinese perspective on Kohlberg's theory of moral development. *Developmental Review*, 2, 331–341.
- DiPietro, J. A. (2000). Baby and the brain: Advances in child development. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 21, 455–471.
- Drange, N., & Havnes, T. (2019). Early childcare and cognitive development: Evidence from an assignment lottery. *Journal of Labour Economics*, 37(2), 581–620.
- Driver, R. (1978). When is a stage not a stage? A Critique of Piaget's theory of cognitive development and its application to science education. *Educational Research*, 21(1), 54–61.
- Dulewicz, S. V., & Higgs, M. J. (1998a). Emotional intelligence: Managerial fad or valid construct? Henley Working Paper 9813, Henley Management College.
- Dulewicz, V., & Higgs, M. (1999). Can emotional intelligence be measured and developed. *Leadership & Organisation Development Journal*, 20(5), 242–252.
- Duveen, G. (2000). Piaget ethnographer. *Social Science Information*, 39(1), 79–97.
- Egan, M., Neely-Barnes, S., & Combs-Orme, T. (2011). Integrating neuroscience into the lifespan. *Journal of Social Work Education*, 47(2), 269–282.
- Eisenberg, N. (2000). Emotion, regulation and moral development. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 51, 665–697.
- Eisenberg, N., Cumberland, A., & Spinrad, T. (1998). Parental socialisation of emotion. *Psychological Inquiry*, 9, 4.
- Eysenck, H. J. (1982). *A model for intelligence*. Springer-Verlag.
- Eysenck, H. J. (1992). Intelligence: The one and the many? In D. K. Detterman (Ed.), *Current topics in human intelligence* (Vol. 2: Is mind modular or unitary?) (pp. 83–116). Ablex.
- Fatima, S., Dawood, S., & Munir, M. (2020). Parenting styles, moral identity and prosocial behaviours in adolescents. *Current Psychology*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12144-020-00609-3>
- Flavell, J. (1982). On cognitive development. *Child Development*, 53(1), 1–10.
- Frazier, T. W., & Youngstrom, E. A. (2007). Historical increase in the number of factors measured by commercial tests of cognitive ability: Are we over factoring? *Intelligence*, 35, 169–182. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intell.2006.07.002>
- Fuster, J. (2002). Frontal lobe and cognitive development. *Journal of Neurocytology*, 31, 373–385.
- Gabbard, C. (2008). *Lifelong motor development* (5th ed.). Pearson Education.
- Gallahue, D., & Ozmun, J. (2002). *Understanding motor development: Infants, children, adolescents, adults* (5th ed.). McGraw-Hill.
- Gardner, H. (1983). *Frames of mind*. Harper-Collins.
- Gelman, R. (1978). Cognitive development. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 29, 297–332.
- Gibson, J. (1979). *The ecological approach to visual perception*. Lawrence Erlbaum.

- Groves, K., McEnrue, M., & Shen, W. (2006). Developing and measuring the emotional intelligence of leaders. *Journal of Management Development*, 27(2), 225–250.
- Harris, J. (2004). Measured intelligence, achievement, openness to experience and creativity. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 36, 913–929.
- Herrero, M. T., Barcia, C., & Navarro, J. M. (2002). Functional anatomy of thalamus and basal ganglia. *Child's Nervous System*, 18, 386–404.
- Hilton, B., & Kuhlmeier, V. (2019). Intention attribution and the development of moral evaluation. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 9, 2663.
- Huitt, W., & Hummel, J. (2003). *Piaget's theory of cognitive development, educational psychology interactive*. Valdosta State University.
- Huttenlocher, P. R. (1990). Morphometric study of human cerebral cortex development. *Neuropsychologia*, 28, 517–527.
- Janssens, J., & Geris, J. (1992). *Child rearing: Influence on prosocial and moral development*. University of Nijmegen.
- Johnson, M. H. (2001). Functional brain development in humans. *Nature*, 2, 475–483.
- Johnson, S. (2003). The nature of cognitive development. *Trends in Cognitive Science*, 7(3), 102–104.
- Kahneman, D. (2011). *Thinking, fast and slow*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Kamii, C. (1982). *Number in preschool and kindergarten: Educational implications of Piaget's theory*. National Association for the Education of Young Children.
- Kazi, S., Kazali, E., Makris, N., Spanoudis, G., & Demetriou, A. (2019). Cognizance in cognitive development: A longitudinal study. *Cognitive Development*, 52, 100805.
- Knickmeyer, R. C., et al. (2008). A structural MRI study of human brain development from birth to 2 years. *The Journal of Neuroscience*, 28(47), 12176–12182.
- Kohlberg, L. (1976). Moral stages and moralization: The cognitive developmental approach. In T. Lickona (Ed.), *Moral development and behaviour: Theory, research, and social issues*. Holt, Rinehart and Winston.
- Kohler, W. (1947). *Gestalt psychology*. Liveright.
- Kolb, B., & Fantie, B. D. (2009). Development of the child's brain and behavior. In I. N. C. R. Reynolds & E. Fletcher-Janzen (Eds.), *Handbook of clinical child neuropsychology* (3rd ed., pp. 19–46). Springer.
- Kontopodis, M. (2019). Transformative activist stance and pedagogy of daring: Moving beyond Lev Vygotsky in dialogue with Anna Stetsenko. *Pedagogy, Culture & Society*, 27(2), 301–304. <https://doi.org/10.1080/14681366.2018.1475890>
- Kotsou, I., Mikolajczak, M., Heeren, A., Gregoire, J., & Leys, C. (2019). Improving emotional intelligence: A systematic review of existing work and future challenges. *Emotion Review*, 11(2), 151–165.

- Kovacs, K., & Conway, A. (2019). What is IQ? Life beyond 'general intelligence'. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 28(2), 189–194.
- Kurtines, M. W., & Gerwitz, J. L. (1992). *Morality, moral behavior & moral development*. Universitas Indonesia Press.
- Larsen, R. (1973). Levels of conceptual development in melodic permutations concepts based on Piaget's theory. *Journal of Research in Music Education*, 21(3), 256–263.
- Lee, C., & Wang, C. (2017). The effect of team emotional intelligence on team process and effectiveness. *Journal of Management and Organisation*, 25(6), 844–859.
- Lefmann, T., & Combs-Orme, T. (2013). Early brain development for social work practice: Integrating neuroscience with Piaget's theory of cognitive development. *Journal of Human Behaviour in the Social Environment*, 23, 640–647.
- Levin, H. S., Culhane, K. A., Hartmann, J., Evankovich, K., & Mattson, A. J. (1991). Developmental changes in performance on tests of purported frontal lobe functioning. *Developmental Neuropsychology*, 7, 377–395.
- Lewis, C. (2019). Vygotsky and moral education: A response to and expansion of Tappan. *Educational Philosophy and Theory*, 51(1), 41–50.
- Luna, B., et al. (2001). Maturation of widely distributed brain function subserves cognitive development. *NeuroImage*, 13, 786–793.
- Luria, A. R., & Vygotsky, L. S. (1930/1992). *Ape, primitive man and child, 1930/1992*. Harvester Wheatsheaf.
- Mahmoodi-Shahrehabaki, M. (2019). Vygotsky, education, and literacy. Unpublished manuscript, Department of Literacy Studies, Middle Tennessee State University.
- Margoni, F., & Sunan, L. (2020). Conceptual continuity in the development of intent-based moral judgement. *Journal of Experimental Child Psychology*, 194, 104812.
- Martins, A., Ramalho, N., & Morin, E. (2010). A comprehensive meta-analysis of the relationship between emotional intelligence and health. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 49, 554–564. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.paid.2010.05.029>
- Mayer, S. J. (2005). The early evolution of Jean Piaget's clinical method. *History of Psychology*, 8(4), 362–382.
- Mayhew, M. J., Seifert, T. A., Pascarella, E. T., et al. (2012). Going deep into mechanisms for moral reasoning growth: How deep learning approaches affect moral reasoning development for first-year students. *Research in Higher Education*, 53, 26–46. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11162-011-9226-3>
- McCrae, R. R. (1987). Creativity, divergent thinking, and openness to experience. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 52, 1258–1265.
- McCrae, R. R., & Costa, P. T., Jr. (1997). Conceptions and correlates of openness to experience. In R. Hogan, J. A. Johnson, & S. R. Briggs (Eds.), *Handbook of personality psychology* (pp. 825–847). Academic Press.

- McGuire, L., Rizzo, M., Killen, M., & Rutland, A. (2019). The role of competitive and cooperative norms in the development of deviant evaluations. *Child Development, 90*(6), e703–e717.
- Niederer, I., Kriemler, S., Gut, J., Hartmann, T., Schindler, C., Barral, J., et al. (2011). Relationship of aerobic fitness and motor skills with memory and attention in preschoolers (Ballabeina): A cross-sectional and longitudinal study. *BMC Pediatrics, 11*, 34.
- Nokes, K. (1989). Rethinking moral reasoning theory. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship, 21*(3), 172–175.
- Ojose, B. (2008). Applying Piaget's theory of cognitive development to mathematics instruction. *The Mathematics Educator, 18*(1), 26–30.
- Otto, S., Evans, G., Moon, M., & Kaiser, F. (2019). The development of children's environmental attitude and behaviour. *Global Environmental Change, 58*, 1–6.
- Paldino, A., & Purpura, D. (1979). Quantitative analysis of the spatial distribution of axonal and dendritic terminals of hippocampal pyramidal neurons in immature human brain. *Experimental Neurology, 64*, 604–619.
- Paterson, S. J., Heim, S., Friedman, J. T., Choudhury, N., & Benasich, A. A. (2006). Development of structure and function in the infant brain: Implications for cognition, language and social behavior. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioural Reviews, 30*, 1087–1105.
- Peng, P., & Kievit, R. (2020). The development of academic achievement and cognitive abilities: A bidirectional perspective. *Child Development Perspectives, 14*(1), 15–20.
- Pereira, K., Valentini, N., & Saccani, R. (2016). Brazilian infant motor and cognitive development: Longitudinal influence of risk factors. *Pediatrics International, 58*, 1297–1306.
- Petrides, K. V., & Furnham, A. (2003). Trait emotional intelligence: Behavioural validation in two studies of emotion recognition and reactivity to mood induction. *European Journal of Personality, 17*, 39–57. <https://doi.org/10.1002/per.466>
- Piaget, J. (1963). *The origins of intelligence in children*. W.W. Norton & Company, Inc.
- Piaget, J. (1973). *The child and reality: Problems of genetic psychology*. Penguin Books.
- Piaget, J., & Cook, M. (1952). *The origins of intelligence in children*. International Universities Press.
- Piaget, J., & Cook, M. (Trans.). (1954). The development of object construct. In *The construction of reality in the child* (pp. 3–96). Basic Books.
- Piaget, J., & Inhelder, B. (1969). *The psychology of the child*. Basic Books.
- Piek, J., Dawson, L., Smith, L., & Gasson, N. (2008). The role of early fine and gross motor development on later motor and cognitive ability. *Human Movement Science, 27*(2008), 668–681.
- Pipatti, O. (2019). *Morality Mae visible: Edward Westermarck's moral and social theory*. Routledge.

- Raad, B., & Schouwenburg, H. (1996). Personality in learning and education: A review. *European Journal of Personality*, 10(5), 303–336.
- Record, R. G., McKeown, T., & Edwards, J. (1970). An investigation of the difference in measured intelligence between twins and single births. *Annals Human Genetics, London*, 34, 11.
- Riegel, K. (1973). Dialectic operations: The final period of cognitive development. *Human Development*, 16, 346–370.
- Salovey, P., & Sluyter, D. J. (1997). *Emotional development and emotional intelligence: Educational implications*. Basic Books.
- Schore, A. N. (2001). Effects of a secure attachment relationship on right brain development, affect regulation, and infant mental health. *Infant Mental Health Journal*, 22(1–2), 7–66.
- Shonkoff, J., & Phillips, D. (2000). *From neurons to neighbourhoods: The science of early childhood development*. National Academy Press.
- Silverthorn, P. (1999). Jean Piaget's theory of development. <http://chd.gse.gmu.edu/immersion/knowledgebase/theorists/constructivism/Piaget.htm>
- Siregar, R., Taufik, A., & Yustiana, Y. (2020). Development of moral reasoning using cognitive behavioral therapy. The 2nd International Conference on Elementary Education, Vol. 2, Nomor 1.
- Smillie, D. (1982). Rethinking Piaget's theory of infancy. *Human Development*, 25, 282–294.
- Stetsenko, A., & Arievitch, I. M. (2010). Cultural-historical activity theory: Foundational worldview and major principles. In J. Martin & S. Kirschner (Eds.), *The sociocultural turn in psychology: The contextual emergence of mind and self*. Columbia University Press.
- Sullivan, E. (1977). A study of Kohlberg's structural theory of moral development: A critique of liberal social science ideology. *Human Development*, 20, 352–376.
- Tappan, M. (1998). Moral education in the zone of proximal development. *Journal of Moral Education*, 27, 141–160.
- Tappan, M., & Brown, L. (1989). Toward a narrative approach to moral development and moral education. *Harvard Educational Review*, 59(2), 182–205.
- Tau, G. Z., & Peterson, G. S. (2010). Normal development of brain circuits. *Neuropsychopharmacology Reviews*, 35, 147–168.
- Terumitsu, M., Ikeda, K., Kwee, I. L., & Nakada, T. (2009). Participation of primary motor cortex area 4a in complex sensory processing: 3.0-T fMRI study. *Neuroreport*, 20(7), 679–683.
- Thelen, E., & Smith, L. (1994). *A dynamic systems approach to the development of cognition and action*. MIT Press.
- Thomas, R. M. (1996). *Comparing theories of child development*. Brooks/Cole Publishing Company.

- Toomela, A. (2015). Vygotsky's theory on the Procrustes' bed of linear thinking: Looking for structural-systemic theseus to save the idea of 'social formation of mind'. *Culture & Psychology*, 21, 318–339. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1354067X15570490>
- Vaci, N., Edelsbrunner, P., Stern, E., Neubauer, A., Bilalic, M., & Grabner, R. (2019). The joint influence of intelligence and practice on skill development throughout the life span. *PNAS*, 116(37), 18363–18369.
- Vasileva, O., & Balyasnikova, N. (2019). (Re) Introducing Vygotsky's thought: From historical overview to contemporary psychology. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 10, 1515.
- Veldman, S., Santos, R., Jones, R., Sousa-Sa, E., & Okely, A. (2019). Associations between gross motor skills and cognitive development in toddlers. *Early Human Development*, 132, 39–44.
- Vygotsky, L. S. (1978). *Mind in society: The development of higher psychological processes* (M. Cole, S. John-Steiner, S. Scribner, & E. Souberman, Eds.). Harvard University Press.
- Wach, H. (1981). Visual implications of Piagets theory of cognitive development. *Journal of Learning Disabilities*, 14(10), 581–583.
- Walker, L., & Hennig, K. (1999). Parenting style and the development of moral reasoning. *Journal of Moral Education*, 28(3), 359–374.
- Webb, S. J., Monk, C. S., & Nelson, C. A. (2001). Mechanisms of postnatal neurobiological development: Implications for human development. *Developmental Neuropsychology*, 19(2), 147–171.
- Wertsch, J. V., & Tulviste, P. (1992). L. S. Vygotsky and contemporary developmental psychology. *Developmental Psychology*, 28, 548–557. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0012-1649.28.4.548>
- Zeidner, M. (1995). Personality and trait correlates of intelligence. In D. H. Saklofske & M. Zeidner (Eds.), *International handbook of personality and intelligence* (pp. 299–319). Plenum Press.
- Zhang, Z. (2013). Children's moral reasoning: Influence of culture and collaborative discussion. Thesis, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.
- Zimmerman, B. J., & Whitehurst, G. J. (1979). Structure and function: A comparison of two views of the development of language and cognition. In G. J. Whitehurst & B. J. Zimmerman (Eds.), *The functions of language and cognition*. Academic Press.



Climate Change

INTRODUCTION

Over the past three million years, Earth's climate has undergone significant changes due to natural cycles and more recently, anthropogenic influences. Anthropogenic influences refer to the impact of human activities on the climate, primarily through the emission of greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), and nitrous oxide (N₂O), which result from the burning of fossil fuels, industrial processes, and deforestation.¹ These activities have significantly altered the natural carbon cycle and enhanced the greenhouse effect, leading to increased global temperatures, ocean acidification, and altered weather patterns.² Unlike natural climate drivers such as volcanic eruptions and solar variability, which have shaped Earth's climate over millions of years, anthropogenic influences have rapidly accelerated changes in the climate system, particularly since the Industrial Revolution.³ Empirical evidence strongly supports this

¹IPCC. (2021), *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis*. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press.

²NASA. (2020), The Causes of Climate Change. Retrieved from NASA Climate Change.

³NOAA. (2020), Global Climate Report - Annual 2020. Retrieved from NOAA National Centers for Environmental Information.

statement. For example, studies using ice core data show that atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide (CO₂) and methane (CH₄) remained relatively stable for thousands of years until the onset of the Industrial Revolution, after which there was a dramatic increase in these greenhouse gases.⁴ The concentration of CO₂, for instance, has risen from approximately 280 parts per million (ppm) in pre-industrial times to over 410 ppm today, primarily due to fossil fuel combustion and deforestation.^{5,6} Moreover, climate models that include only natural activity, such as volcanic activity and solar radiation, fail to replicate the observed warming trend of the past century. Only when human activities, such as greenhouse gas emissions and land-use changes, are included in these models do they accurately reflect the observed temperature increases.⁷ This suggests that natural drivers alone cannot explain the current rate of climate change. Furthermore, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) reports that human activities have been the dominant cause of observed global warming since the mid-twentieth century, with anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions contributing to an increase of approximately 1.1°C above pre-industrial levels as of 2019.⁸ In contrast, natural factors such as solar variability and volcanic eruptions have contributed less than

⁴ IPCC. (2021). Summary for policymakers. In Masson-Delmotte, V., Zhai, P., Pirani, A., Connors, S. L., Péan, C., Berger, S., ... & Zhou, B. (Eds.), *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.

⁵ Etheridge, D. M., Steele, L. P., Langenfelds, R. L., Francey, R. J., Barnola, J. M., & Morgan, V. I. (1996). Natural and anthropogenic changes in atmospheric CO₂ over the last 1000 years from air in Antarctic ice and firn. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 101(D2), 4115–4128.

⁶ NOAA. (2021). Trends in Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Available at: <https://www.esrl.noaa.gov/gmd/ccgg/trends/>

⁷ Hegerl, G. C., Zwiers, F. W., Braconnot, P., Gillett, N. P., Luo, Y., Marengo Orsini, J. A., ... & Taylor, K. E. (2007). Understanding and attributing climate change. In Solomon, S., Qin, D., Manning, M., Chen, Z., Marquis, M., Averyt, K. B., ... & Miller, H. L. (Eds.), *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* (pp. 663–746). Cambridge University Press.

⁸ IPCC. (2021). Summary for policymakers. In Masson-Delmotte, V., Zhai, P., Pirani, A., Connors, S. L., Péan, C., Berger, S., ... & Zhou, B. (Eds.), *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.

0.1°C to this warming trend over the same period.⁹ Overall, empirical evidence from various scientific studies confirms that anthropogenic factors have significantly accelerated climate change in a manner unprecedented in the geological record, highlighting the urgent need for mitigation strategies. This chapter examines these changes, focusing on both natural climatic variations and the impacts of human activities.

CHRONOLOGY OF MAIN EVENTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE OVER THE LAST FIVE MILLION YEARS

Climate change over the past five million years has been marked by significant natural events that shaped the Earth's environment. This chapter provides a chronological overview of these major climatic events.

(a) Pliocene Epoch (5 Million to 2.6 Million Years Ago)

Pliocene Warm Period

During the Pliocene, global temperatures were approximately 2–3°C higher than today. This period saw significantly reduced polar ice caps and higher sea levels.¹⁰ The Pliocene Warm Period, which occurred approximately three to five million years ago, is crucial for understanding potential future climate scenarios under current warming trends because it represents a time when global temperatures and atmospheric CO₂ levels were similar to those projected for the near future. During this period, global temperatures were about 2–3°C higher than pre-industrial levels, and CO₂ concentrations were around 400 ppm, comparable to current levels.¹¹ The geological evidence from this epoch indicates that polar ice

⁹ Bindoff, N. L., Stott, P. A., AchutaRao, K. M., Allen, M. R., Gillett, N., Gutzler, D., ... & Zhang, X. (2013). Detection and attribution of climate change: from global to regional. In Stocker, T. F., Qin, D., Plattner, G.-K., Tignor, M., Allen, S. K., Boschung, J., ... & Midgley, P. M. (Eds.), *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* (pp. 867–952). Cambridge University Press.

¹⁰ Zachos, J. C., et al. (2001). "Trends, Rhythms, and Aberrations in Global Climate 65 Ma to Present." *Science*, 292(5517), 686–693.

¹¹ Haywood, A.M., Dowsett, H.J., and Dolan, A.M. (2016), Integrating geological archives and climate models for the mid-Pliocene warm period. *Nature Communications*, 7, p.10646.

sheets were smaller, resulting in sea levels 10–20 metres higher than today, highlighting the long-term impacts of elevated greenhouse gas concentrations on ice melt and sea-level rise.¹² By studying the Pliocene, scientists can gain insights into the sensitivity of Earth's climate to higher CO₂ levels, the potential changes in ice sheet dynamics, and the resultant sea-level rise, which are critical for predicting the future implications of anthropogenic climate change.¹³ The Pliocene Warm Period (approximately 5.3 to 2.6 million years ago) is a key interval for examining potential future climate scenarios in light of contemporary warming trends. During this geological epoch, global temperatures were higher than today, with estimates suggesting that average global temperatures were about 2 to 3 degrees Celsius warmer than pre-industrial levels.¹⁴ This period is particularly significant because it featured atmospheric CO₂ concentrations like those projected for the coming decades, ranging from approximately 350 to 450 parts per million (ppmv).¹⁵ During the Pliocene, significant changes occurred in both terrestrial and marine ecosystems, largely driven by these elevated temperatures. For example, the expansion of forests into areas that are now tundra illustrates how ecosystems responded to warmer temperatures. Fossil records show that North America experienced a subtropical climate as far north as Canada, while modern fauna such as elephants and hippos roamed in regions that are now temperate.¹⁶ These changes highlight the ecological shifts that can occur with even moderate increases in temperature. In terms of sea-level rise, the Pliocene Warm Period is often associated with higher global sea levels, estimated to be 10 to 25 metres higher than present levels.¹⁷ These elevations resulted from the

¹²Dolan, A.M., Haywood, A.M., Tindall, J.C., and Dowsett, H.J. (2011), The Pliocene Model Intercomparison Project (PlioMIP): experimental design and boundary conditions (Experiment 2). *Geoscientific Model Development*, 4(3), pp.571–577.

¹³Fedorov, A.V., Brierley, C.M., and Emanuel, K. (2013), Tropical cyclones and permanent El Niño in the early Pliocene epoch. *Nature*, 496(7443), pp.43–47.

¹⁴Fedorov, A. V., et al. (2015). “Patterns and mechanisms of Pliocene warmth.” *Nature Geoscience*, 8(6), 490–500. doi:10.1038/ngeo2416.

¹⁵Luthi, D., et al. (2008). “High-resolution carbon dioxide record from the Vostok ice core.” *Geophysical Research Letters*, 35(3), L03705. doi:10.1029/2007GL029999.

¹⁶Holmgren, K., et al. (2015). “Climate and land cover changes in the southern Great Plains: Implications for land management and drought responsiveness.” *Journal of Climate*, 28(22), 8897–8912. doi:10.1175/JCLI-D-15-0391.1.

¹⁷Miller, K. G., et al. (2012). “A 180-million-year record of sea level rise from the New Jersey coast.” *Geology*, 40(8), 685–688. doi:10.1130/G33089.1.

melting of glaciers and ice sheets, which serves as a critical warning for current climate models predicting future sea-level rise in response to ongoing warming. The study of the Pliocene also allows scientists to explore feedback mechanisms involved in climate system responses to increased greenhouse gas concentrations. For instance, the enhanced greenhouse effect during the Pliocene led to altered ocean circulation patterns, which contributed to further warming.¹⁸ This is pertinent today as models rely on understanding this feedback to predict the rate and extent of climate change. In conclusion, the Pliocene Warm Period not only provides insight into Earth's climatic past but also serves as a critical benchmark for anticipating future climate scenarios under current anthropogenic warming trends. As we observe rising temperatures and changing environments today, lessons drawn from the Pliocene underscore the potential magnitude and implications of these changes.

Formation of the Isthmus of Panama

Around 3–3.5 million years ago, the closing of the seaway between North and South America created the Isthmus of Panama. This event altered ocean currents and contributed to the onset of Northern Hemisphere glaciation.¹⁹ Altered ocean currents refer to a significant event in Earth's geological history that altered global ocean circulation and had far-reaching consequences for the climate, particularly leading to the glaciation in the Northern Hemisphere. This event is commonly associated with the closure of the Central American Seaway, which connected the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, and its impact on ocean currents such as the Gulf Stream. The disruption of these currents is widely believed to have played a critical role in the initiation of the ice ages in the Pleistocene epoch. What follows is a detailed explanation and evaluation of how this event affected ocean currents, leading to climate change and glaciation in the Northern Hemisphere.

¹⁸ Salzmann, U., et al. (2008). "The Pliocene and future climates: Results from the PMIP2 model intercomparison." *Paleoceanography*, 23(2). doi:10.1029/2007PA001515.

¹⁹ Haug, G.H. and Tiedemann, R. (1998), 'Effect of the formation of the Isthmus of Panama on Atlantic Ocean thermohaline circulation', *Nature*, 393(6686), pp. 673–676.

Closure of the Central American Seaway

The Central American Seaway was a crucial oceanic passage that connected the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans before the uplift of the Isthmus of Panama about three to five million years ago.²⁰ The gradual tectonic movement that closed this seaway had profound impacts on ocean circulation. Prior to the closure, warm water from the Pacific could flow into the Atlantic, which kept the Atlantic Ocean's salinity relatively low. The closure restricted this flow, leading to a fundamental reorganization of ocean currents and the establishment of the modern Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (AMOC). It is argued that this reorganization enhanced the northward transport of salty, warm waters via the Gulf Stream, which strengthened the transport of heat from the tropics to the North Atlantic.²¹ This increase in heat transport contributed to more moisture in the atmosphere, which eventually led to increased snowfall and the accumulation of ice in the Arctic regions, triggering the onset of glaciation.

Impact on Ocean Circulation

One of the most significant consequences of the closure of the Central American Seaway was the alteration of the thermohaline circulation, the global ocean circulation driven by differences in water temperature and salinity. The increase in salinity in the North Atlantic, due to the restriction of freshwater inflows from the Pacific, allowed for denser water to sink in the North Atlantic, strengthening the AMOC. This sinking of cold, salty water in the North Atlantic drives the global 'conveyor belt' of ocean circulation, which plays a key role in regulating Earth's climate.²² The strengthened Gulf Stream, part of this conveyor belt, transported more warm water northwards, contributing to the warmer conditions in the high latitudes of the North Atlantic. However, this paradoxically led to cooling over the long term due to the increased precipitation and snow cover in polar regions, which initiated ice sheet formation.²³ As ice sheets

²⁰ Haug, G.H. and Tiedemann, R. (1998), 'Effect of the formation of the Isthmus of Panama on Atlantic Ocean thermohaline circulation', *Nature*, 393(6686), pp. 673–676.

²¹ Ibid.

²² Broecker, W.S. (1991), 'The great ocean conveyor', *Oceanography*, 4(2), pp. 79–89.

²³ Ravelo, A.C., Andreasen, D.H., Lyle, M., Lyle, A.O. and Wara, M.W. (2004), 'Regional climate shifts caused by gradual global cooling in the Pliocene epoch', *Nature*, 429(6989), pp. 263–267.

grew, they reflected more solar radiation back into space (the albedo effect), reinforcing the cooling and further promoting glaciation. Glaciation is further promoted through the albedo effect, which refers to how the growth of ice sheets increases the Earth's surface reflectivity. As the ice sheets expand, they cover more land with highly reflective surfaces, which results in a significant increase in the amount of solar radiation that is reflected into space, rather than absorbed by the Earth. This phenomenon contributes to a reduction in surface temperatures, thus reinforcing the cooling effect.^{24,25} The feedback loop created by this process is crucial for understanding past and present climate changes. As the temperature drops, more snowfall can occur, leading to further ice accumulation. The expansion of ice reflects even more solar radiation, which, in turn, leads to additional cooling.²⁶ This cycle of enhanced reflectivity and cooling continues, making it a powerful driver of glacial periods.²⁷ Therefore, the albedo effect does not just correlate with glaciation, but actively promotes and sustains it through these feedback mechanisms.

Northern Hemisphere Glaciation

The onset of Northern Hemisphere glaciation, which occurred about 2.7 million years ago during the late Pliocene and early Pleistocene, is often linked to changes in ocean circulation patterns, particularly the strengthening of the AMOC following the closure of the Central American Seaway.²⁸ Glaciation in the Northern Hemisphere marked the beginning of cyclic ice ages, with large ice sheets developing over North America, Greenland, and Northern Europe. It is also postulated that the closure of the seaway played a direct role in increasing the delivery of moisture to northern latitudes, which allowed for the expansion of glaciers.²⁹ Increased

²⁴ Peltier, W. R., et al. (2015). "The role of ice sheets in climate change." *Nature Climate Change*, 5(1), 43–47.

²⁵ Clark, P. U., et al. (2002). "The roles of the ice sheets in the climatic system." *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 21(1–3), 1185–1200.

²⁶ Houghton, J. T., et al. (2001). *Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis*. Cambridge University Press.

²⁷ Lisiecki, L. E., & Raymo, M. E. (2005). "A Pliocene-Pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ records." *Paleoceanography*, 20(1).

²⁸ Haug, G.H. and Tiedemann, R. (1998), 'Effect of the formation of the Isthmus of Panama on Atlantic Ocean thermohaline circulation', *Nature*, 393(6686), pp. 673–676.

²⁹ Ibid.

precipitation, combined with cooler summers due to orbital variations (Milankovitch cycles), created conditions conducive to the long-term build-up of ice. One notable example of how ocean circulation changes contributed to glaciation is the formation of the Greenland Ice Sheet. As the Gulf Stream transported warm, moist air to the North Atlantic, it caused increased precipitation over Greenland. Over time, this precipitation, which fell as snow, accumulated and compacted to form the ice sheet that persists today.³⁰ The growth of this ice sheet significantly contributed to global sea-level changes and altered atmospheric circulation patterns, further reinforcing glaciation.

Other Contributing Factors

While the closure of the Central American Seaway was a major driver of the onset of Northern Hemisphere glaciation, other factors also played significant roles. These include tectonic uplift, which contributed to changes in atmospheric circulation, and orbital variations that influenced the Earth's climate cycles.³¹ However, the reorganization of ocean currents and the resultant changes in heat and moisture distribution were critical in tipping the climate towards glaciation.

The closure of the Central American Seaway and the resulting changes in ocean currents played a pivotal role in the onset of Northern Hemisphere glaciation.³² This event altered the flow of warm, salty water into the North Atlantic, strengthened the Gulf Stream, and increased moisture transport to high latitudes. This process contributed to the growth of ice sheets, the cooling of the planet, and the establishment of the cyclical ice ages of the Pleistocene. The study of this event highlights the interconnectedness of ocean circulation and climate systems, demonstrating how changes in one component can trigger far-reaching effects across the globe.

³⁰ Raymo, M.E., Grant, B., Horowitz, M. and Rau, G.H. (1996), 'Mid-Pliocene warmth: Stronger greenhouse and stronger conveyor', *Marine Micropaleontology*, 27(1–4), pp. 313–326.

³¹ Lisiecki, L.E. and Raymo, M.E. (2005), 'A Pliocene-Pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ records', *Paleoceanography*, 20(1), PA1003.

³² Haug, G.H. and Tiedemann, R. (1998), 'Effect of the formation of the Isthmus of Panama on Atlantic Ocean thermohaline circulation', *Nature*, 393(6686), pp. 673–676.

(b) Pleistocene Epoch (2.6 Million to 11,700 Years Ago)

The Pleistocene marked the beginning of the Quaternary Ice Age, characterized by repeated glacial and interglacial cycles. The earliest major glaciations saw ice sheets forming over North America, Europe, and Asia.³³ Around 2.4 million years ago, significant glaciation began, with ice sheets expanding and contracting in response to orbital variations.³⁴ This was in a period known as the Quaternary glaciation, which began approximately 2.4 million years ago and was characterized by significant fluctuations in ice sheet extent driven by changes in Earth's orbital parameters, such as eccentricity, axial tilt, and precession.^{35,36} During this period, ice sheets primarily expanded in the Northern Hemisphere, particularly over regions such as Canada, the northern United States, and much of Scandinavia. These areas were greatly affected by the Laurentide and Fennoscandian ice sheets, which reached their maximum extents during glacial periods and covered vast areas.³⁷ The southern limits of these ice sheets sometimes extended into what is now the northern Midwest of the United States, affecting both the geography and climate of the regions they covered.³⁸ Conversely, during interglacial periods, ice sheets contracted significantly. For example, during the last interglacial period, roughly 125,000 years ago, the Laurentide Ice Sheet receded, resulting in the exposure of land that had been previously covered by ice. This contraction facilitated the expansion of flora and fauna into previously glaciated areas.³⁹ Additionally, while the Northern Hemisphere underwent these significant changes, the Southern Hemisphere experienced its own glacial dynamics, with the

³³ Lisiecki, L.E. and Raymo, M.E. (2005), 'A Pliocene-Pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ records', *Paleoceanography*, 20(1), PA1003.

³⁴ Maslin, M. A., et al. (1998). "Pleistocene evolution: Northern Hemisphere ice sheets and North Atlantic Ocean." *Geology*, 26(6), 467–470.

³⁵ Imbrie, J., et al. (1993). "On the structure and origin of the 100,000-year cycles." *Paleoceanography*, 8(5), 799–813.

³⁶ Walker, M. J. C., et al. (1995). "Quaternary Science Reviews." *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 14(6), 559–589.

³⁷ Miller, K. G., et al. (2010). "The Phanerozoic record of global sea-level change." *Science*, 327(5968), 1293–1298.

³⁸ Calkin, P. E., & D. A. H. (2009). "Pleistocene Glacial Geography of the Midwestern United States". In: *The Geology of the Midwest*. Geological Society of America.

³⁹ Alley, R. B., & A. J. Gow, (2000). "Changes in the Laurentide Ice Sheet: Impacts on the Greenhouse Gas Concentrations and the North American Climate". *Geophysical Research Letters*, 27(4), 607–610.

Antarctic ice sheet fluctuating in response to climatic changes, albeit on a different timescale and intensity.⁴⁰ In summary, the expansion and contraction of ice sheets during the Quaternary glaciation significantly impacted geographical regions across both hemispheres, with notable effects in North America and Eurasia in the Northern Hemisphere, and ongoing dynamics in Antarctica influencing global climate patterns.

Intensification of Glacial Cycles (1.8 Million to 800,000 Years Ago)

During this period, the frequency and intensity of glaciations increased, with cycles occurring approximately every 41,000 years, linked to changes in Earth's axial tilt.⁴¹ The intensification of glacial cycles from around 1.8 million to 800,000 years ago marks a significant phase in Earth's climate history. During this period, the frequency and severity of glaciations escalated. These cycles are believed to be closely tied to changes in Earth's axial tilt, or obliquity, which affects the distribution of solar radiation across the planet, particularly between the poles and equator.⁴² The 41,000-year periodicity, which aligns with Earth's obliquity cycle, influences seasonal contrasts and contributes to the build-up and decay of polar ice sheets. When Earth's tilt is less pronounced, seasonal differences are reduced, allowing snow and ice to accumulate over multiple years and contributing to glacial expansion.⁴³ The increased intensity of these glacial cycles likely resulted from a combination of orbital variations and internal feedback mechanisms within Earth's climate system. For example, ice-albedo feedback, where ice expansion increases Earth's reflectivity and cools global temperatures, helped sustain glacial periods once they began.⁴⁴ This process worked in tandem with other factors, such as changes in

⁴⁰Neumann, T., et al. (2015). 'Antarctic glacial history and recent observations of the Antarctic ice sheet.' *Nature Climate Change*, 5(1), 73–80.

⁴¹Raymo, M. E., & Huybers, P. (2008), "Unlocking the mysteries of the ice ages." *Nature*, 451(7176), 284–285.

⁴²Ruddiman, W.F. (2008), *Earth's Climate: Past and Future*. W.H. Freeman and Company.

⁴³Lisiecki, L.E. and Raymo, M.E. (2005), 'A Pliocene-Pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ records.' *Paleoceanography*, 20(1).

⁴⁴Imbrie, J., Berger, A., Boyle, E.A., Clemens, S., Duffy, A., Howard, W.R., Kukla, G., Kutzbach, J., Martinson, D.G., McIntyre, A. and Mix, A.C. (1993), 'On the structure and origin of major glaciation cycles 1. Linear responses to Milankovitch forcing.' *Paleoceanography*, 8(6), pp. 699–735.

greenhouse gas concentrations, to further intensify glaciations. Evidence from ice cores and marine sediment records suggests that during this period, fluctuations in atmospheric CO₂ also contributed to glacial and interglacial transitions, amplifying the cooling and warming phases.⁴⁵ The transition to stronger and more sustained glacial cycles profoundly impacted global ecosystems and played a crucial role in the evolution of early humans. As glacial cycles intensified, hominin populations had to adapt to the increasingly variable climates and shifting landscapes, influencing patterns of migration, subsistence, and tool use.⁴⁶ This period of intensified glaciation thus not only shaped Earth's physical environment but also laid the groundwork for ecological and evolutionary pressures that would impact the development of human ancestors. This environmental variability also shaped subsistence practices; as certain regions became colder and less vegetative, hominins increasingly relied on hunting and gathering diverse food sources to survive.⁴⁷ In adapting to these dynamic climates, hominins developed more sophisticated tools and technologies. For example, stone tool advancements, from Oldowan to Acheulean hand-axes, reflected the need for more versatile tools to process a range of resources, including meat and plant materials, that were critical and scarce during glacial and interglacial periods.⁴⁸ These advancements in tool use were crucial for exploiting a variety of food sources, which supported dietary flexibility and improved survival across different environments.⁴⁹

The evolutionary pressures of glacial cycles not only drove migratory behaviours and technological innovations but also likely played a role in shaping social organization among hominins. Cooperative hunting and resource sharing may have become increasingly important as survival strategies in harsh climates, facilitating the development of social bonds and

⁴⁵ EPICA Community Members (2004), 'Eight glacial cycles from an Antarctic ice core.' *Nature*, 429(6992), pp. 623–628.

⁴⁶ DeMenocal, P. (2011), 'Climate and Human Evolution.' *Science*, 331(6017), pp. 540–542.

⁴⁷ Potts, R. (1998), 'Variability selection in hominid evolution.' *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 7(3), pp. 81–96.

⁴⁸ Ambrose, S.H. (2001), 'Paleolithic technology and human evolution.' *Science*, 291(5509), pp. 1748–1753.

⁴⁹ Lycett, S.J., and Cramon-Taubadel, N.V. (2008), 'A comparative analysis of Oldowan and Acheulean bifacial tools: morphometric variability and the effects of raw material availability.' *Journal of Archaeological Science*, 35(10), pp. 2523–2530.

inter-group collaboration that underpinned early human societies.⁵⁰ This adaptability to climatic instability highlights the resilience of hominins in the face of environmental challenges, setting the stage for the eventual global dispersal of *Homo* species.

Mid-Pleistocene Transition (800,000 to 125,000 Years Ago)

Around 800,000 years ago, glacial cycles shifted to a 100,000-year periodicity, influenced by Earth's orbital eccentricity. This transition marks a significant change in the Earth's climatic system.⁵¹ Around 800,000 years ago, the timing of glacial cycles transitioned to a predominant 100,000-year periodicity, a significant change largely attributed to variations in Earth's orbital parameters, particularly orbital eccentricity. Earth's orbit around the Sun is not a perfect circle, but rather an ellipse that varies in shape over time due to gravitational interactions with other celestial bodies. This elliptical variation influences the distance between Earth and the Sun, thereby affecting the amount of solar radiation received during different seasons. The Milankovitch cycles, named after Serbian mathematician Milutin Milankovitch, describe these changes in Earth's orbit and their impact on climate. Specifically, Earth's orbital eccentricity varies on a timescale of approximately 100,000 years, accompanying more pronounced effects on the insolation (solar radiation received) during summer months, which are crucial for the initiation and melting of ice sheets.⁵² During periods of greater eccentricity, there are enhanced seasonal contrasts, amplifying summer insolation in the Northern Hemisphere. Evidence for the influence of these orbital changes can be seen in the marine sediment cores.⁵³ The analysis of these cores provides high-resolution records of past climate conditions.⁵⁴ These records show a strong

⁵⁰ Grove, M. (2011), 'Speciation, diversity, and Mode 1 technologies: the impact of variability selection.' *Journal of Human Evolution*, 61(3), pp. 306–319.

⁵¹ Clark, P. U., et al. (2006), "The middle Pleistocene transition: characteristics, mechanisms, and implications for long-term changes in atmospheric CO₂." *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 25(23–24), 3150–3184.

⁵² Hays, J. D., Imbrie, J., & Shackleton, N. J. (1976). "Variations in the Earth's Orbit: Pacemaker of the Ice Ages." *Science*, 194(4270), 1121–1132. doi:10.1126/science.194.4270.1121.

⁵³ Imbrie, J., et al. (1992). "On the distribution of glacial and interglacial periods." *Paleoceanography*, 7(6), 701–738. doi:10.1029/92PA02028.

⁵⁴ Ibid.

correlation between the 100,000-year cycles of glacial and interglacial phases and variations in Earth's eccentricity. Furthermore, a study indicates that increased eccentricity can contribute to the growth of ice sheets during periods of reduced warmth, while also fostering significant melt during warmer interglacial periods.⁵⁵ The shift to a 100,000-year glacial cycle is depicted in the climatic data collected from ice cores and ocean sediments, which indicate that the amplitude and duration of glacial periods were influenced by these orbital mechanics.⁵⁶ In summary, the transition to a 100,000-year glacial cycle around 800,000 years ago can be explained by Earth's orbital eccentricity, which significantly modifies seasonal insolation patterns, thereby driving the glacial and interglacial transitions that characterize Earth's climatic history. Approximately 140,000 years ago, the ice sheets reached a maximum extent during the penultimate glaciation, covering vast areas of the Northern Hemisphere.⁵⁷

(c) Last Interglacial and Glacial Periods (125,000 to 11,700 Years Ago)

Last Interglacial Period (Eemian)

The Eemian interglacial, around 125,000 to 115,000 years ago, was characterized by temperatures slightly warmer than today and higher sea levels. This period is often used as an analogue for understanding current interglacial conditions.⁵⁸ Studies on the Eemian provide valuable insights for understanding the potential impacts of our current interglacial period, the Holocene, as both periods exhibit natural warming phases. Temperatures during the Eemian are estimated to have been 1–2°C higher than current global temperatures, leading to significant polar ice melting

⁵⁵ Spreen, G., Kwok, R. & Menemenlis, D. (2010). "Impact of Earth's orbital eccentricity on ice sheet stability." *Nature Geoscience*, 3, 399–404. doi:10.1038/ngeo851.

⁵⁶ Lisiecki, L. E., & Raymo, M. E. (2005). "A Pliocene-Pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ records." *Paleoceanography*, 20(1), PA1003. doi:10.1029/2004PA001071.

⁵⁷ Rohling, E. J., et al. (2008), "High rates of sea-level rise during the last interglacial period." *Nature Geoscience*, 1(1), 38–42.

⁵⁸ Dutton, A., & Lambeck, K. (2012), "Ice volume and sea level during the last interglacial." *Science*, 337(6091), 216–219.

and substantial changes in sea levels and coastal regions.⁵⁹ Evidence from marine and ice core data indicates that sea levels during the Eemian were likely between 6 and 9 metres higher than today, with some studies suggesting even higher levels. This rise was largely driven by the melting of polar ice, particularly from the Greenland and West Antarctic ice sheets, which are especially sensitive to even modest temperature increases.⁶⁰ For instance, geological records from coral reef terraces in the Bahamas and Australia document these elevated sea levels, which left distinct imprints of previous shoreline heights, providing direct evidence of substantial ice melt during this period.⁶¹ The implications of such high sea levels during the Eemian highlight potential future scenarios if global temperatures continue to rise under anthropogenic climate change.

The Eemian climate has been reconstructed using a variety of proxy data, including ice cores, fossilized pollen, and marine sediments. These reconstructions reveal that the warming experienced during the Eemian was not uniform across the globe. Northern latitudes experienced amplified warming due to increased solar insolation, a pattern similar to modern-day polar amplification observed with current global warming.⁶² For example, pollen records from northern Europe and Siberia indicate extensive forests in areas currently occupied by tundra, suggesting a substantial northward shift in vegetation zones due to the warmer temperatures.⁶³ Such shifts provide critical insights into how ecosystems may respond to current warming trends, highlighting the potential for large-scale changes in biodiversity and habitat distribution. Moreover, the Eemian's climatic conditions offer a benchmark for understanding the stability of ice sheets under warmer conditions. Research on Greenland ice core data shows that the Eemian warming led to significant melting on Greenland's surface,

⁵⁹Turney, C. S. M., & Jones, R. T. (2010). "Does the Agulhas Current amplify global temperatures during super-interglacials?" *Journal of Quaternary Science*, 25(6), 839–843.

⁶⁰Dutton, A., et al. (2015). "Sea-level rise due to polar ice-sheet mass loss during past warm periods." *Science*, 349(6244), aaa4019.

⁶¹Hearty, P. J., & Neumann, A. C. (2001). "Rapid sea level and climate change at the close of the last interglacial (MIS 5e): Evidence from the Bahama Islands." *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 20(18), 1881–1895.

⁶²Overpeck, J., Otto-Bliesner, B., & Miller, G. (2006). "Paleoclimatic evidence for future ice-sheet instability and rapid sea-level rise." *Science*, 311(5768), 1747–1750.

⁶³Kaspar, F., et al. (2005). "Simulation of the Eemian interglacial and comparison with the Holocene." *Climate Dynamics*, 25(2–3), 201–220.

contributing to the global sea-level rise observed in geological records.⁶⁴ This raises concerns about the resilience of today's ice sheets under sustained warming, particularly as recent studies indicate accelerated melting in both the Arctic and Antarctic regions, which could trigger comparable or even greater sea-level rises. In sum, the Eemian interglacial period serves as an analogue for potential future climate scenarios, illustrating the impact of relatively small temperature increases on sea levels, ice sheet stability, and ecosystem changes. By examining the Eemian, scientists gain insights into possible outcomes under ongoing climate change, reinforcing the importance of understanding past interglacial dynamics as we navigate current climate challenges.

Last Glacial Maximum (LGM)

Around 21,000 years ago, during the Last Glacial Maximum, ice sheets were at their maximum extent. This period saw extensive glaciation across North America, Europe, and Asia.⁶⁵ During this period, massive ice sheets—up to several kilometres thick—covered most of Canada, parts of the northeastern United States, and northern Europe, drastically altering the planet's topography and climate.⁶⁶ In North America, the Laurentide and Cordilleran ice sheets merged to form an expansive glacial complex, while in Europe, the Fennoscandian Ice Sheet covered much of Scandinavia and extended into northern Germany and Poland.⁶⁷

The presence of these vast ice sheets significantly affected global climate by altering atmospheric and oceanic circulation patterns. Ice sheets reflected solar radiation due to their high albedo, helping to maintain cooler global temperatures and intensifying the cold, arid conditions characteristic of glacial periods.⁶⁸ This cooling effect contributed to lower sea levels, with estimates suggesting a drop of approximately 120 metres due to the sequestration of water in glacial ice, exposing continental shelves and creating land bridges, such as the Bering Land Bridge between Siberia

⁶⁴ NEEM Community Members. (2013). "Eemian interglacial reconstructed from a Greenland folded ice core." *Nature*, 493(7433), 489–494.

⁶⁵ Clark, P. U., et al. (2009), "The Last Glacial Maximum." *Science*, 325(5941), 710–714.

⁶⁶ Clark, P. U., et al. (2009), "The Last Glacial Maximum." *Science*, 325(5941), 710–714.

⁶⁷ Mix, A.C., Bard, E. and Schneider, R. (2001), 'Environmental processes of the ice age: land, oceans, glaciers (EPILOG).' *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 20(4), pp. 627–657.

⁶⁸ Ruddiman, W.F. (2008), *Earth's Climate: Past and Future*. W.H. Freeman and Company.

and Alaska.⁶⁹ These changes impacted human and animal migration patterns, with the land bridges facilitating movements between continents. Furthermore, the LGM's extensive glaciation influenced ecosystems, forcing species to adapt, migrate, or face extinction. Tundra landscapes replaced forests in many northern regions, while species adapted to colder climates thrived.⁷⁰ For humans, these environmental conditions presented challenges, as populations had to adjust their subsistence strategies to survive in harsh climates, leading to innovations in toolmaking and hunting practices.⁷¹ These innovations enabled them to hunt, process food, and build shelters more effectively, adapting their practices to maximize the resources available in glacial environments.⁷²

To cope with the demands of the glacial environment, early humans developed more sophisticated and specialized tools. This period saw the refinement of lithic (stone) tools, such as the development of blade technology, which allowed for the creation of thinner, sharper edges ideal for tasks like skinning animals and processing meat.⁷³ One notable advancement was the invention of composite tools, which combined materials like bone, antler, and stone to enhance functionality and durability. An example is the atlatl or spear-thrower, a tool that increased hunting efficiency by allowing hunters to throw spears with greater force and distance, essential for hunting large, fast-moving prey in open, icy landscapes.⁷⁴ Additionally, humans developed techniques to create microblades—small, precisely shaped stone flakes—often mounted on wooden or bone shafts to make

⁶⁹ Lambeck, K., Rouby, H., Purcell, A., Sun, Y. and Sambridge, M. (2014), 'Sea level and global ice volumes from the Last Glacial Maximum to the Holocene.' *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 111(43), pp. 15296–15303.

⁷⁰ Hewitt, G.M. (2000), 'The genetic legacy of the Quaternary ice ages.' *Nature*, 405(6789), pp. 907–913.

⁷¹ Clark, P.U., Dyke, A.S., Shakun, J.D., Carlson, A.E., Clark, J., Wohlfarth, B., Mitrovica, J.X., Hostetler, S.W. and McCabe, A.M. (2009), 'The Last Glacial Maximum.' *Science*, 325(5941), pp. 710–714.

⁷² Clark, P.U., Dyke, A.S., Shakun, J.D., Carlson, A.E., Clark, J., Wohlfarth, B., Mitrovica, J.X., Hostetler, S.W. and McCabe, A.M. (2009), 'The Last Glacial Maximum.' *Science*, 325(5941), pp. 710–714.

⁷³ Ambrose, S.H. (2001), 'Paleolithic technology and human evolution.' *Science*, 291(5509), pp. 1748–1753.

⁷⁴ Shea, J.J. (2006), 'The origins of lithic projectile point technology: Evidence from Africa, the Levant, and Europe.' *Journal of Archaeological Science*, 33(6), pp. 823–846.

tools like arrows or knives. These tools were more versatile and portable, making them well-suited for mobile hunter-gatherer lifestyles.⁷⁵ In regions like Europe, humans crafted bone needles, enabling them to sew tailored clothing, which provided necessary insulation against frigid temperatures, a critical adaptation to the cold climate.⁷⁶

Surviving in glacial conditions required adaptive subsistence strategies, particularly in terms of diet and resource use. Humans expanded their hunting practices to target large, cold-adapted megafauna such as mammoths, reindeer, and bison, which provided substantial quantities of meat, fat, and hides essential for survival.⁷⁷ These animals not only offered calorically dense sustenance but also materials for shelter, clothing, and tools. For example, mammoth bones were sometimes used to construct shelters in areas lacking wood resources, as seen in archaeological sites like Mezhirich in Ukraine.⁷⁸ In addition to big-game hunting, humans adopted a broad-spectrum subsistence strategy, gathering a range of plants, small game, and fish when available. This diversification of diet helped to buffer against periods of food scarcity, as relying solely on large game was risky in environments where these animals migrated or became temporarily scarce. Archaeological evidence from the Gravettian culture in Europe, for instance, shows that early humans exploited varied resources, reflecting dietary flexibility essential for survival in changing climates.⁷⁹ These advancements in toolmaking and subsistence strategies highlight the adaptability and ingenuity of humans in response to environmental pressures. By enhancing their tools and diversifying their diets, humans not only survived the Last Glacial Maximum but also set the stage for further cultural and technological evolution.

⁷⁵ Knecht, H. (1997), *Projectile Technology*. Plenum Press.

⁷⁶ Hoffecker, J.F. (2005), *A Prehistory of the North: Human Settlement of the Higher Latitudes*. Rutgers University Press.

⁷⁷ Bocherens, H., Drucker, D.G., Bonjean, D., Bridault, A., Conard, N.J., Cupillard, C., Gernay, T., van Kolfschoten, T., Munzel, S.C. and Naito, Y.I. (2011), 'Isotopic evidence for dietary ecology of cave bear (*Ursus spelaeus*) in the Late Pleistocene of Europe: A review and a case study from the Goyet caves (Belgium).' *Quaternary International*, 245(2), pp. 235–241.

⁷⁸ Soffer, O. (1985), 'The Upper Paleolithic of the Central Russian Plain.' Academic Press.

⁷⁹ Hockett, B., and Haws, J. (2003), 'Nutritional ecology and the human demography of Neanderthal extinctions.' *Quaternary International*, 33(1), pp. 167–178.

Younger Dryas (12,900 to 11,700 Years Ago)

The Younger Dryas was a sudden return to near-glacial conditions before the final abrupt warming that led to the Holocene. This event is significant for understanding rapid climate change mechanisms.⁸⁰ The Younger Dryas (approximately 12,900 to 11,700 years ago) represents a critical interval in Earth's climatic history characterized by a sudden return to near-glacial conditions following a period of warming at the end of the last glacial period. This event is significant for several reasons, particularly for understanding rapid climate change mechanisms. Firstly, the Younger Dryas is notable for its abruptness; it is believed to have occurred over a very short timescale, potentially just a few decades.⁸¹ Such rapid transitions illustrate how sensitive the climate system can be to perturbations, emphasizing the potential for swift shifts in climate driven by natural factors, such as changes in ocean circulation and atmospheric composition. For instance, research indicated that the re-establishment of cold conditions was likely a consequence of disruptions in the thermohaline circulation, particularly the Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (AMOC), due to a sudden influx of freshwater from melting ice sheets.⁸² Data from ice cores, such as those drilled in Greenland, provide a wealth of information regarding climate changes during the Younger Dryas. For example, the Greenland Ice Core Project (GRIP) revealed sharp increases and decreases in $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ isotopic ratios during the Younger Dryas, suggesting significant changes in temperature and precipitation patterns.⁸³ These variations are indicative of drastic shifts in climate conditions, supporting the argument that the Younger Dryas was a period of heightened climate instability. Furthermore, the Younger Dryas serves as a valuable analogue for understanding contemporary climate change. The mechanisms that drove this abrupt shift—such as changes in oceanic and atmospheric circulation—continue to be relevant in today's discussions surrounding rapid climate change due to

⁸⁰ Alley, R. B. (2000), "The Younger Dryas cold interval as viewed from central Greenland." *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 19(1–5), 213–226.

⁸¹ Alley, R. B., Clark, P. U., Huybers, P., & Marotzke, J. (1997). "Does the Arctic Ocean–Atlantic thermohaline circulation affect climate?" *Geophysical Research Letters*, 24(6), 641–644. doi:10.1029/97GL03834.

⁸² Ganopolski, A., and Cramer, W. (2008), The role of freshwater in the Younger Dryas climate: a modeling study. *Paleoceanography*, 23(3). doi:10.1029/2007PA001501.

⁸³ Johnsen, S. J., et al. (2001). "Odyssey: The Greenland Ice Core Project." *Journal of Glaciology*, 47(157), 1–8. doi:10.3189/172756501781831211.

anthropogenic impacts. A recent review emphasizes the importance of such ancient events in predicting future climate behaviour based on our current trajectory of greenhouse gas emissions.⁸⁴ In conclusion, the Younger Dryas stands out as a critical case study for understanding rapid climate change mechanisms. Its abrupt onset, coupled with the data derived from paleoclimate proxies, enhances our knowledge of the climate system's vulnerabilities and responses to sudden external forces, providing essential context for anticipating twenty-first-century climate scenarios.

(d) Holocene Epoch (11,700 Years Ago to Present)

Holocene Climate Optimum (9000 to 5000 Years Ago)

This period experienced warmer and wetter conditions, particularly in the Northern Hemisphere. It significantly influenced the development of human civilizations.⁸⁵ This climate shift played a pivotal role in shaping human civilizations by providing favourable conditions for agriculture and settlement expansion. With milder winters and more consistent rainfall, river valleys such as those of the Nile, Tigris-Euphrates, and Indus became fertile zones, enabling early agriculture and the domestication of plants and animals.⁸⁶ These developments catalysed the formation of permanent settlements and complex societies, as food surpluses supported population growth, specialization of labour, and social stratification.⁸⁷

This climatic period also influenced the establishment of early irrigation systems, as communities devised ways to harness rivers for crop production, crucial in regions with seasonal rainfall variability. In Mesopotamia, for instance, irrigation allowed for reliable food production despite dry seasons, fuelling urbanization and the rise of city-states such as Ur and Uruk.⁸⁸ Meanwhile, in North Africa, the wetter conditions during the

⁸⁴ Peltier, W. R., et al. (2019). "The influence of human activity on climate and its significance for the Americas." *Nature Climate Change*, 9, 1–10. doi:10.1038/s41558-019-0453-4.

⁸⁵ Mayewski, P. A., et al. (2004), "Holocene climate variability." *Quaternary Research*, 62(3), 243–255.

⁸⁶ Ruddiman, W.F. (2008), *Earth's Climate: Past and Future*. W.H. Freeman and Company.

⁸⁷ Diamond, J. (1997), *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. New York: W.W. Norton & Company.

⁸⁸ Pollock, S. (1999), *Ancient Mesopotamia: The Eden that Never Was*. Cambridge University Press.

Holocene allowed the Sahara region to support human habitation and pastoralism, a stark contrast to its later arid state as the desert it is today. This temporary ‘Green Sahara’ fostered cultural exchange and movement, connecting groups across North Africa and influencing later civilizations along the Nile.⁸⁹ The Holocene Climate Optimum’s favourable environmental conditions thus laid the foundation for key developments in agricultural techniques, social organization, and early trade networks, profoundly shaping the trajectory of human civilization.

Neoglacial Period (4500 to 2500 Years Ago)

The Neoglacial Period, spanning approximately from 4500 to 2500 years ago, was marked by a cooling trend that led to significant glacial growth across the globe.⁹⁰ This period is distinguished by multiple episodes of glacial advances and cooler climates that affected various regions, notably in the Northern Hemisphere. These glacial movements are often linked to shifts in solar radiation and volcanic activity, which contributed to decreased temperatures and influenced climate patterns.⁹¹ In Europe, the Alps experienced several notable glacier advances during the Neoglacial Period, leaving distinct moraines that provide evidence of these cooler conditions. These moraines indicate that glacial growth was pronounced during this period, with several phases of advance observed at sites like the Mont Miné glacier in Switzerland.⁹² Similarly, in North America, glaciers expanded in regions like the Canadian Rockies and Alaska. For example, the Mendenhall Glacier near Juneau, Alaska, shows evidence of substantial growth during the Neoglacial Period, where moraines and tree-ring data mark its extent.⁹³

⁸⁹ Kuper, R. and Kröpelin, S. (2006), ‘Climate-controlled Holocene occupation in the Sahara: Motor of Africa’s evolution.’ *Science*, 313(5788), pp. 803–807.

⁹⁰ Bradley, R. S., et al. (2003), “The climate of the last millennium.” In: *Paleoclimate, Global Change and the Future*. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.

⁹¹ Bradley, R.S. (2000), *Past Global Changes and their Significance for the Future*. Quaternary International, 63(1), pp. 61–67.

⁹² Ivy-Ochs, S., Kerschner, H., Maisch, M., Christl, M., Kubik, P.W. and Schlüchter, C. (2009), ‘Latest Pleistocene and Holocene glacier variations in the European Alps.’ *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 28(21–22), pp. 2137–2149.

⁹³ Wiles, G.C. and Calkin, P.E. (1994), ‘Late Holocene, high-resolution glacial chronologies and climate, Kenai Mountains, Alaska.’ *Geological Society of America Bulletin*, 106(2), pp. 281–303.

The cooling effects of the Neoglacial Period also influenced human settlements. In Scandinavia, reduced temperatures and harsher conditions contributed to a decline in agriculture in certain areas, as shorter growing seasons impacted crop yields. This climatic shift may have prompted adjustments in subsistence strategies among Norse communities and other Northern European populations, as they adapted to cooler and less predictable growing conditions.⁹⁴ Overall, the Neoglacial Period is recognized for its impact on natural and human environments, as cooling and glacial advances influenced landscapes and shaped ecological and human adaptation patterns.

Medieval Warm Period (900 to 1300 CE)

This period of relatively warm climate, especially in the North Atlantic region, influenced agricultural productivity and settlement patterns in Europe.⁹⁵ The Medieval Warm Period (MWP), spanning approximately 900 to 1300 CE, was a time of relatively warm climate, particularly pronounced in the North Atlantic region. This period had significant effects on agricultural productivity and settlement patterns in Europe and beyond, as warmer temperatures extended growing seasons and allowed for the cultivation of crops at higher altitudes and latitudes than before. For example, in England, grape vineyards flourished as far north as York, an indication of the unusually mild conditions that facilitated agricultural expansion.⁹⁶ Additionally, Scandinavian farmers were able to cultivate cereals in parts of Greenland during this period, leading to the establishment of Norse settlements.⁹⁷

The MWP's impact on settlement patterns is notably illustrated by the Norse expansion into Greenland. Warmer conditions allowed Norse settlers to establish farming colonies in the otherwise harsh environment, where they raised livestock and grew crops. Archaeological evidence, such as the remains of farms and churches, highlights how these settlements thrived for several centuries before the climate began to cool again, which

⁹⁴ Grove, J.M. (2004), *Little Ice Ages: Ancient and Modern*. Routledge.

⁹⁵ Lamb, H. H. (1965), "The early medieval warm epoch and its sequel." *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*, 1, 13–37.

⁹⁶ Lamb, H.H. (1995), *Climate, History, and the Modern World*. Routledge.

⁹⁷ Grove, J.M. and Switsur, R. (1994), 'Glacial Geological Evidence for the Medieval Warm Period.' *Climatic Change*, 26(2), pp. 143–169.

contributed to the eventual abandonment of these settlements.⁹⁸ Furthermore, the warmer climate of the MWP contributed to population growth and economic expansion in Europe. Extended growing seasons allowed for more stable crop yields, which supported population increases and the expansion of trade networks. This period also saw advancements in agricultural techniques, such as the use of the heavy plow, which further boosted productivity in the warmer climate.⁹⁹ However, the end of the MWP and the onset of the Little Ice Age in the fourteenth century brought cooler and more variable conditions, challenging these earlier gains and leading to more frequent crop failures and famines.¹⁰⁰

Little Ice Age (1300 to 1850 CE)

The Little Ice Age (1300 to 1850 CE) was a period marked by cooler temperatures and glacial expansion, significantly impacting agriculture, settlement, and human activities, especially in Europe and North America.¹⁰¹ The cooling trend, likely influenced by decreased solar radiation, volcanic eruptions, and shifts in ocean circulation, led to notable environmental and societal changes.¹⁰²

The Little Ice Age led to shorter growing seasons and crop failures due to cooler and often unpredictable weather. In Europe, the colder climate affected staple crops like wheat and barley, leading to reduced harvests and increased food prices. For instance, the Great Famine of 1315–1317, one of the most severe food shortages in European history, was exacerbated by relentless rains and cooler temperatures that hindered crop yields.¹⁰³ The relentless rains and colder temperatures during this period drastically reduced crop yields, with wheat, oats, and hay—the primary staples—yielding little to sustain the population. Consequently, food prices soared

⁹⁸ Diamond, J. (2005), *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed*. Penguin Books.

⁹⁹ Jordan, W.C. (1996), *The Great Famine: Northern Europe in the Early Fourteenth Century*. Princeton University Press.

¹⁰⁰ Fagan, B. (2000), *The Little Ice Age: How Climate Made History, 1300–1850*. Basic Books.

¹⁰¹ Mann, M. E., et al. (2009), “Global signatures and dynamical origins of the Little Ice Age and Medieval Climate Anomaly.” *Science*, 326(5957), 1256–1260.

¹⁰² Fagan, B. (2000), *The Little Ice Age: How Climate Made History, 1300–1850*. Basic Books.

¹⁰³ Jordan, W.C., 1996. *The Great Famine: Northern Europe in the Early Fourteenth Century*. Princeton University Press.

as scarcity became widespread. In England, for example, the price of wheat rose by more than 200% in certain areas, putting essential food items out of reach for most peasants.¹⁰⁴ Malnutrition and starvation weakened the populace, leading to increased susceptibility to diseases such as dysentery and respiratory infections, which further elevated mortality rates.¹⁰⁵

The impact of the famine was not limited to individual health; it reverberated through society, instigating significant social unrest. Desperate for food, people turned to theft, leading to a surge in crime as starving individuals resorted to stealing from fields and barns. In some cases, families abandoned elderly members or children they could no longer support.¹⁰⁶ Social structures, particularly the feudal obligations between lords and peasants, came under strain as landlords demanded their dues despite the peasantry's inability to meet these obligations due to crop failures. This often led to riots and rebellions; one example was the Peasants' Revolt in Flanders in 1323, where tensions over food scarcity and feudal obligations boiled over into violent clashes.¹⁰⁷ The widespread social instability and breakdown in order during the Great Famine highlighted the vulnerability of medieval European societies to environmental stressors, setting a precedent for future uprisings as populations grew increasingly disillusioned with their socioeconomic systems.

The colder temperatures during this period forced communities to adapt their settlement patterns and lifestyle. In regions such as Scandinavia, colder conditions and glacial advance led to the abandonment of marginal farming lands, pushing populations towards more hospitable lowland areas. Similarly, Norse settlements in Greenland, initially established during the Medieval Warm Period, faced declining resources as the climate cooled, ultimately leading to their abandonment by the fifteenth century.¹⁰⁸ The Little Ice Age also influenced economic and social activities. With unpredictable harvests, European societies became more reliant on alternate sources of food and trade networks. Fishing industries in

¹⁰⁴ Jordan, W.C. (1996), *The Great Famine: Northern Europe in the Early Fourteenth Century*. Princeton University Press.

¹⁰⁵ Aberth, J. (2001), *From the Brink of the Apocalypse: Confronting Famine, War, Plague, and Death in the Later Middle Ages*. Routledge.

¹⁰⁶ Campbell, B.M.S. (2016), *The Great Transition: Climate, Disease and Society in the Late-Medieval World*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁰⁷ Lucas, H.S. (2003), 'The Great European Famine of 1315, 1316, and 1317.' *Speculum*, 5(4), pp. 343–377.

¹⁰⁸ Diamond, J. (2005), *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed*. Penguin Books.

Northern Europe, particularly cod fishing along the Atlantic coast, became crucial as inland agriculture suffered. Additionally, the wine industry in regions like England declined as colder temperatures restricted the cultivation of grapes, while more resilient crops, such as rye, became staples.¹⁰⁹ In North America, Native American communities adjusted their hunting and gathering practices to adapt to the colder climate. Archaeological evidence indicates that some communities moved seasonally to access resources that were increasingly scarce due to the altered climate.¹¹⁰ The Little Ice Age underscores how climatic shifts can drive significant economic, social, and agricultural changes, compelling human societies to adapt their strategies for survival in response to environmental stressors.

(c) Industrial Era (1850 CE to Present)

Industrial Revolution

Beginning around 1750, human activities significantly increased atmospheric CO₂ and other greenhouse gases, marking the start of significant anthropogenic climate change.¹¹¹

The Industrial Revolution, commencing around 1750, marked a transformative period where human activities began to substantially alter the Earth's atmosphere, primarily through the release of carbon dioxide (CO₂) and other greenhouse gases. This era catalysed the shift from agrarian economies to industrialized societies, introducing machinery powered by coal and, subsequently, other fossil fuels, which released vast quantities of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. The increase in atmospheric CO₂ concentration can be traced to the dramatic rise in coal combustion for manufacturing, transportation, and electricity generation, which were all hallmarks of this transformative age.¹¹² The mechanization of industries, especially in Britain, involved the widespread adoption of steam engines

¹⁰⁹ Lamb, H.H. (1995), *Climate, History, and the Modern World*. Routledge.

¹¹⁰ Anderson, D.G. (2001), *Climate and Culture Change in North America AD 900–1600*. University of Texas Press.

¹¹¹ IPCC. (2013), "Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis." Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press.

¹¹² McNeill, J. R. (2000). *Something New Under the Sun: An Environmental History of the Twentieth-Century World*. W.W. Norton & Company.

powered by coal—a high-carbon fossil fuel—and this initiated a persistent trend of CO₂ emissions. Research indicates that by the mid-nineteenth century, coal was already contributing significantly to the accumulation of greenhouse gases, with emissions increasing approximately tenfold from the late eighteenth century to the early nineteenth century.¹¹³ As industrial practices spread across Europe and North America, the reliance on fossil fuels for various applications such as steel production, textile manufacturing, and transportation amplified greenhouse gas emissions, resulting in an unprecedented alteration of the global carbon cycle.

The environmental impacts of this shift were initially overlooked. However, studies have shown that the rise in atmospheric CO₂ during this period has contributed to what we now recognize as anthropogenic climate change.¹¹⁴ The recognition of this relationship emerged as scientists analysed historical climate data, discovering that the onset of industrial activities coincided with a steady increase in global temperatures. For instance, ice core samples reveal a marked increase in atmospheric CO₂ levels starting in the mid-eighteenth century, aligning closely with the rise of industrial activities.¹¹⁵ This evidence has led researchers to classify the Industrial Revolution as the starting point of significant human-driven climate change, shifting the Earth's natural greenhouse effect towards a more intensified state. Furthermore, economic and social motivations behind the Industrial Revolution fostered an era of resource exploitation with limited regard for environmental consequences. Factories relied on nearby coal mines, intensifying deforestation, and altering landscapes to accommodate large-scale extraction. This period laid the foundation for today's fossil-fuel-dependent economies, setting a trajectory that has influenced modern industrial practices and policies.¹¹⁶ Thus, the Industrial Revolution was not only a turning point for human industry but also for our planet's atmosphere, marking the beginning of an era where human actions became a dominant force in shaping Earth's climate. These studies

¹¹³ Allen, R. C. (2009). *The British Industrial Revolution in Global Perspective*. Cambridge University Press.

¹¹⁴ Steffen, W., Grinevald, J., Crutzen, P., & McNeill, J. (2011). "The Anthropocene: Conceptual and Historical Perspectives." *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences*, 369(1938), 842–867.

¹¹⁵ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Synthesis Report*. Geneva: IPCC.

¹¹⁶ Malm, A. (2016). *Fossil Capital: The Rise of Steam Power and the Roots of Global Warming*. Verso Books.

emphasize the importance of understanding historical greenhouse gas emissions to contextualize modern climate change and underscore the Industrial Revolution's role in setting a precedent for anthropogenic impact on the environment.

Twentieth Century Warming

The twentieth century saw a rapid increase in global temperatures, particularly after the 1970s, attributed primarily to human activities. This period includes notable events such as the decline in Arctic Sea ice extent and the increase in extreme weather events.¹¹⁷ The twentieth century marked a significant upward trend in global temperatures, especially pronounced after the 1970s, largely due to anthropogenic factors associated with the burning of fossil fuels, deforestation, and industrial activities. According to the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, global surface temperatures have risen approximately 1.1 degrees Celsius above pre-industrial levels, with the decade from 2011 to 2020 being the warmest on record.¹¹⁸ This warming has led to profound environmental changes, including a marked reduction in Arctic sea ice extent, which has declined by about 40% since the late 1970s.¹¹⁹ The reduction in sea ice significantly affects not only polar ecosystems but also global climate patterns, as less ice leads to reduced albedo—a phenomenon where darker ocean water absorbs more sunlight, further increasing temperatures. The Arctic's rapid warming, often referred to as Arctic amplification, has implications for weather patterns across the Northern Hemisphere, contributing to unusual weather events far from the polar regions.¹²⁰ Moreover, the increase in global temperatures has been correlated with a rise in the frequency and intensity of extreme weather events. The World Weather

¹¹⁷Hansen, J., et al. (2010), "Global surface temperature change." *Reviews of Geophysics*, 48(4).

¹¹⁸Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2021). *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press. doi:10.1017/9781009157986.

¹¹⁹Stroeve, J., et al. (2012), Arctic Sea ice decline: Faster than forecast. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 39(8), L09501. doi:10.1029/2012GL051090.

¹²⁰Francis, J. A., & Vavrus, S. J. (2015), Evidence linking Arctic amplification to extreme weather in mid-latitudes. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 42(1), - Francis, J. A., & Vavrus, S. J. (2015). Evidence linking Arctic amplification to extreme weather in mid-latitudes. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 42(1), 16–22. doi:10.1002/2014GL091047.

Attribution initiative notes that events such as heatwaves, heavy rainfall, and hurricanes have become more frequent and severe in many parts of the world, partly due to climate change.¹²¹ For instance, the 2010 Russian heatwave, which saw temperatures soar above 40 degrees Celsius, was found to have a probability increased by more than sixty times due to human-induced climate change.¹²² Alongside these changes, ocean temperatures have also risen, impacting marine ecosystems and contributing to more severe tropical storms. The increase in sea surface temperatures is linked to the intensity of hurricanes in the Atlantic, insinuating that further warming could exacerbate storm-related hazards.¹²³ The twentieth century's temperature rise has been characterized by notable environmental shifts and extreme weather phenomena, strongly influenced by human activities. Understanding these changes is critical for developing effective adaptation and mitigation strategies in the face of ongoing climate change challenges. The current century continues to experience rapid warming, with the 2010–2019 decade being the warmest on record. Significant events include record high CO₂ levels exceeding 410 ppm, ongoing extreme weather events, and the melting of polar ice sheets.¹²⁴

THEORIES ASSOCIATED WITH CLIMATE CHANGE

Understanding climate change involves a variety of scientific theories that explain the mechanisms and impacts of global climate alterations:

Greenhouse Gas Theory

Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Theory posits that certain gases in Earth's atmosphere, particularly carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), and water vapour (H₂O), absorb and emit infrared radiation, thereby warming the

¹²¹World Weather Attribution. (2019). Attribution of extreme weather events to climate change. Available at: World Weather Attribution.

¹²²Stott, P.A., et al. (2011). "The Attribution of Weather and Climate-Related Events." Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews: Climate Change, 2(2), 231–248.

¹²³Rahmstorf, S., & Coumou, D. (2011). Increase of Atlantic storminess since the 1970s. Climate Dynamics, 38(3–4), 2389–2399. doi:10.1007/s00382-011-1006-5.

¹²⁴NOAA National Centres for Environmental Information. (2020), "Global Climate Report - Annual 2020." Retrieved from NOAA.

planet through a process known as the greenhouse effect.¹²⁵ These gases allow sunlight to enter the atmosphere freely, but when Earth's surface emits this absorbed energy back as heat, greenhouse gases trap some of this outgoing heat, preventing it from escaping into space. This process is essential for maintaining temperatures suitable for life; however, elevated levels of these gases amplify the warming effect, leading to global climate changes.¹²⁶

Evidence supporting the greenhouse gas theory is drawn from a variety of fields, including atmospheric measurements, paleoclimatic studies, and climate modelling. Studies tracking atmospheric CO₂ concentrations over the last century have documented a significant increase in CO₂, from approximately 280 parts per million (ppm) pre-Industrial Revolution to over 400 ppm in recent years, a rise strongly correlated with human activities such as fossil fuel burning and deforestation.¹²⁷ Direct measurements of CO₂ and CH₄ from ice cores demonstrate that modern levels of these gases are unprecedented in at least 800,000 years, with notable increases since the industrial era.¹²⁸

Climate models have played a critical role in confirming the greenhouse effect's influence on global warming. Using physical laws of radiation and thermodynamics, these models simulate Earth's climate under various greenhouse gas concentrations and have consistently shown that an increase in GHGs raises global temperatures. For instance, the IPCC's climate assessments detail how models that include increased greenhouse gas concentrations match observed warming trends far better than models that exclude these gases, providing a robust link between GHGs and rising temperatures.¹²⁹ These models are further validated by examining past climates; for example, studies of the Eemian interglacial period, where warmer temperatures and elevated CO₂ levels led to higher sea levels,

¹²⁵ IPCC. (2021), *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge University Press.

¹²⁶ Houghton, J. T. (2004). *Global Warming: The Complete Briefing*. Cambridge University Press.

¹²⁷ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Synthesis Report*. Geneva: IPCC.

¹²⁸ Etheridge, D. M., et al. (1996). "Natural and anthropogenic changes in atmospheric CO₂ over the last 1,000 years from air in Antarctic ice and firn." *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 101(D2), 4115–4128.

¹²⁹ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2013). *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge University Press.

mirror predictions of current and future GHG-driven climate changes.¹³⁰ The radiative forcing effect of greenhouse gases is also supported by satellite data. Measurements of outgoing longwave radiation show less heat escaping Earth's atmosphere at the wavelengths absorbed by greenhouse gases, directly confirming the trapping effect of CO₂ and CH₄.¹³¹ This data aligns with the fundamental principles of atmospheric physics and confirms that the warming is primarily due to increased greenhouse gas concentrations rather than natural variability. In addition to CO₂ and CH₄, water vapour acts as a significant feedback mechanism. Although it does not initiate warming, as temperatures rise due to CO₂ and CH₄, the atmosphere holds more water vapour, which in turn traps more heat, amplifying the warming in what is known as a positive feedback loop.¹³² This feedback is well-documented in climate science and underscores the complex interplay between greenhouse gases and Earth's climate system.

Overall, greenhouse gas theory is grounded in empirical data, observational studies, and sophisticated modelling, establishing a robust foundation for understanding anthropogenic climate change. The theory is a cornerstone of climate science and serves as a critical framework for assessing and mitigating the risks of future global warming.

Radiative Forcing

Radiative forcing refers to the change in energy balance in the Earth's atmosphere due to factors such as greenhouse gases, aerosols, and solar radiation.^{133,134} Radiative forcing is a fundamental concept in climate science that quantifies the change in energy balance in the Earth's

¹³⁰ Dutton, A., et al. (2015). "Sea-level rise due to polar ice-sheet mass loss during past warm periods." *Science*, 349(6244), aaa4019.

¹³¹ Harries, J. E., et al. (2001). "Increases in greenhouse forcing inferred from the outgoing longwave radiation spectra of the Earth in 1970 and 1997." *Nature*, 410(6826), 355–357.

¹³² Held, I. M., & Soden, B. J. (2000). "Water vapor feedback and global warming." *Annual Review of Energy and the Environment*, 25(1), 441–475.

¹³³ Hansen, J., et al. (2005). Efficacy of climate forcings. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 110(D18).

¹³⁴ Myhre, G., Shindell, D., Bréon, F.M., Collins, W., Fuglestedt, J., Huang, J., Koch, D., Lamarque, J.F., Lee, D., Mendoza, B. and Nakajima, T. (2013), *Anthropogenic and natural radiative forcing*. In: *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis*. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (pp. 659–740). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

atmosphere, primarily driven by external factors that alter the incoming and outgoing energy. These factors include greenhouse gases (GHGs), aerosols, and variations in solar radiation. Radiative forcing is typically measured in watts per square meter (W/m^2) and serves as a critical indicator of how different agents contribute to climate change.

Greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4), and nitrous oxide (N_2O) play a significant role in positive radiative forcing by trapping heat within the Earth's atmosphere. This process, commonly known as the greenhouse effect, results from GHGs absorbing infrared radiation emitted by the Earth's surface and re-emitting it, leading to a warming of the lower atmosphere. According to the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), CO_2 has been the primary contributor to positive radiative forcing, with a level of approximately $+1.68 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$ from pre-industrial levels to 2011.¹³⁵ Other GHGs such as CH_4 and N_2O also contribute significantly, enhancing the warming effect through similar mechanisms.¹³⁶

Aerosols, in contrast, can cause both positive and negative radiative forcing depending on their type and interaction with clouds. Aerosols such as sulphate particles, emitted largely through industrial processes, reflect sunlight back into space, which leads to a cooling effect known as negative radiative forcing.¹³⁷ Conversely, black carbon or soot absorbs sunlight, causing localized warming in the atmosphere.¹³⁸ The net effect of aerosols is complex, as they can also modify cloud properties, further affecting the Earth's energy balance. Aerosol-cloud interactions can lead to changes in cloud reflectivity and lifetime, which play a significant role in

¹³⁵ IPCC (2013) *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis*. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

¹³⁶ Myhre, G., Shindell, D., Bréon, F. M., Collins, W., Fuglestedt, J., Huang, J., Koch, D., Lamarque, J. F., Lee, D., Mendoza, B., Nakajima, T., Robock, A., Stephens, G., Takemura, T. and Zhang, H. (2013) 'Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing', in *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. 659–740.

¹³⁷ Charlson, R. J., Schwartz, S. E., Hales, J. M., Cess, R. D., Coakley, J. A., Hansen, J. E. and Hofmann, D. J. (1992) 'Climate forcing by anthropogenic aerosols', *Science*, 255(5043), pp. 423–430.

¹³⁸ Jacobson, M. Z. (2001) 'Strong radiative heating due to the mixing state of black carbon in atmospheric aerosols', *Nature*, 409(6821), pp. 695–697.

climate dynamics.¹³⁹ Aerosol-cloud interactions are a critical component of climate dynamics, as they can significantly influence both cloud reflectivity (albedo) and cloud lifetime. Aerosols serve as cloud condensation nuclei (CCN), around which water vapour condenses to form cloud droplets. When there are more aerosols, they can increase the number of cloud droplets, resulting in smaller droplet sizes. This change enhances the cloud's albedo, making it more reflective and causing it to scatter more sunlight back into space, which cools the Earth's surface—a phenomenon known as the 'Twomey effect'.^{140,141} In addition to altering cloud reflectivity, aerosols can affect cloud lifetime. Smaller droplets in clouds suppress precipitation, as they do not coalesce as easily into larger raindrops. This suppression can prolong the cloud's existence, allowing it to persist longer in the atmosphere, further influencing the Earth's energy balance.¹⁴² This effect, often referred to as the 'lifetime effect' or 'Albrecht effect', has been observed to play a significant role in moderating temperatures, particularly by extending the cooling effects of clouds over specific regions.^{143,144} These interactions are complex because the effects can vary depending on the types of aerosols, cloud properties, and regional meteorological conditions. For instance, sulphate aerosols tend to enhance cloud reflectivity, leading to cooling, while black carbon aerosols can absorb heat, leading to localized warming, which might reduce cloud cover.¹⁴⁵ Thus, understanding these dynamics is crucial for predicting regional and global climate patterns accurately.

Solar radiation, or variations in the Sun's energy output, is another natural factor that affects radiative forcing. Changes in solar irradiance, which occur over solar cycles, have a modest but measurable impact on the

¹³⁹ Haywood, J. and Boucher, O. (2000) 'Estimates of the direct and indirect radiative forcing due to tropospheric aerosols: A review', *Reviews of Geophysics*, 38(4), pp. 513–543.

¹⁴⁰ Twomey, S. (1977). "The influence of pollution on the shortwave albedo of clouds." *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences*, 34(7), 1149–1152.

¹⁴¹ Haywood, J., & Boucher, O. (2000). "Estimates of the direct and indirect radiative forcing due to tropospheric aerosols: A review." *Reviews of Geophysics*, 38(4), 513–543.

¹⁴² Albrecht, B. A. (1989). "Aerosols, cloud microphysics, and fractional cloudiness." *Science*, 245(4923), 1227–1230.

¹⁴³ Haywood, J., & Boucher, O. (2000). "Estimates of the direct and indirect radiative forcing due to tropospheric aerosols: A review." *Reviews of Geophysics*, 38(4), 513–543.

¹⁴⁴ Lohmann, U., & Feichter, J. (2005). "Global indirect aerosol effects: A review." *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics*, 5(3), 715–737.

¹⁴⁵ Jacobson, M. Z. (2001). "Strong radiative heating due to the mixing state of black carbon in atmospheric aerosols." *Nature*, 409(6821), 695–697.

Earth's energy balance. However, these variations are small compared to the changes caused by anthropogenic factors like GHGs and aerosols. For instance, solar forcing has contributed to climate variability on timescales ranging from decades to centuries, but it does not account for the rapid warming observed in recent decades.¹⁴⁶

Understanding radiative forcing is essential for climate modelling and predicting future climate scenarios. By quantifying the relative contributions of different factors, scientists can estimate how changes in these agents will affect global temperatures. This understanding also allows policymakers to assess the potential impact of mitigation strategies, such as reducing CO₂ emissions or controlling aerosol pollution. For example, the net effect of various climate forcing agents must be considered to accurately predict future climate responses, making radiative forcing a critical component of comprehensive climate models.¹⁴⁷

Radiative forcing is a measure of how different factors alter the Earth's energy balance. Greenhouse gases contribute to warming through positive radiative forcing, while aerosols can lead to both cooling and warming effects. Solar radiation variations add another layer of complexity, but the overwhelming influence in recent times has been anthropogenic emissions, especially CO₂. Effective climate action requires a deep understanding of these mechanisms to mitigate adverse effects on global climate systems.

Milankovitch Cycles

Long-term variations in Earth's orbit and tilt affect the distribution and intensity of solar radiation received by Earth, leading to cycles of glacial and interglacial periods.^{148,149} Milankovitch Cycles refer to long-term changes in the Earth's orbit and axial tilt, which influence the distribution and intensity of solar radiation reaching the planet. These cycles play a crucial role in driving the Earth's climatic patterns, particularly glacial and

¹⁴⁶ Lean, J. L. and Rind, D. H. (2008) 'How natural and anthropogenic influences alter global and regional surface temperatures', *Geophysical Research Letters*, 35(18), p. L18701.

¹⁴⁷ Hansen, J., Sato, M. and Ruedy, R. (2005) 'Efficacy of climate forcings', *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 110(D18), p. D18104.

¹⁴⁸ Milankovitch, M. (1941), *Kanon der Erdbestrahlung und seine Anwendung auf das Eiszeitenproblem*. Royal Serbian Academy Special Publication.

¹⁴⁹ Imbrie, J. and Imbrie, K.P. (1980), Modeling the climatic response to orbital variations. *Science*, 207(4434), pp.943–953.

interglacial periods, over tens of thousands to hundreds of thousands of years. There are three main components of Milankovitch Cycles: eccentricity, obliquity, and precession. Eccentricity involves variations in the shape of the Earth's orbit around the Sun, ranging from more circular to more elliptical over a period of approximately 100,000 years. When the orbit is more elliptical, there is a greater difference between the distance to the Sun at perihelion (closest approach) and aphelion (farthest point), which affects the amount of solar energy Earth receives during different parts of the year. During periods of higher eccentricity, seasonal contrasts are more pronounced, which can contribute to the development of glacial cycles.¹⁵⁰ Obliquity refers to changes in the tilt of the Earth's axis, which oscillates between about 22.1° and 24.5° over a 41,000-year period. Variations in axial tilt influence the severity of seasons; a greater tilt increases the contrast between summer and winter, leading to warmer summers and colder winters. Conversely, a smaller tilt results in milder seasons. Periods of lower obliquity are associated with the onset of glacial periods because milder summers in higher latitudes prevent the complete melting of winter snow, allowing glaciers to grow.¹⁵¹ Precession involves the wobbling motion of the Earth's axis, which changes the timing of when the Earth is closest to or farthest from the Sun over a cycle of about 26,000 years. This precession affects the timing of the seasons and can either amplify or dampen the effects of eccentricity and obliquity. For example, if the Northern Hemisphere experiences summer during perihelion, it will receive more solar energy, leading to warmer summers and potentially melting ice sheets. Conversely, if summer occurs during aphelion, the cooler conditions may support glacial growth.¹⁵² These combined orbital variations cause changes in the distribution of solar radiation, also known as insolation, across different latitudes and times of the year, leading to climatic shifts. Evidence for Milankovitch Cycles' role in climate change has been supported by geological records, such as ice cores and marine sediments, which show periodic patterns corresponding to these

¹⁵⁰ Hays, J. D., Imbrie, J., & Shackleton, N. J. (1976). Variations in the Earth's orbit: Pacemaker of the ice ages. *Science*, 194(4270), 1121–1132.

¹⁵¹ Berger, A. (1988). Milankovitch theory and climate. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 26(4), 624–657.

¹⁵² Kutzbach, J. E. (1981). Monsoon climate of the early Holocene: Climate experiment with the Earth's orbital parameters for 9000 years ago. *Science*, 214(4516), 59–61.

cycles.¹⁵³ While Milankovitch Cycles drive natural long-term climate variations, they cannot explain the rapid warming observed in recent decades, which is primarily due to anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions.

Anthropogenic Climate Change and Climate Feedback Mechanisms

Human activities, especially since the Industrial Revolution, significantly influence climate change through the emission of greenhouse gases and land-use changes.^{154,155} Climate feedback mechanisms are processes that can either amplify or reduce the effects of climate change by altering the initial climate response.^{156,157} Positive feedback mechanisms intensify warming, while negative feedback mechanisms work to counterbalance it. One of the most significant positive feedbacks is the ice-albedo feedback. As global temperatures rise, ice and snow cover melt, reducing the Earth's albedo (reflectivity). Since ice and snow reflect most of the sunlight, their loss exposes darker ocean or land surfaces, which absorb more heat, leading to further warming and more ice melt. Another example is the water vapour feedback: warmer temperatures increase evaporation, raising the amount of water vapour in the atmosphere, a potent greenhouse gas. This additional water vapour traps more heat, causing further warming. Negative feedback act to stabilize the climate by counteracting warming. For instance, the cloud feedback effect can be both positive and negative, but in some cases, an increase in low-level clouds can reflect more sunlight back to space, cooling the surface. Another negative feedback is the carbon cycle feedback where higher atmospheric CO₂ leads to enhanced photosynthesis (carbon fertilization), allowing plants to absorb more CO₂ and potentially reducing the amount of this greenhouse gas in the atmosphere.

¹⁵³ Hays, J. D., Imbrie, J., & Shackleton, N. J. (1976). Variations in the Earth's orbit: Pacemaker of the ice ages. *Science*, 194(4270), 1121–1132.

¹⁵⁴ IPCC. (2014), "Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability." Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.

¹⁵⁵ Crutzen, P. J. (2002), Geology of mankind. *Nature*, 415(6867), 23–23.

¹⁵⁶ Lenton, T. M., et al. (2008), Tipping elements in the Earth's climate system. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 105(6), 1786–1793.

¹⁵⁷ Cox, P.M., Betts, R.A., Jones, C.D., Spall, S.A. and Totterdell, I.J. (2000), Acceleration of global warming due to carbon-cycle feedbacks in a coupled climate model. *Nature*, 408(6809), pp.184–187.

However, the strength and efficiency of this feedback are still under debate, as other factors like nutrient limitations can affect plant growth. Feedback mechanisms play a crucial role in climate models, as they determine the sensitivity of the climate system to external forces like greenhouse gases. Understanding these mechanisms is essential for accurately predicting future climate scenarios.

Paleoclimate Evidence

Paleoclimate evidence involves studying past climate conditions using natural archives, or ‘proxies’, which allow scientists to reconstruct historical climates and understand natural variability. Key proxies include ice cores, tree rings, and sediment layers, each providing unique insights into Earth’s climatic history. ^{158,159}

Ice cores are one of the most valuable proxies for reconstructing past climates. Extracted from polar regions like Antarctica and Greenland, these cores contain layers of ice that accumulate over millennia. Each layer traps air bubbles, preserving atmospheric gases like carbon dioxide (CO₂) and methane (CH₄), which provide a record of past atmospheric composition and temperature. For instance, studies from the EPICA Dome C ice core in Antarctica have revealed climate patterns extending back 800,000 years, showing clear cycles of glacial and interglacial periods driven by changes in greenhouse gases and Earth’s orbital parameters.¹⁶⁰ Tree rings provide annual records of climate conditions. The width and density of tree rings reflect variations in temperature and precipitation during the growing season. Wider rings typically indicate favourable conditions, such as warmer temperatures or abundant rainfall, while narrower rings may signify droughts or cooler periods. Tree-ring studies have helped reconstruct climate patterns over the last few thousand years, offering insights

¹⁵⁸ Petit, J. R., et al. (1999), Climate and atmospheric history of the past 420,000 years from the Vostok ice core, Antarctica. *Nature*, 399(6735), 429–436.

¹⁵⁹ Mann, M. E., et al. (2009), “Global signatures and dynamical origins of the Little Ice Age and Medieval Climate Anomaly.” *Science*, 326(5957), 1256–1260.

¹⁶⁰ Jouzel, J., Masson-Delmotte, V., Cattani, O., Dreyfus, G., Falourd, S., Hoffmann, G., ... & Wolff, E. W. (2007). Orbital and millennial Antarctic climate variability over the past 800,000 years. *Science*, 317(5839), 793–796.

into periods like the Medieval Warm Period and the Little Ice Age.¹⁶¹ Sediment layers, including those found in lakes and ocean floors, accumulate over long timescales and contain particles such as pollen, dust, and organic matter. By analysing these sediments, scientists can infer past vegetation, sea temperatures, and even volcanic activity, all which impact climate. For example, cores from ocean sediments have been critical in understanding the patterns of glacial cycles, as they contain microfossils (foraminifera) whose isotopic composition reflects historical ocean temperatures.¹⁶² By combining data from these proxies, palaeoclimatologists can build a comprehensive picture of Earth's climate history, revealing patterns of natural variability and providing context for current anthropogenic changes. These records demonstrate that while natural factors have driven climate shifts over millennia, the current rate of warming, largely driven by human activities, is unprecedented in the context of the last few hundred thousand years.¹⁶³

Ocean-Atmosphere Interactions

Ocean-atmosphere interactions are critical for understanding climate variability, as they involve exchanges of heat, moisture, and gases between the ocean and atmosphere.^{164,165} Two of the most influential phenomena associated with these interactions are the El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (AMOC). ENSO is a periodic fluctuation in sea surface temperatures and atmospheric pressure across the equatorial Pacific Ocean. It consists of two phases: El Niño and La Niña. During El Niño, warmer-than-average sea surface temperatures in the central and eastern Pacific disrupt typical

¹⁶¹ Mann, M. E., Zhang, Z., Hughes, M. K., Bradley, R. S., Miller, S. K., Rutherford, S., & Ni, F. (2009). Proxy-based reconstructions of hemispheric and global surface temperature variations over the past two millennia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(36), 13252–13257.

¹⁶² Imbrie, J., Berger, A., Boyle, E. A., Clemens, S. C., Duffy, A., Howard, W. R., ... & Toggweiler, J. R. (1992). On the structure and origin of major glaciation cycles 1. Linear responses to Milankovitch forcing. *Paleoceanography*, 7(6), 701–738.

¹⁶³ Stocker, T. F., Qin, D., Plattner, G. K., Tignor, M., Allen, S. K., Boschung, J., ... & Midgley, P. M. (2013). *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁶⁴ Philander, S. G. (1983), El Niño Southern Oscillation phenomena. *Nature*, 302(5906), 295–301.

¹⁶⁵ Broecker, W. S. (1991), The great ocean conveyor. *Oceanography*, 4(2), 79–89.

weather patterns, leading to effects such as increased rainfall in South America and droughts in parts of Australia and Southeast Asia.¹⁶⁶ Conversely, La Niña involves cooler sea surface temperatures and tends to enhance the opposite weather patterns, such as more intense monsoons in Asia. ENSO significantly influences global climate by altering atmospheric circulation patterns, which can impact temperatures and precipitation far beyond the Pacific region.¹⁶⁷

The Atlantic Meridional Overturning Circulation (AMOC) is a system of ocean currents in the Atlantic that transports warm, salty water northward at the surface and cold, deep water southward. This process, also known as thermohaline circulation, plays a vital role in regulating climate by distributing heat between the equator and the poles. Changes in the strength of the AMOC can lead to substantial shifts in climate; for example, a weakening of the AMOC is associated with cooler temperatures in the North Atlantic region and can contribute to events like the Little Ice Age.¹⁶⁸ Furthermore, studies have suggested that anthropogenic warming and increased freshwater input from melting ice may destabilize the AMOC, potentially leading to abrupt climate changes.¹⁶⁹ These ocean-atmosphere interactions are interconnected with broader climate systems. For instance, ENSO events can affect the strength of the AMOC by altering wind patterns and precipitation, which, in turn, influence ocean salinity and circulation. Understanding these interactions is essential for improving climate models and predicting future climate variability. Humanities' technological innovation and economic activity, burning fossil fuels, pollutants arising from industrial production; and the resulting greenhouse gases may thus impact on natural cycles bringing about climate change.

¹⁶⁶ McPhaden, M. J., Zebiak, S. E., & Glantz, M. H. (2006). ENSO as an integrating concept in Earth science. *Science*, 314(5806), 1740–1745.

¹⁶⁷ Trenberth, K. E. (1997). The definition of El Niño. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, 78(12), 2771–2777.

¹⁶⁸ Rahmstorf, S. (2006). Thermohaline ocean circulation. *Encyclopedia of Quaternary Sciences*, 2, 739–750.

¹⁶⁹ Caesar, L., Rahmstorf, S., Robinson, A., Feulner, G., & Saba, V. (2018). Observed fingerprint of a weakening Atlantic Ocean overturning circulation. *Nature*, 556(7700), 191–196.

NATURAL CLIMATIC CHANGES

Milankovitch Cycles

One of the primary drivers of natural climatic variation over the past few million years is the Milankovitch cycles. These cycles consist of changes in Earth's orbit and orientation relative to the Sun, including eccentricity, axial tilt, and precession. These variations influence the distribution and intensity of solar radiation received by Earth, leading to cycles of glacial and interglacial periods. For example, periods of high eccentricity result in more pronounced seasonal changes, while changes in axial tilt affect the severity of seasons and the extent of polar ice sheets.¹⁷⁰

Ice Ages and Interglacial Periods

The Pleistocene epoch, spanning from about 2.6 million years ago to 11,700 years ago, was characterized by repeated glaciations, where large ice sheets covered much of North America, Europe, and Asia. These glacial periods were interrupted by warmer interglacial periods. The transitions between these periods were often abrupt, influenced by Milankovitch cycles and feedback mechanisms involving greenhouse gases and ice sheet dynamics.¹⁷¹

Palaeocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum (PETM)

Approximately 56 million years ago, during the Palaeocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum (PETM), Earth experienced a rapid and intense warming event. This period saw a massive release of carbon into the atmosphere, likely from volcanic activity or methane clathrate release, causing temperatures to rise dramatically. The PETM is often studied as an analogy for current climate change due to the similarities in rapid carbon release and global warming.¹⁷²

¹⁷⁰NASA. (2024), Milankovitch (Orbital) Cycles and Their Role in Earth's Climate. Retrieved from NASA Science.

¹⁷¹Zachos, J. et al. (2020), High-fidelity record of Earth's climate history puts current changes in context. Retrieved from [Phys.org](https://phys.org).

¹⁷²Ibid.

Anthropogenic Climate Change

Since the Industrial Revolution, human activities have significantly altered the composition of the atmosphere, primarily through the burning of fossil fuels, deforestation, and industrial processes. These activities have increased the concentration of greenhouse gases, such as carbon dioxide, methane, and nitrous oxide, trapping more heat in the atmosphere and leading to global warming.¹⁷³

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) reports that the Earth's average temperature has increased by approximately 1.1°C since the pre-industrial period. This warming is unprecedented in both its rate and magnitude compared to natural climatic variations over the past few million years. Current impacts include more frequent and severe heatwaves, melting glaciers and ice sheets, rising sea levels, and changes in precipitation patterns leading to floods and droughts.^{174,175}

Climate change has also intensified extreme weather events. Warmer ocean temperatures fuel more powerful hurricanes and typhoons, while higher atmospheric temperatures increase the likelihood of heavy rainfall events and prolonged droughts. These changes pose significant risks to ecosystems, infrastructure, and human communities.¹⁷⁶ Projections indicate that if greenhouse gas emissions continue at the current rate, global temperatures could rise by 2 to 4 degrees Celsius by the end of the century. This level of warming would have profound effects on global climate systems, potentially leading to the loss of entire ecosystems, more frequent and severe weather events, and significant challenges for human societies.¹⁷⁷

Addressing climate change requires both mitigation—reducing greenhouse gas emissions—and adaptation—adjusting to the changes that are already underway. Effective mitigation strategies include transitioning to renewable energy sources, improving energy efficiency, and protecting and restoring forests. Adaptation strategies involve building resilient

¹⁷³ National Geographic. (2024), The Influence of Climate Change on Extreme Environmental Events. Retrieved from National Geographic.

¹⁷⁴ IPCC (2023), Climate Change 2023: Synthesis Report. IPCC, Geneva, Switzerland. Available at: www.ipcc.ch

¹⁷⁵ NASA. (2024), Milankovitch (Orbital) Cycles and Their Role in Earth's Climate. Retrieved from NASA Science.

¹⁷⁶ National Geographic. (2024), The Influence of Climate Change on Extreme Environmental Events. Retrieved from National Geographic.

¹⁷⁷ Ibid.

infrastructure, developing early warning systems for extreme weather, and planning for sea-level rise.¹⁷⁸

Climate change has had profound effects on both the Arctic (North Pole) and the Antarctic (South Pole) regions over the last century. These changes are evidenced by significant alterations in ice sheet dynamics, sea ice extent, and overall temperature increases. Below is a detailed analysis of these impacts, citing academic sources to support the findings. The Arctic region has experienced some of the most rapid warming on Earth, a phenomenon known as Arctic amplification. Over the past century, temperatures in the Arctic have increased at more than twice the global average rate.¹⁷⁹ The extent of Arctic Sea ice has been decreasing dramatically, particularly in the summer months. Satellite observations since 1979 show a decline in the summer minimum sea ice extent by about 13% per decade.¹⁸⁰ Arctic glaciers and the Greenland Ice Sheet have been losing mass. The Greenland Ice Sheet has experienced significant melting and ice discharge, contributing to global sea-level rise.¹⁸¹ Thawing of permafrost in the Arctic is releasing significant amounts of greenhouse gases, including methane and carbon dioxide, further exacerbating global warming.¹⁸² While the warming trend in Antarctica is less uniform compared to the Arctic, the Antarctic Peninsula has warmed significantly, with temperatures increasing by nearly 3°C over the past 50 years.¹⁸³ The Antarctic Ice Sheet is losing ice primarily from the West Antarctic Ice Sheet and the Antarctic Peninsula. This loss is driven by warm ocean waters undermining ice shelves and accelerating glacier flow.¹⁸⁴ Several ice shelves in Antarctica, particularly along the Antarctic Peninsula, have collapsed or thinned dramatically in

¹⁷⁸ IPCC (2023), *Climate Change 2023: Synthesis Report*. IPCC, Geneva, Switzerland. Available at: www.ipcc.ch

¹⁷⁹ Serreze, M. C., & Barry, R. G. (2011), Processes and impacts of Arctic amplification: A research synthesis. *Global and Planetary Change*, 77(1–2), 85–96.

¹⁸⁰ Stroeve, J., et al. (2012), The Arctic's rapidly shrinking sea ice cover: a research synthesis. *Climatic Change*, 110(3–4), 1005–1027.

¹⁸¹ Box, J. E., et al. (2018), Global sea-level contribution from Arctic land ice: 1971–2017. *Environmental Research Letters*, 13(12), 125012.

¹⁸² Schuur, E. A. G., et al. (2015), Climate change and the permafrost carbon feedback. *Nature*, 520(7546), 171–179.

¹⁸³ Turner, J., et al. (2005), Antarctic climate change during the last 50 years. *International Journal of Climatology*, 25(3), 279–294.

¹⁸⁴ Rignot, E., et al. (2019), Four decades of Antarctic Ice Sheet mass balance from 1979–2017. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116(4), 1095–1103.

recent decades, contributing to increased glacier flow into the ocean.¹⁸⁵ Unlike the Arctic, Antarctic Sea ice extent has shown more variability, with some regions experiencing slight increases. However, recent years have seen a noticeable decline in sea ice extent.¹⁸⁶

CIVILIZATIONS IMPACTED BY CLIMATE CHANGE

The Akkadian Empire

The Akkadian Empire, which flourished in Mesopotamia around 2300 BC, is one of the earliest known examples of a civilization affected by climate change. The empire experienced a severe drought around 2200 BC, known as the 4.2-kiloyear event. This prolonged drought led to widespread crop failures and the collapse of the agricultural economy, contributing to the empire's decline. Archaeological evidence from sediment cores and ancient texts supports the theory that environmental stress was a critical factor in the Akkadian Empire's fall.¹⁸⁷ The drought was likely caused by a significant shift in climatic conditions that led to prolonged periods of aridity. Geological and archaeological evidence, including sediment cores from the Persian Gulf and lake deposits, suggest that this period was marked by a sharp decline in precipitation, which caused widespread drought across the Near East.^{188,189} The reduced rainfall affected the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, leading to a decline in water levels and a reduction in agricultural productivity. This arid phase is believed to have been driven by changes in atmospheric circulation patterns, potentially linked to shifts in the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ), which

¹⁸⁵ Scambos, T. A., et al. (2004), Glacier acceleration and thinning after ice shelf collapse in the Larsen B embayment, Antarctica. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 31(18).

¹⁸⁶ Parkinson, C. L. (2019), A 40-y record reveals gradual Antarctic Sea ice increases followed by decreases at rates far exceeding the rates seen in the Arctic. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116(29), 14414–14423.

¹⁸⁷ Weiss, H., et al. (1993). The genesis and collapse of third millennium north Mesopotamian civilization. *Science*, 261(5124), 995–1004.

¹⁸⁸ Weiss, H., Courty, M.-A., Wetterstrom, W., Guichard, F., Senior, L., Meadow, R., & Curnow, A. (1993). The genesis and collapse of third millennium North Mesopotamian civilization. *Science*, 261(5124), 995–1004.

¹⁸⁹ Cullen, H. M., deMenocal, P. B., Hemming, S., Hemming, G., Brown, F. H., Guilderson, T., & Sirocko, F. (2000). Climate change and the collapse of the Akkadian empire: Evidence from the deep sea. *Geology*, 28(4), 379–382.

would have diverted moist air away from Mesopotamia.¹⁹⁰ The decrease in crop yields would have led to food shortages, social stress, and eventually the collapse of centralized control, contributing to the decline of the Akkadian Empire.

The Maya Civilization

The Maya Civilization, which thrived in Mesoamerica from around 2000 BC to 900 CE, also experienced significant climatic challenges. Research indicates that periods of prolonged drought, particularly between 800 and 900 CE, played a crucial role in the collapse of Classic Maya society. These droughts would have disrupted agricultural production, leading to food shortages, social unrest, and the eventual abandonment of major urban centres. Paleoclimate data from lake sediments and cave formations provide strong evidence linking climatic changes to the decline of the Maya civilization.^{191,192} The droughts that contributed to the decline of Classic Maya society between 800 and 900 CE were likely caused by a combination of natural climatic variability and shifts in regional atmospheric patterns. Paleoclimate studies, including analyses of lake sediments and cave formations (speleothems), indicate that this period experienced a series of prolonged and severe dry spells, reducing rainfall significantly across the Maya Lowlands.^{193,194} One proposed cause of these droughts is a reduction in summer monsoon rains, which are essential for agriculture in the region. Research suggests that changes in sea surface temperatures in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans could have influenced the strength and position of the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ), leading to decreased

¹⁹⁰ Staubwasser, M., & Weiss, H. (2006). Holocene climate and cultural evolution in late prehistoric–early historic West Asia. *Quaternary Research*, 66(3), 372–387.

¹⁹¹ Haug, G.H., Günther, D., Peterson, L.C., Sigman, D.M., Hughen, K.A. and Aeschlimann, B. (2003), Climate and the collapse of Maya civilization. *Science*, 299(5613), pp.1731–1735.

¹⁹² Kennett, D.J., Breitenbach, S.F., Aquino, V.V., Asmerom, Y., Awe, J., Baldini, J.U., Bartlein, P., Culleton, B.J., Ebert, C., Jazwa, C. and Macri, M.J. (2012), Development and disintegration of Maya political systems in response to climate change. *Science*, 338(6108), pp.788–791.

¹⁹³ Haug, G. H., Günther, D., Peterson, L. C., Sigman, D. M., Hughen, K. A., & Aeschlimann, B. (2003). Climate and the collapse of Maya civilization. *Science*, 299(5613), 1731–1735.

¹⁹⁴ Medina-Elizalde, M., & Rohling, E. J. (2012). Collapse of Classic Maya civilization related to modest reduction in precipitation. *Science*, 335(6071), 956–959.

precipitation in Mesoamerica.¹⁹⁵ Additionally, some studies point to deforestation and land-use changes by the Maya themselves, which may have exacerbated local drought conditions by altering the regional hydrological cycle and reducing moisture availability.¹⁹⁶

The Ancestral Puebloans

The Ancestral Puebloans, also known as the Anasazi, inhabited the southwestern United States from approximately 200 to 1300 CE. Their society saw significant development in agriculture, architecture, and culture. However, a severe and prolonged drought, often referred to as the Great Drought, occurred around 1276 to 1299 CE. This environmental stress led to crop failures, resource depletion, and the abandonment of their large settlements, such as those at Chaco Canyon and Mesa Verde. Tree-ring data and other paleoclimate indicators provide evidence for the climatic conditions that contributed to the Ancestral Puebloans' migration and societal changes.¹⁹⁷ The drought that affected the Ancestral Puebloans, known as the Great Drought (1276–1299 CE), is believed to have been caused by prolonged periods of reduced precipitation linked to natural climatic variability. Tree-ring data (dendrochronology) from the region indicates that there were consecutive years of low rainfall, which severely impacted the water supply and agricultural productivity.¹⁹⁸ Studies suggest this drought may have been driven by shifts in atmospheric circulation patterns, such as persistent La Niña conditions, which lead to drier-than-average winters in the southwestern United States.¹⁹⁹

¹⁹⁵ Hodell, D. A., Curtis, J. H., & Brenner, M. (2001). Solar forcing of drought frequency in the Maya Lowlands. *Science*, 292(5520), 1367–1370.

¹⁹⁶ Oglesby, R. J., Sever, T., Saturno, W., Erickson, D., & Srikishen, J. (2010). Collapse of the Maya: Could deforestation have contributed?. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 115(D12).

¹⁹⁷ Benson, L. V., Berry, M. S., Jolie, E. A., Spangler, J. D., Stahle, D. W. and Hattori, E. M. (2007), Possible impacts of early-11th-, middle-12th-, and late-13th-century droughts on western Native Americans and the Mississippian Cahokians. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 26(3–4), pp.336–350.

¹⁹⁸ Stahle, D. W., Fye, F. K., Cook, E. R., & Griffin, R. D. (2007). Tree-ring reconstructed megadroughts over North America since AD 1300. *Climatic Change*, 83(1–2), 133–149.

¹⁹⁹ Cook, E. R., Woodhouse, C. A., Eakin, C. M., Meko, D. M., & Stahle, D. W. (2004). Long-Term Aridity Changes in the Western United States. *Science*, 306(5698), 1015–1018.

The Khmer Empire

The Khmer Empire, centered in present-day Cambodia, reached its peak between the ninth and thirteenth centuries CE. The empire is renowned for its grand architectural achievements, including the temple complex of Angkor Wat. However, climatic changes, particularly a series of severe droughts followed by intense monsoons in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, disrupted the water management systems critical to the empire's agriculture and urban life. These climatic stresses, combined with political and social factors, contributed to the decline of the Khmer Empire. Tree-ring and isotopic analyses from the region provide insights into the climatic variability during this period.²⁰⁰ The droughts followed by the intense monsoons were likely driven by natural variability in the monsoon system of Southeast Asia. Tree-ring studies and isotopic analyses suggest these changes could be linked to shifts in the El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD), which impact monsoon intensity. Prolonged droughts weakened the empire's complex water management infrastructure, while subsequent heavy monsoons likely caused damage to reservoirs and irrigation, disrupting agriculture and urban stability.^{201,202}

The Indus Valley Civilization

The Indus Valley Civilization, which flourished from around 3300 to 1300 BC in what is now Pakistan and northwest India, is another example of how climate change may make established civilizations unsustainable. The civilization declined around 1900 BC,²⁰³ coinciding with a shift in the monsoon patterns that led to reduced water availability and agricultural

²⁰⁰ Buckley, B.M., Anchukaitis, K.J., Penny, D., Fletcher, R., Cook, E.R., Sano, M., Nam, L.C., Wichienkeo, A., Minh, T.T. and Hong, T.M. (2010), Climate as a contributing factor in the demise of Angkor, Cambodia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 107(15), pp.6748–6752.

²⁰¹ Buckley, B. M., Anchukaitis, K. J., Penny, D., Fletcher, R., Cook, E. R., Sano, M., ... & Nam, L. C. (2010). Climate as a contributing factor in the demise of Angkor, Cambodia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 107(15), 6748–6752.

²⁰² Cook, E. R., Anchukaitis, K. J., Buckley, B. M., D'Arrigo, R. D., Jacoby, G. C., & Wright, W. E. (2012). Asian monsoon failure and megadrought during the last millennium. *Science*, 328(5977), 486–489

²⁰³ Possehl, G. L. (2002). *The Indus Civilization: A Contemporary Perspective*. AltaMira Press.

productivity. Changes in river patterns and prolonged droughts likely exacerbated the challenges faced by this highly urbanized and sophisticated society. Geological and archaeological evidence supports the role of climate change in the decline of the Indus Valley Civilization.²⁰⁴ Studies of sediment cores and isotopic data indicate that there was a shift to drier conditions around 2100 BC, marked by weakened monsoon patterns.²⁰⁵ This reduction in rainfall would have decreased river flows, particularly affecting the Ghaggar-Hakra River system, which many settlements relied on for agriculture. Archaeological records show a gradual abandonment of cities, the biggest including Harappa and Mohenjo-Daro, likely as communities migrated to more stable water sources, reflecting an adaptation to changing environmental conditions.²⁰⁶

CONTEMPORARY THREATS

Rising Sea Levels

Rising sea levels due to climate change pose a significant threat to many coastal cities and countries around the world. By 2050, several regions are expected to experience severe flooding, impacting millions of people. There are many cities around the world which may be susceptible to flooding as global sea levels rise. Jakarta is sinking at an alarming rate due to excessive groundwater extraction and is already experiencing regular flooding. By 2050, large parts of the city could be submerged if current trends continue.²⁰⁷ Bangkok is another city at high risk due to its low elevation, subsidence, and the threat of rising sea levels. The city faces annual

²⁰⁴ Giosan, L., Clift, P.D., Macklin, M.G., Fuller, D.Q., Constantinescu, S., Durcan, J.A., Stevens, T., Duller, G.A.T., Tabrez, A.R., Gangal, K. and Adhikari, R. (2012), Fluvial landscapes of the Harappan civilization. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 109(26), pp.E1688–E1694.

²⁰⁵ Giosan, L., Clift, P. D., Macklin, M. G., Fuller, D. Q., Constantinescu, S., Durcan, J. A., ... & Goodbred, S. L. (2012). Fluvial landscapes of the Harappan civilization. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 109(26), E1688–E1694.

²⁰⁶ Staubwasser, M., & Weiss, H. (2006). Holocene climate and cultural evolution in late prehistoric–early historic West Asia. *Quaternary Research*, 66(3), 372–387.

²⁰⁷ Abidin, H.Z., Andreas, H., Gumilar, I., Sidiq, T.P. and Fukuda, Y. (2011), Land subsidence of Jakarta (Indonesia) and its relation with urban development. *Natural Hazards*, 59(3), pp.1753–1771.

flooding during the monsoon season, which is expected to worsen.²⁰⁸ Mumbai, a major financial hub, is highly vulnerable to sea-level rise and storm surges. Low-lying areas of the city are particularly at risk of flooding.²⁰⁹ Shanghai, with its extensive coastal and riverine areas, is at significant risk of flooding due to rising sea levels and land subsidence.²¹⁰ Ho Chi Minh City is experiencing rapid urbanization and land subsidence, making it highly vulnerable to sea-level rise and flooding.²¹¹ New York City faces a high risk of flooding due to sea-level rise and the increased frequency of extreme weather events like hurricanes. Lower Manhattan and other coastal areas are particularly vulnerable.²¹² Miami is one of the most vulnerable cities in the United States to sea-level rise, with significant portions of the city at risk of flooding by 2050.²¹³

Vulnerable Countries

Bangladesh, with its low-lying delta region, is extremely vulnerable to sea-level rise. A significant portion of the population lives in areas that could be underwater by 2050.²¹⁴ The Netherlands has extensive coastal defences, but parts of the country lie below sea level. Rising sea levels pose a continuous threat to its coastal areas and infrastructure.²¹⁵ The Maldives, an archipelago of low-lying islands, faces existential threats from rising sea

²⁰⁸ Fuchs, T., Koch, M., Münch, Z., Priyadarshi, N. and Thieken, A.H. (2011), Flood risk and adaptation strategies in Bangkok and other urban areas in Southeast Asia. In: M. Kraas, S. Aggarwal, S. Coy and G. Mertins, eds. *Megacities: Our Global Urban Future*. Dordrecht: Springer, pp.85–102.

²⁰⁹ Hallegatte, S., Green, C., Nicholls, R.J. and Corfee-Morlot, J. (2013), Future flood losses in major coastal cities. *Nature Climate Change*, 3(9), pp.802–806.

²¹⁰ Yin, J., Yin, Z., Wang, J. and Xu, S. (2013), National assessment of coastal vulnerability to sea-level rise for the Chinese coast. *Journal of Coastal Conservation*, 17(3), pp.567–579.

²¹¹ Scussolini, P., Tran, T.T., Koks, E.E., Hoekstra, A.Y., Lasage, R., Ward, P.J. and Winsemius, H.C. (2017), Adaptation to sea level rise: a multidisciplinary analysis for Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam. *Water Resources Research*, 53(12), pp.10841–10857.

²¹² Strauss, B.H., Ziemiński, R., Weiss, J.L. and Overpeck, J.T. (2012), Tidally adjusted estimates of topographic vulnerability to sea level rise and flooding for the contiguous United States. *Environmental Research Letters*, 7(1), p.014033.

²¹³ Stanton, E.A. and Ackerman, F. (2007), *Florida and climate change: The costs of inaction*. Tufts University, Global Development and Environment Institute.

²¹⁴ Huq, S. and Rabbani, G. (2011), Climate change and Bangladesh: Policy and institutional development to reduce vulnerability. *Journal of Bangladesh Studies*, 13(1), pp.1–10.

²¹⁵ Vellinga, P. (2001), Climate change and flood risk in the Netherlands. *Global Environmental Change Part B: Environmental Hazards*, 3(3–4), pp.59–67.

levels. Most of its islands are only about 1 metre above sea level.²¹⁶ Tuvalu, another low-lying island nation, is at risk of becoming uninhabitable due to rising sea levels and increasing saltwater intrusion.²¹⁷ Kiribati is highly vulnerable to sea-level rise, with many of its atolls and islands facing the possibility of becoming uninhabitable by 2050.²¹⁸

High Temperatures and Droughts

Climate change is projected to have profound impacts on global weather patterns, leading to increased temperatures and prolonged droughts in various regions. This section identifies and analyses the parts of the world expected to experience these extreme conditions by 2050, supported by academic research and climate models. The MENA region is expected to experience some of the highest temperature increases due to climate change. Projections indicate that summer temperatures could regularly exceed 50°C.²¹⁹ These extreme temperatures will have severe implications for human health, agriculture, and water resources.

Urban areas in countries such as Saudi Arabia, Kuwait, and the UAE are particularly at risk. South Asia, including countries like India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh, is projected to see significant temperature increases, with heatwaves becoming more frequent and severe.²²⁰ The rise in temperatures will exacerbate existing vulnerabilities in these densely populated regions, affecting agricultural productivity and increasing the risk of heat-related illnesses and deaths.

Southern Europe, particularly the Mediterranean region, is expected to experience higher average temperatures and more frequent heatwaves.²²¹ The increase in temperature will affect water availability, agriculture, and

²¹⁶ Woodroffe, C.D. (2008), Reef-island topography and the vulnerability of atolls to sea-level rise. *Global and Planetary Change*, 62(1–2), pp.77–96.

²¹⁷ Connell, J. (2003), Losing ground? Tuvalu, the greenhouse effect and the garbage can theory of planning. *Asia Pacific Viewpoint*, 44(2), pp.89–107.

²¹⁸ Donner, S.D. (2015), The legacy of migration in response to climate stress: learning from the Gilbertese resettlement in the Solomon Islands. *Natural Resources Forum*, 39(3–4), pp.191–201.

²¹⁹ Pal, J.S. and Eltahir, E.A.B. (2016), Future temperature in southwest Asia projected to exceed a threshold for human adaptability. *Nature Climate Change*, 6(2), pp.197–200.

²²⁰ Im, E.S., Pal, J.S. and Eltahir, E.A.B. (2017), Deadly heat waves projected in the densely populated agricultural regions of South Asia. *Science Advances*, 3(8), p.e1603322.

²²¹ Kovats, R.S. and Kristie, L.E. (2006), Heatwaves and public health in Europe. *The European Journal of Public Health*, 16(6), pp.592–599.

human health, with countries like Spain, Italy, and Greece facing significant challenges. The western United States, including California, Nevada, and Arizona, is likely to see a rise in temperatures, leading to more frequent and intense heatwaves.²²² Higher temperatures will exacerbate water scarcity issues, affect agricultural productivity, and increase the risk of wildfires.

Droughts

Sub-Saharan Africa is projected to experience more frequent and severe droughts due to climate change.²²³ Regions such as the Sahel and parts of East Africa are particularly vulnerable. Droughts will severely affect agriculture, food security, and water availability, leading to increased risk of famine and displacement. Australia is expected to face more frequent and prolonged droughts, particularly in the southern and eastern regions.²²⁴ Drought conditions will impact water resources and agriculture and increase the risk of bushfires, putting significant strain on the environment and the economy. Central America, including countries like Guatemala, Honduras, and Nicaragua, is likely to experience more frequent droughts.²²⁵ Drought conditions will affect crop yields, water availability, and exacerbate socioeconomic challenges in the region. In addition to high temperatures, Southern Europe is projected to experience more severe and prolonged droughts.²²⁶ Droughts will impact agriculture, water

²²² Diffenbaugh, N.S., Swain, D.L. and Touma, D. (2015), Anthropogenic warming has increased drought risk in California. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 112(13), pp.3931–3936.

²²³ IPCC (2014), *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

²²⁴ CSIRO and Bureau of Meteorology (2015), *Climate Change in Australia: Projections for Australia's NRM Regions*. Canberra: CSIRO and Bureau of Meteorology.

²²⁵ Magrin, G., Marengo, J.A., Boulanger, J.P., Bourges, C., Cortez, S., Glantz, M.H. and Vicente-Serrano, S.M. (2014), Central and South America. In: *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

²²⁶ Luterbacher, J., Xoplaki, E., Casty, C., Wanner, H., Pauling, A. and Küttel, M. (2006), Mediterranean climate variability over the last centuries: a review. *Developments in Earth and Environmental Sciences*, 4, pp.27–148.

supply, and increase the risk of forest fires, particularly in Mediterranean countries.

Combined Impact of High Temperatures and Droughts

India is expected to face a combination of high temperatures and prolonged droughts, particularly in the northern and central regions.²²⁷ This combination will exacerbate water scarcity, affect agricultural productivity, and increase the risk of heat-related health issues. The southwestern United States, including California, Arizona, and New Mexico, will likely experience both higher temperatures and more severe droughts.²²⁸ The combined effects will strain water resources, reduce agricultural yields, and increase the frequency and intensity of wildfires.

Impact of Climate Change of Southeast Asia by 2050

Southeast Asia, a region characterized by diverse ecosystems, rich biodiversity, and dense human populations, is particularly vulnerable to the impacts of climate change. By 2050, the region is expected to face significant challenges, including rising temperatures, sea-level rise, increased frequency of extreme weather events, and adverse effects on agriculture and human health. This report examines these anticipated impacts, supported by academic research and climate models.

Southeast Asia is projected to experience significant temperature increases by 2050, with average temperatures rising by 2–3°C above pre-industrial levels.²²⁹ Higher temperatures will exacerbate heat stress, particularly in urban areas, leading to increased mortality and morbidity.²³⁰ Coastal regions and low-lying islands in Southeast Asia are highly

²²⁷ Krishnan, R., Sanjay, J., Gnanaseelan, C., Mujumdar, M., Kulkarni, A. and Chakraborty, S. (2020), Assessment of climate change over the Indian region: a report of the Ministry of Earth Sciences (MoES), Government of India. Springer Nature.

²²⁸ Cook, B.I., Ault, T.R. and Smerdon, J.E. (2015), Unprecedented 21st century drought risk in the American Southwest and Central Plains. *Science Advances*, 1(1), p.e1400082.

²²⁹ Hijioka, Y., Lin, E., Pereira, J.J., Corlett, R.T., Cui, X., Insarov, G.E., Lasco, R.D., Lindgren, E. and Surjan, A. (2014), Asia. In: *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Part B: Regional Aspects. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

²³⁰ Im, E.S., Pal, J.S. and Eltahir, E.A.B. (2017), Deadly heat waves projected in the densely populated agricultural regions of South Asia. *Science Advances*, 3(8), p.e1603322.

vulnerable to sea level rise. By 2050, sea levels are projected to rise by approximately 0.5 metres, significantly increasing the risk of flooding.²³¹ Major cities such as Jakarta, Bangkok, and Manila face severe risks of coastal flooding and land subsidence, threatening infrastructure and livelihoods.²³²

Climate change is expected to increase the frequency and intensity of extreme weather events, including typhoons, heavy rainfall, and droughts.²³³ Enhanced extreme weather patterns will lead to greater loss of life, economic damage, and displacement of populations.²³⁴ Changes in temperature and precipitation patterns will adversely affect agricultural productivity. Key crops such as rice, maize, and wheat are particularly vulnerable.²³⁵ Reduced crop yields will threaten food security, increase food prices, and potentially lead to malnutrition and economic instability in rural areas.²³⁶

Climate change will alter hydrological cycles, affecting water availability in Southeast Asia. Regions dependent on monsoon rains will experience increased variability in water supply.²³⁷ Water scarcity will affect

²³¹ IPCC (2014), *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Part B: Regional Aspects. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

²³² Esteban, M., Takagi, H., Nicholls, R.J., Fatma, D., Pratama, M.B., Kurobe, S. and Shibayama, T. (2020), *Adaptation to sea level rise: learning from present examples of land subsidence*. *Ocean & Coastal Management*, 189, p.105145.

²³³ Hijioka, Y., Lin, E., Pereira, J.J., Corlett, R.T., Cui, X., Insarov, G.E., Lasco, R.D., Lindgren, E. and Surjan, A. (2014), *Asia*. In: *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, Adaptation, and Vulnerability. Part B: Regional Aspects. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

²³⁴ Cinco, T.A., De Guzman, R.G., Hilario, F.D. and Wilson, D.M. (2016), *Long-term trends and extremes in observed daily precipitation and near surface air temperature in the Philippines for the period 1951–2010*. *Atmospheric Research*, 168, pp.73–86.

²³⁵ Nelson, G.C., Rosegrant, M.W., Koo, J., Robertson, R., Sulser, T., Zhu, T., Ringler, C., Msangi, S., Palazzo, A., Batka, M. and Magalhaes, M. (2010), *Climate change: Impact on agriculture and costs of adaptation*. International Food Policy Research Institute (IFPRI).

²³⁶ Timmermann, A., An, S.I., Kug, J.S., Jin, F.F. and Cai, W. (2019), *El Niño–Southern Oscillation complexity*. *Nature*, 559(7715), pp.535–541.

²³⁷ Vörösmarty, C.J., Green, P., Salisbury, J. and Lammers, R.B. (2000), *Global water resources: vulnerability from climate change and population growth*. *Science*, 289(5477), pp.284–288.

agriculture, drinking water supply, and industrial activities, exacerbating existing water management challenges.²³⁸

Rising temperatures will increase the incidence of heat-related illnesses, such as heatstroke; cardiovascular diseases; and other health conditions.²³⁹ Higher temperatures can lead to heat exhaustion and heatstroke, particularly during heatwaves, which are becoming more frequent and intense due to climate change.²⁴⁰ Heatstroke occurs when the body's temperature regulation fails, leading to symptoms such as confusion, seizures, and even death if not treated promptly. For instance, during the European heatwave of 2003, it is estimated that more than 70,000 people died due to heat-related conditions, with older adults and those with pre-existing health conditions being the most affected.²⁴¹ Additionally, rising temperatures exacerbate cardiovascular diseases. Heat stress can increase heart rates and blood viscosity, elevating the risk of heart attacks and strokes, especially among vulnerable populations like the elderly and those with pre-existing cardiovascular conditions.²⁴² Studies in the United States have shown that for every 1°C increase in temperature above 20°C, the risk of cardiovascular mortality increases by 3%.²⁴³ Urban areas are particularly affected due to the urban heat island effect, which causes temperatures to be significantly higher than in rural areas, further increasing the risk of heat-related illnesses.²⁴⁴ The impacts of rising temperatures on health are not evenly distributed, with low-income and marginalized communities often facing higher risks due to inadequate housing, lack of access to cooling, and

²³⁸ Asian Development Bank (ADB). (2013). *Asian Water Development Outlook 2013: Measuring Water Security in Asia and the Pacific*. Manila: AD

²³⁹ Huang, C., Barnett, A.G., Wang, X., Vaneckova, P., Fitzgerald, G. and Tong, S. (2011), Projecting future heat-related mortality under climate change scenarios: A systematic review. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 119(12), pp.1681–1690.

²⁴⁰ Patz, J.A., Campbell-Lendrum, D., Holloway, T., and Foley, J.A. (2005), Impact of regional climate change on human health. *Nature*, 438(7066), pp.310–317.

²⁴¹ Robine, J.M., Cheung, S.L., Le Roy, S., Van Oyen, H., Griffiths, C., Michel, J.P., and Herrmann, F.R. (2008), Death toll exceeded 70,000 in Europe during the summer of 2003. *Comptes Rendus Biologies*, 331(2), pp.171–178.

²⁴² Basu, R. and Samet, J.M. (2002), Relation between elevated ambient temperature and mortality: a review of the epidemiologic evidence. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 24(2), pp.190–202.

²⁴³ Baccini, M., Biggeri, A., Accetta, G., Kosatsky, T., Katsouyanni, K., Analitis, A., and Schwartz, J. (2008), Heat effects on mortality in 15 European cities. *Epidemiology*, 19(5), pp.711–719.

²⁴⁴ Ostro, B., Rauch, S., Green, R., Malig, B., and Basu, R. (2010), The effects of temperature and use of air conditioning on hospitalizations. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 172(9), pp.1053–1061.

limited healthcare resources.²⁴⁵ In cities like Phoenix, Arizona, low-income neighbourhoods experience higher rates of heat-related hospital admissions compared to wealthier areas, illustrating the compounded effects of social and environmental factors.²⁴⁶

Vector-Borne Diseases

Changes in climate, particularly rising temperatures and altered precipitation patterns, are expected to expand the geographic range and seasonal activity of vector-borne diseases such as dengue fever and malaria, creating significant public health challenges.²⁴⁷ These diseases are transmitted by vectors like mosquitoes, whose life cycles and habitat suitability are highly sensitive to climate conditions.²⁴⁸

Dengue Fever

Dengue fever, caused by the *Aedes* mosquito, has seen a dramatic increase in incidence due to changing climate conditions. Warmer temperatures can shorten the development time of the mosquito larvae and increase the frequency of mosquito bites, thereby enhancing the transmission of the virus.²⁴⁹ For example, dengue outbreaks have been reported in regions where it was previously uncommon, such as the southern United States and parts of Europe, indicating a shift in the disease's range.²⁵⁰ In Brazil, where rising temperatures and increased rainfall have created ideal breeding conditions for *Aedes aegypti*, there has been a significant rise in

²⁴⁵ Harlan, S.L., Brazel, A.J., Prashad, L., Stefanov, W.L., and Larsen, L. (2006), Neighborhood microclimates and vulnerability to heat stress. *Social Science & Medicine*, 63(11), pp.2847–2863.

²⁴⁶ Ruddell, D.M., Harlan, S.L., Grossman-Clarke, S., and Buyantuyev, A. (2010), Risk and exposure to extreme heat in microclimates of Phoenix, AZ. In *Geospatial techniques in urban hazard and disaster analysis* (pp. 179–202). Springer, Dordrecht.

²⁴⁷ Githeko, A.K., Lindsay, S.W., Confalonieri, U.E. and Patz, J.A. (2000), Climate change and vector-borne diseases: a regional analysis. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 78(9), pp.1136–1147.

²⁴⁸ Githeko, A.K., Lindsay, S.W., Confalonieri, U.E., and Patz, J.A. (2000), Climate change and vector-borne diseases: a regional analysis. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 78(9), pp.1136–1147.

²⁴⁹ Murray, N.E., Quam, M.B., and Wilder-Smith, A. (2013), Epidemiology of dengue: past, present and future prospects. *Clinical Epidemiology*, 5, pp.299–309.

²⁵⁰ Messina, J.P., Brady, O.J., Scott, T.W., Zou, C., Pigott, D.M., Duda, K.A., and Hay, S.I. (2014), Global spread of dengue virus types: mapping the 70-year history. *Trends in Microbiology*, 22(3), pp.138–146.

dengue cases, with over two million reported cases in 2019 alone.²⁵¹ *Aedes aegypti* is a mosquito species that plays a crucial role in the transmission of several significant viral diseases, including dengue fever, Zika virus, chikungunya, and yellow fever. Its widespread distribution and close association with human environments make it a major public health threat, particularly in tropical and subtropical regions.

Aedes aegypti is distinguished by its small, dark body, white banding on its legs, and a unique lyre-shaped pattern of silvery scales on its thorax. It is a day-biting mosquito, with peak activity periods in the early morning and late afternoon.²⁵² Unlike other mosquito species, *Aedes aegypti* prefers to feed on humans rather than animals, making it an efficient vector for human pathogens. Its lifecycle includes an aquatic stage (egg, larva, and pupa) and an adult stage. The eggs can survive desiccation for several months, which helps the species persist in urban environments with intermittent water availability.²⁵³ *Aedes aegypti* is the primary vector for dengue fever, a disease that affects millions annually. For instance, in Southeast Asia, the presence of *Aedes aegypti* has been directly linked to frequent dengue outbreaks. In 2019, the Philippines declared a national dengue epidemic after more than 622,000 cases were reported, a situation exacerbated by the widespread presence of this mosquito species.^{254,255} The same mosquito is also responsible for the transmission of the Zika virus, which led to an international public health emergency in 2016 due to its association with severe birth defects like microcephaly.²⁵⁶ *Aedes aegypti* has adapted well to urban environments, often breeding in man-made containers such as water storage tanks, flowerpots, and discarded tires. Its ability to thrive in these artificial habitats makes it particularly difficult to

²⁵¹ Leta, S., Beyene, T.J., De Clercq, E.M., Amenu, K., Kraemer, M.U. and Revie, C.W. (2020), Global risk mapping for major diseases transmitted by *Aedes* mosquitoes. *International Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 95, pp.123–131.

²⁵² Christophers, S.R. (1960), *Aedes aegypti* (L.) the yellow fever mosquito: Its life history, bionomics and structure. Cambridge University Press.

²⁵³ Clements, A.N. (1992), *The Biology of Mosquitoes: Development, Nutrition and Reproduction*. Chapman & Hall.

²⁵⁴ Morrison, A.C., Zielinski-Gutierrez, E., Scott, T.W., and Rosenberg, R. (2008), Defining challenges and proposing solutions for control of the virus vector *Aedes aegypti*. *PLoS Medicine*, 5(3), p.e68.

²⁵⁵ WHO (2019), Dengue and severe dengue. [online] Available at: <https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/dengue-and-severe-dengue> [Accessed 20 Sep. 2023].

²⁵⁶ Musso, D., and Gubler, D.J. (2016), Zika virus. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 29(3), pp.487–524.

control. Traditional vector control measures, such as insecticide spraying, are often ineffective due to the mosquito's breeding habits and the development of insecticide resistance.²⁵⁷ For example, in parts of Latin America, widespread resistance to pyrethroid insecticides has been documented, complicating efforts to control mosquito populations.²⁵⁸

The persistence of *Aedes aegypti* in urban areas poses significant public health challenges. In Brazil, the coexistence of dengue, chikungunya, and Zika viruses has led to simultaneous outbreaks, straining public health systems and highlighting the need for integrated vector management strategies.²⁵⁹ Effective control of *Aedes aegypti* requires a combination of community education, environmental management to eliminate breeding sites, and novel interventions like genetically modified mosquitoes.²⁶⁰

Malaria

Malaria, transmitted by *Anopheles* mosquitoes, is similarly affected by climate change. Warmer temperatures can accelerate the mosquito's life cycle and reduce the incubation period of the malaria parasite within the mosquito, leading to increased transmission rates.²⁶¹ Regions at higher altitudes that were previously too cool for the malaria parasite are now experiencing cases of the disease as temperatures rise. In the highlands of East Africa, for instance, malaria is being reported at higher elevations than before, exposing populations that lack immunity to the disease.²⁶² This expansion into new areas poses a serious public health challenge as

²⁵⁷ Moyes, C.L., Vontas, J., Martins, A.J., Ng, L.C., Koou, S.Y., Dusfour, I., and Weetman, D. (2017), Contemporary status of insecticide resistance in the major *Aedes* vectors of arboviruses infecting humans. *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 11(7), p.e0005625.

²⁵⁸ Ranson, H., Burhani, J., Lumjuan, N., and Black IV, W.C. (2010), Insecticide resistance in dengue vectors. *Tropical Medicine & International Health*, 15(4), pp.632–644.

²⁵⁹ Brady, O.J., Gething, P.W., Bhatt, S., Messina, J.P., Brownstein, J.S., Hoen, A.G., and Hay, S.I. (2014), Refining the global spatial limits of dengue virus transmission by evidence-based consensus. *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 8(8), p.e3268.

²⁶⁰ Carvalho, D.O., McKemey, A.R., Garziera, L., Lacroix, R., Donnelly, C.A., Alphey, L., and Capurro, M.L. (2015), Suppression of a field population of *Aedes aegypti* in Brazil by sustained release of transgenic male mosquitoes. *PLOS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 9(7), p.e0003864.

²⁶¹ Martens, W.J., Niessen, L.W., Rotmans, J., Jetten, T.H., and McMichael, A.J. (1995), Potential impact of global climate change on malaria risk. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 103(5), pp.458–464.

²⁶² Siraj, A.S., Santos-Vega, M., Bouma, M.J., Yadeta, D., Ruiz Carrascal, D. and Pascual, M. (2014), Altitudinal changes in malaria incidence in highlands of Ethiopia and Colombia. *Science*, 343(6175), pp.1154–1158.

health systems in these regions are often unprepared to manage malaria outbreaks.

PUBLIC HEALTH CHALLENGES

The expansion of vector-borne diseases due to climate change complicates public health efforts, particularly in developing countries where healthcare resources are already limited. Increased incidence of these diseases places additional strain on healthcare systems, necessitating more extensive surveillance, prevention, and treatment programmes.²⁶³ Moreover, controlling vector populations becomes more difficult as suitable habitats for vectors spread, and traditional control methods, such as insecticides, face challenges like resistance development.²⁶⁴

Biodiversity and Ecosystems

Ecosystem Degradation

Climate change will lead to habitat loss and changes in species distribution, threatening biodiversity in Southeast Asia's rich ecosystems.²⁶⁵ This region is home to some of the world's most diverse habitats, including tropical rainforests, mangroves, and coral reefs, all of which are highly sensitive to changes in temperature, precipitation, and sea level. For example, rising temperatures and altered rainfall patterns are projected to shift the distribution of key forest types, such as mountain and lowland forests, forcing species like the Sumatran tiger and the orangutan to move to higher altitudes or risk extinction due to shrinking habitats.²⁶⁶ In marine ecosystems, rising sea temperatures and ocean acidification are causing widespread coral bleaching and threatening coral reefs, which are crucial

²⁶³ Hales, S., de Wet, N., Maindonald, J., and Woodward, A. (2002), Potential effect of population and climate changes on global distribution of dengue fever: an empirical model. *The Lancet*, 360(9336), pp.830–834.

²⁶⁴ Moyes, C.L., Vontas, J., Martins, A.J., Ng, L.C., Koou, S.Y., Dusfour, I., and Weetman, D. (2017), Contemporary status of insecticide resistance in the major *Aedes* vectors of arboviruses infecting humans. *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 11(7), p.e0005625.

²⁶⁵ Sodhi, N.S., Koh, L.P., Brook, B.W. and Ng, P.K.L. (2010), Southeast Asian biodiversity: an impending disaster. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, 19(12), pp.654–660.

²⁶⁶ Struebig, M.J., Kingston, T., Zubaid, A., Mohd-Adnan, A., Rossiter, S.J., and Turner, A. (2015), Conservation importance of forest fragments to Sundaic bats and the potential effects of climate and land-use change. *Biodiversity and Conservation*, 24(4), pp.1033–1050.

habitats for a vast array of marine species. The Coral Triangle, which spans Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, and other Southeast Asian nations, is experiencing significant coral loss, impacting species such as the Napoleon wrasse, an iconic fish species and reef sharks. As a consequence, there will be a negative impact on the livelihoods of millions of people who depend on these ecosystems for food and tourism.²⁶⁷ Additionally, sea-level rise and coastal erosion are degrading mangrove forests and seagrass beds, which serve as nurseries for fish and protect coastlines from storms and flooding, further exacerbating biodiversity loss in the region.²⁶⁸

Coral reefs, mangroves, and rainforests will be particularly affected, resulting in loss of ecosystem services and impacting livelihoods dependent on these natural resources.²⁶⁹ Coral reefs, mangroves, and rainforests provide essential ecosystem services, such as coastal protection, carbon sequestration, and resources for food and income, and their degradation due to climate change and human activities has severe implications for both biodiversity and human livelihoods.

Coral reefs are highly sensitive to temperature increases and ocean acidification. As sea temperatures rise, corals experience bleaching, where they expel the symbiotic algae living in their tissues, losing their colour and, more importantly, their primary source of energy. For instance, the Great Barrier Reef has experienced significant coral bleaching events in 2016 and 2017, resulting in the loss of over half of its coral cover.²⁷⁰ The degradation of coral reefs impacts the livelihoods of millions of people who rely on them for fisheries, tourism, and coastal protection. In Southeast Asia, which hosts over 30% of the world's coral reefs, the decline in reef health threatens the food security and income of coastal communities that depend on reef-associated fisheries.²⁷¹

²⁶⁷ Veron, J.E.N., Devantier, L.M., Turak, E., Green, A.L., Kininmonth, S., Stafford-Smith, M., and Peterson, N. (2009), Delineating the Coral Triangle. *Galaxea, Journal of Coral Reef Studies*, 11(2), pp.91–100.

²⁶⁸ Alongi, D.M. (2008), Mangrove forests: Resilience, protection from tsunamis, and responses to global climate change. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 76(1), pp.1–13.

²⁶⁹ Hoegh-Guldberg, O., Mumby, P.J., Hooten, A.J., Steneck, R.S., Greenfield, P., Gomez, E., Harvell, C.D., Sale, P.F., Edwards, A.J., Caldeira, K. and Knowlton, N. (2007), Coral reefs under rapid climate change and ocean acidification. *Science*, 318(5857), pp.1737–1742.

²⁷⁰ Hughes, T.P., Kerry, J.T., Álvarez-Noriega, M., Álvarez-Romero, J.G., Anderson, K.D., Baird, A.H., Babcock, R.C., Beger, M., Bellwood, D.R., Berkelmans, R. and Bridge, T.C. (2017), Global warming and recurrent mass bleaching of corals. *Nature*, 543(7645), pp.373–377.

²⁷¹ Wilkinson, C. ed. (2008), *Status of Coral Reefs of the World: 2008*. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network and Reef and Rainforest Research Centre.

Mangroves, which provide critical ecosystem services such as storm protection, erosion control, and nurseries for fish species, are also under threat. Rising sea levels, combined with land-use changes like deforestation and urban development, are causing widespread loss of mangrove habitats. In Vietnam, for example, mangrove deforestation for shrimp farming has led to a reduction in coastal protection and increased vulnerability to storms and coastal erosion.²⁷² This loss of mangroves also disrupts local fisheries, affecting the livelihoods of communities that rely on these ecosystems for subsistence and commercial fishing.²⁷³

Rainforests, often referred to as the ‘lungs of the Earth’, play a crucial role in carbon sequestration and maintaining global climate stability. Deforestation and climate change are leading to the fragmentation and degradation of these ecosystems. In the Amazon, deforestation for agriculture and logging has not only contributed to a loss of biodiversity but has also affected the climate regulation services that the forest provides.²⁷⁴ Indigenous communities that depend on the forest for food, medicine, and cultural practices are particularly vulnerable. For example, in Indonesia, deforestation for palm oil plantations has not only destroyed critical habitats but also displaced indigenous populations, affecting their traditional livelihoods.²⁷⁵

SOCIOECONOMIC IMPACTS

Economic Losses

The economic impacts of climate change are projected to be substantial, affecting sectors such as agriculture, fisheries, and tourism.²⁷⁶ This is primarily due to rising temperatures, shifting precipitation patterns, and

²⁷² Barbier, E.B. (2006), Mangrove dependency and the livelihoods of coastal communities in Thailand and Cambodia. In *Valuation of regulating services of ecosystems: Methodology and applications* (pp. 63–82). Springer, Dordrecht.

²⁷³ FAO. (2007), *The World's Mangroves 1980–2005*. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

²⁷⁴ Malhi, Y., Roberts, J.T., Betts, R.A., Killeen, T.J., Li, W. and Nobre, C.A. (2008), Climate change, deforestation, and the fate of the Amazon. *Science*, 319(5860), pp.169–172.

²⁷⁵ Colchester, M., Jiwan, N., Andiko, M.Z., Sirait, M., Firdaus, A.Y., Surambo, A. and Pane, H. (2011), Palm oil and land acquisition in Indonesia: Implications for local communities and indigenous peoples. London: International Land Coalition.

²⁷⁶ Asian Development Bank (ADB). (2013), *Asian Water Development Outlook 2013: Measuring Water Security in Asia and the Pacific*. Manila: ADB.

increased frequency of extreme weather events that disrupt key economic sectors such as agriculture, fisheries, and tourism. In agriculture, for example, changing climate conditions can reduce crop yields due to increased droughts, heatwaves, and altered growing seasons. For example, a study found that US corn and soybean yields could decrease by up to 82% by the end of the century under high-emission scenarios. Similarly, fisheries are affected as rising sea temperatures and ocean acidification alter fish populations and distribution.²⁷⁷ A study also predicts that maximum catch potential in tropical regions could decline by 40% by 2050, threatening food security and livelihoods in these areas.²⁷⁸ The tourism industry is also vulnerable, particularly in regions dependent on natural attractions like coral reefs and ski resorts. Coral bleaching events, driven by higher sea temperatures, have caused significant damage to reefs in the Great Barrier Reef, leading to a decline in tourism revenue.²⁷⁹ Similarly, the ski industry in the Alps faces reduced snowfall and shorter ski seasons, impacting local economies.²⁸⁰

Increased economic losses will exacerbate poverty and inequality, particularly in vulnerable communities.²⁸¹ Poorer communities often rely heavily on climate-sensitive sectors such as agriculture and fishing, and they have limited resources to recover from extreme weather events or adapt to changing conditions. For example, in Sub-Saharan Africa, where a significant portion of the population depends on rain-fed agriculture, droughts can devastate crops, leading to food shortages and loss of income, which deepens poverty.²⁸² Similarly, in coastal regions of South Asia, rising sea levels and intensified cyclones threaten both livelihoods and homes,

²⁷⁷ Schlenker, W. and Roberts, M.J. (2009), Nonlinear temperature effects indicate severe damages to US crop yields under climate change. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(37), pp.15594–15598.

²⁷⁸ Cheung, W.W.L., Lam, V.W.Y., Sarmiento, J.L., Kearney, K., Watson, R. and Pauly, D. (2010), Large-scale redistribution of maximum fisheries catch potential in the global ocean under climate change. *Global Change Biology*, 16(1), pp.24–35.

²⁷⁹ Hoegh-Guldberg, O. (1999), Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the world's coral reefs. *Marine and Freshwater Research*, 50(8), pp.839–866.

²⁸⁰ Steiger, R. and Abegg, B. (2013), The sensitivity of Austrian ski areas to climate change. *Tourism Planning & Development*, 10(4), pp.480–493.

²⁸¹ Hallegatte, S., Green, C., Nicholls, R.J. and Corfee-Morlot, J. (2013), Future flood losses in major coastal cities. *Nature Climate Change*, 3(9), pp.802–806.

²⁸² Morton, J.F. (2007), The impact of climate change on smallholder and subsistence agriculture. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 104(50), pp.19680–19685.

pushing many into poverty.²⁸³ The unequal distribution of economic losses also worsens inequality within and between communities. Wealthier individuals and regions have more resources to implement adaptive measures such as improved infrastructure or insurance, while poorer communities are left more exposed to climate risks.²⁸⁴ For instance, Hurricane Katrina in 2005 disproportionately affected low-income and African American communities in New Orleans, who faced greater challenges in evacuating, securing housing, and recovering economically, thus amplifying pre-existing social and economic inequalities.²⁸⁵ These low income and African American were disproportionately affected due to a combination of historical and systemic factors. Prior to the hurricane, many African American residents lived in low-lying areas such as the Lower Ninth Ward, which were more vulnerable to flooding due to inadequate infrastructure and investment.²⁸⁶ The median household income in these neighbourhoods was significantly lower than the city average, and a high percentage of residents lived below the poverty line.²⁸⁷ As a result, many lacked the financial resources or access to transportation needed to evacuate the city before the storm hit. After the hurricane, these communities faced greater challenges in securing temporary housing and accessing government aid for recovery. The bureaucratic complexities of the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) assistance programmes disproportionately affected low-income residents who often lacked the necessary documentation or knowledge to navigate these systems.²⁸⁸ Moreover, the widespread destruction of affordable housing meant that many were unable to return to their neighbourhoods, leading to long-term displacement and further

²⁸³ Dasgupta, S., Laplante, B., Meisner, C., Wheeler, D., and Yan, D. (2009), The impact of sea level rise on developing countries: a comparative analysis. *Climatic Change*, 93(3–4), pp.379–388.

²⁸⁴ Hallegatte, S., Vogt-Schilb, A., Bangalore, M., and Rozenberg, J. (2016), *Unbreakable: Building the Resilience of the Poor in the Face of Natural Disasters*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

²⁸⁵ Elliott, J.R. and Pais, J. (2006), Race, class, and Hurricane Katrina: Social differences in human responses to disaster. *Social Science Research*, 35(2), pp.295–321.

²⁸⁶ Logan, J.R. (2006), The impact of Katrina: Race and class in storm-damaged neighborhoods. *Social Science Research Council*.

²⁸⁷ Sharkey, P. (2007), Survival and death in New Orleans: Social context and racial disparities in hurricane Katrina mortality. *Du Bois Review: Social Science Research on Race*, 4(1), pp.137–158

²⁸⁸ Henrici, J., Helmuth, A.S., and Braun, J. (2010), *Women, Disasters, and Hurricane Katrina*. Institute for Women's Policy Research.

economic hardship. African American homeowners, who were less likely to have comprehensive insurance coverage, also experienced significant barriers to rebuilding, deepening economic disparities compared to wealthier, predominantly white neighbourhoods.²⁸⁹ These factors compounded the pre-existing inequalities, resulting in a slower and less equitable recovery process for marginalized communities. The uneven response and recovery efforts post-Katrina have been widely critiqued as reinforcing racial and socioeconomic divisions, leaving many low-income and African American residents with fewer opportunities to rebuild their lives and communities.²⁹⁰

CONCLUSION

The last three million years have seen significant climatic changes driven by natural processes. However, the rapid warming observed in the past century is primarily due to human activities. Understanding these changes is crucial for developing effective strategies to mitigate and adapt to ongoing and future climate impacts. The scientific community continues to study past climate events and current trends to provide insights into managing the challenges posed by climate change. These theories collectively provide a comprehensive understanding of the mechanisms behind climate change. They form the basis for climate models and predictions, helping to inform policy decisions and mitigation strategies. The impacts of climate change on the polar regions are profound and multifaceted. In the Arctic, rapid warming, significant sea ice decline, and permafrost thawing are major concerns. In Antarctica, while the warming is more regional, ice sheet mass loss, ice shelf collapse, and variability in sea ice extent are critical issues. These changes not only affect the local ecosystems but also have global implications, particularly concerning sea level rise and global climate patterns.

The past five million years have seen significant climatic fluctuations due to natural factors such as volcanic activity, solar variability, and orbital changes. In the most recent century, human activities have become the

²⁸⁹ Plyer, A. (2018), *The New Orleans Prosperity Index: Tricentennial Collection*. The Data Center. Available at: https://www.datacenterresearch.org/reports_analysis/prosperity-index/

²⁹⁰ Dyson, M.E. (2006), *Come Hell or High Water: Hurricane Katrina and the Color of Disaster*. Basic Books.

dominant influence, leading to unprecedented rates of warming and environmental change. Understanding this chronology is crucial for predicting future climate scenarios and implementing effective mitigation strategies. Rising sea levels due to climate change threaten numerous coastal cities and countries, potentially displacing millions of people by 2050. Effective mitigation and adaptation strategies, including improved infrastructure, early warning systems, and sustainable urban planning, are critical to addressing these challenges. By 2050, several regions around the world are expected to experience significant increases in temperatures and more frequent and severe droughts due to climate change. The Middle East, South Asia, Southern Europe, the western United States, Sub-Saharan Africa, Australia, Central America, and India are particularly vulnerable. These changes will have profound impacts on water resources, agriculture, human health, and overall socioeconomic stability. Addressing these challenges requires comprehensive climate mitigation and adaptation strategies to build resilience against the impending climate impacts. By 2050, Southeast Asia will face significant challenges due to climate change, including rising temperatures, sea-level rise, increased frequency of extreme weather events, and adverse impacts on agriculture, water resources, human health, and biodiversity. Addressing these challenges requires comprehensive adaptation and mitigation strategies, regional cooperation, and significant investments in resilient infrastructure and sustainable development practices. As outlined in the chapter, the rise in greenhouse gas emissions, primarily driven by fossil fuel use, industrial activities, and deforestation, has led to unprecedented warming trends. These changes, combined with historical data, underscore the urgent need for mitigation and adaptation strategies to address the accelerating pace of climate change. Without significant intervention, climate change will continue to exacerbate issues such as extreme weather events, rising sea levels, and shifting climate patterns, leading to severe consequences including mass migration to developed countries, food insecurity, and economic instability and political.²⁹¹ Historically, shifts in climate have often been linked to social upheaval and the collapse of civilizations, as seen in past

²⁹¹ IPCC (2018). *Global Warming of 1.5°C: An IPCC Special Report*. Geneva: Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.

events such as the collapse of the Akkadian Empire and the decline of the Maya civilization due to prolonged droughts.^{292,293}

Emerging technologies present a critical opportunity to mitigate these effects and transform our response to climate change. Artificial Intelligence (AI) can enhance climate models, improve resource management, and optimize energy use across sectors.²⁹⁴ For example, AI algorithms can analyse large datasets to predict extreme weather patterns, which could help in better preparing communities and infrastructure. Robotics could play a role in building more resilient infrastructure and enhancing agricultural productivity. For instance, robots could assist in planting crops that are resilient to climate stresses or aid in precision agriculture, reducing water and fertilizer usage. Biotechnology offers promising solutions, such as engineering crops that can withstand extreme weather conditions or developing microorganisms that can sequester carbon effectively. This could potentially offset some of the agricultural challenges posed by shifting climate zones.²⁹⁵ Quantum Computing holds potential for breakthroughs in climate science by solving complex problems that are currently beyond the reach of traditional computers. This could lead to more accurate climate models, efficient renewable energy solutions, and innovations in material science for sustainable energy storage.²⁹⁶ Nuclear fusion represents a breakthrough in clean energy production, with the potential to provide a near-limitless supply of energy without the carbon emissions associated with fossil fuels. While still under development, advancements in this field could revolutionize the energy sector and reduce our reliance on coal and oil.²⁹⁷ In conclusion, while the challenges posed by climate change are daunting, a combination of proactive policies, international

²⁹² Weiss, H., et al. (1993). The genesis and collapse of third millennium North Mesopotamian civilization. *Science*, 261(5124), 995–1004.

²⁹³ Haug, G. H., et al. (2003). Climate and the collapse of Maya civilization. *Science*, 299(5613), 1731–1735

²⁹⁴ Rolnick, D., et al. (2019). Tackling climate change with machine learning. arXiv preprint arXiv:1906.05433.

²⁹⁵ Oldroyd, G. E., & Dixon, R. A. (2018). Biotechnological approaches for sustainable agriculture. *Annual Review of Plant Biology*, 69, 709–732.

²⁹⁶ Deloitte. (2023). Quantum Computing for Climate Action. Retrieved from <https://www2.deloitte.com>

²⁹⁷ MIT Energy Initiative. (2024). A new breakthrough in fusion reactors could solve a major problem scientists have faced. Retrieved from <https://energy.mit.edu/news/a-new-breakthrough-in-fusion-reactors-could-solve-a-major-problem-scientists-have-faced>.

cooperation, and technological innovation offers hope for mitigating its impacts. The rapid development of AI, Robotics, Biotechnology, Quantum Computing, and nuclear fusion could redefine our capacity to adapt to and combat climate change, making it a pivotal period for human innovation and resilience. While on the other hand without cooperation, these technologies could be used for warfare and the destruction of societies and nation states.

REFERENCES

- Abidin, H. Z., Andreas, H., Gumilar, I., Brinkman, J. J., & Fukuda, Y. (2011). Land subsidence of Jakarta (Indonesia) and its relation with urban development. *Natural Hazards*, 59(3), 1753–1771.
- ADB (Asian Development Bank). (2013). *The economics of climate change in Southeast Asia: A regional review*. Asian Development Bank.
- Albrecht, B. A. (1989). Aerosols, cloud microphysics, and fractional cloudiness. *Science*, 245(4923), 1227–1230.
- Allen, R. C. (2009). *The British industrial revolution in global perspective*. Cambridge University Press.
- Alley, R. B. (2000). The younger Dryas cold interval as viewed from central Greenland. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 19(1–5), 213–226.
- Alley, R. B., Clark, P. U., Huybers, P., & Marotzke, J. (1997). Does the Arctic Ocean–Atlantic thermohaline circulation affect climate? *Geophysical Research Letters*, 24(6), 641–644. <https://doi.org/10.1029/97GL03834>
- Alley, R. B., & Gow, A. J. (2000). Changes in the Laurentide ice sheet: Impacts on the Greenhouse gas concentrations and the North American climate. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 27(4), 607–610.
- Alongi, D. M. (2008). Mangrove forests: Resilience, protection from tsunamis, and responses to global climate change. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 76(1), 1–13.
- Ambrose, S. H. (2001). Paleolithic technology and human evolution. *Science*, 291(5509), 1748–1753.
- Baccini, M., Biggeri, A., Accetta, G., Kosatsky, T., Katsouyanni, K., Analitis, A., & Schwartz, J. (2008). Heat effects on mortality in 15 European cities. *Epidemiology*, 19(5), 711–719.
- Barbier, E. B. (2006). Mangrove dependency and the livelihoods of coastal communities in Thailand and Cambodia. In *Valuation of regulating services of ecosystems: Methodology and applications* (pp. 63–82). Springer.
- Basu, R., & Samet, J. M. (2002). Relation between elevated ambient temperature and mortality: A review of the epidemiologic evidence. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 24(2), 190–202.
- Benson, L., et al. (2007). Ancient Puebloan migrations in response to climate change. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 104(1), 327–331.

- Benson, L. V., Berry, M. S., Jolie, E. A., Spangler, J. D., Stahle, D. W., & Hattori, E. M. (2007). Possible impacts of early-11th-, middle-12th-, and late-13th-century droughts on western Native Americans and the Mississippian Cahokians. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 26(3–4), 336–350.
- Berger, A. (1988). Milankovitch theory and climate. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 26(4), 624–657.
- Bindoff, N. L., Stott, P. A., AchutaRao, K. M., Allen, M. R., Gillett, N., Gutzler, D., Kabumbwe Hansingo, Gabriele Hegerl, Yongyun Hu, Suman Jain, Igor I. Mokhov, James Overland, Judith Perlwitz, Rachid Sebbari, Xuebin Zhang & Zhang, X. (2013). Detection and attribution of climate change: From global to regional. In Stocker, T. F., Qin, D., Plattner, G.-K., Tignor, M., Allen, S. K., Boschung, J., Nauels, A., Xia, Y., Bex, V., & Midgley, P. M. (Eds.), *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* (pp. 867–952). Cambridge University Press.
- Bocherens, H., Drucker, D. G., Bonjean, D., Bridault, A., Conard, N. J., Cupillard, C., Gernay, T., van Kolfschoten, T., Munzel, S. C., & Naito, Y. I. (2011). Isotopic evidence for dietary ecology of cave bear (*Ursus spelaeus*) in the Late Pleistocene of Europe: A review and a case study from the Goyet caves (Belgium). *Quaternary International*, 245(2), 235–241.
- Bony, S., Stevens, B., Frierson, D. M., Jakob, C., Kageyama, M., Pincus, R., Shepherd, T. G., & Sherwood, S. C. (2015). Clouds, circulation and climate sensitivity. *Nature Geoscience*, 8(4), 261–268.
- Box, J. E., et al. (2018). Global sea-level contribution from Arctic land ice: 1971–2017. *Environmental Research Letters*, 13(12), 125012.
- Bradley, R. S. (2000). Past Global Changes and their Significance for the Future. *Quaternary International*, 63(1), 61–67.
- Bradley, R. S., et al. (2003). The climate of the last millennium. In *Paleoclimate, global change and the future*. Springer.
- Brady, O. J., Gething, P. W., Bhatt, S., Messina, J. P., Brownstein, J. S., Hoen, A. G., & Hay, S. I. (2014). Refining the global spatial limits of dengue virus transmission by evidence-based consensus. *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 8(8), e3268.
- Broecker, W. S. (1991). The great ocean conveyor. *Oceanography*, 4(2), 79–89.
- Buckley, B. M., Anchukaitis, K. J., Penny, D., Fletcher, R., Cook, E. R., Sano, M., Nam, L. C., Wichienkeo, A., Minh, T. T., & Nam, L. C. (2010). Climate as a contributing factor in the demise of Angkor, Cambodia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 107(15), 6748–6752.
- Caesar, L., Rahmstorf, S., Robinson, A., Feulner, G., & Saba, V. (2018). Observed fingerprint of a weakening Atlantic Ocean overturning circulation. *Nature*, 556(7700), 191–196.

- Calkin, P. E., & D. A. H. (2009). Pleistocene Glacial geography of the Midwestern United States. In *The geology of the Midwest*. Geological Society of America.
- Carvalho, D. O., McKemey, A. R., Garziera, L., Lacroix, R., Donnelly, C. A., Alphey, L., & Capurro, M. L. (2015). Suppression of a field population of *Aedes aegypti* in Brazil by sustained release of transgenic male mosquitoes. *PLOS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 9(7), e0003864.
- Charlson, R. J., Schwartz, S. E., Hales, J. M., Cess, R. D., Coakley, J. A., Hansen, J. E., & Hofmann, D. J. (1992). Climate forcing by anthropogenic aerosols. *Science*, 255(5043), 423–430.
- Cheung, W. W. L., Lam, V. W. Y., Sarmiento, J. L., Kearney, K., Watson, R., & Pauly, D. (2010). Large-scale redistribution of maximum fisheries catch potential in the global ocean under climate change. *Global Change Biology*, 16(1), 24–35.
- Christophers, S. R. (1960). *Aedes aegypti* (L.) the yellow fever mosquito: Its life history, bionomics and structure. Cambridge University Press.
- Cinco, T. A., et al. (2016). Long-term trends and extremes in observed daily precipitation and near surface air temperature in the Philippines for the period 1951–2010. *Atmospheric Research*, 168, 55–65.
- Clark, P. U., Dyke, A. S., Shakun, J. D., Carlson, A. E., Clark, J., Wohlfarth, B., Mitrovica, J. X., Hostetler, S. W., & McCabe, A. M. (2009). The Last Glacial Maximum. *Science*, 325(5941), 710–714.
- Clark, P. U., et al. (2002). The roles of the ice sheets in the climatic system. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 21(1–3), 1185–1200.
- Clark, P. U., et al. (2006). The middle Pleistocene transition: Characteristics, mechanisms, and implications for long-term changes in atmospheric CO₂. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 25(23–24), 3150–3184.
- Clements, A. N. (1992). *The biology of mosquitoes: Development, nutrition and reproduction*. Chapman & Hall.
- Colchester, M., Jiwan, N., Andiko, M. Z., Sirait, M., Firdaus, A. Y., Surambo, A., & Pane, H. (2011). *Palm oil and land acquisition in Indonesia: Implications for local communities and indigenous peoples*. International Land Coalition.
- Connell, J. (2003). Losing ground? Tuvalu, the greenhouse effect and the garbage can. *Asia Pacific Viewpoint*, 44(2), 89–107.
- Cook, B. I., Ault, T. R., & Smerdon, J. E. (2015). Unprecedented 21st century drought risk in the American Southwest and Central Plains. *Science Advances*, 1(1), e1400082.
- Cook, E. R., Anchukaitis, K. J., Buckley, B. M., D'Arrigo, R. D., Jacoby, G. C., & Wright, W. E. (2012). Asian monsoon failure and megadrought during the last millennium. *Science*, 328(5977), 486–489.
- Cook, E. R., Woodhouse, C. A., Eakin, C. M., Meko, D. M., & Stahle, D. W. (2004). Long-Term aridity changes in the Western United States. *Science*, 306(5698), 1015–1018.

- Cox, P. M., Betts, R. A., Jones, C. D., Spall, S. A., & Totterdell, I. J. (2000). Acceleration of global warming due to carbon-cycle feedbacks in a coupled climate model. *Nature*, 408(6809), 184–187.
- Crutzen, P. J. (2002). Geology of mankind. *Nature*, 415(6867), 23–23.
- CSIRO & Bureau of Meteorology. (2015). Climate change in Australia: Information for Australia's natural resource management regions: Technical Report.
- Cullen, H. M., deMenocal, P. B., Hemming, S., Hemming, G., Brown, F. H., Guilderson, T., & Sirocko, F. (2000). Climate change and the collapse of the Akkadian empire: Evidence from the deep sea. *Geology*, 28(4), 379–382.
- Dasgupta, S., Laplante, B., Meisner, C., Wheeler, D., & Yan, D. (2009). The impact of sea level rise on developing countries: A comparative analysis. *Climatic Change*, 93(3–4), 379–388.
- Deloitte. (2023). Quantum computing for climate action. <https://www2.deloitte.com>
- DeMenocal, P. (2011). Climate and human evolution. *Science*, 331(6017), 540–542.
- Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, germs, and steel: The fates of human societies*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- Diamond, J. (2005). *Collapse: How societies choose to fail or succeed*. Penguin Books.
- Diffenbaugh, N. S., Swain, D. L., & Touma, D. (2015). Anthropogenic warming has increased drought risk in California. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 112(13), 3931–3936.
- Dolan, A. M., Haywood, A. M., Tindall, J. C., & Dowsett, H. J. (2011). The Pliocene Model Intercomparison Project (PlioMIP): Experimental design and boundary conditions (Experiment 2). *Geoscientific Model Development*, 4(3), 571–577.
- Donner, S. D. (2015). The legacy of migration in response to climate stress: Learning from the Gilbertese resettlement in the Solomon Islands. *Natural Resources Forum*, 39(3–4), 191–201.
- Dutton, A., & Lambeck, K. (2012). Ice volume and sea level during the last interglacial. *Science*, 337(6091), 216–219.
- Dutton, A., et al. (2015). Sea-level rise due to polar ice-sheet mass loss during past warm periods. *Science*, 349(6244), 440–449.
- Elliott, J. R., & Pais, J. (2006). Race, class, and Hurricane Katrina: Social differences in human responses to disaster. *Social Science Research*, 35(2), 295–321.
- EPICA Community Members. (2004). Eight glacial cycles from an Antarctic ice core. *Nature*, 429(6992), 623–628.
- Esteban, M., et al. (2020). Adaptation to sea level rise in Southeast Asia. *Springer Climate*. Springer, Cham.
- Etheridge, D. M., Steele, L. P., Langenfelds, R. L., Francey, R. J., Barnola, J. M., & Morgan, V. I. (1996). Natural and anthropogenic changes in atmospheric

- CO₂ over the last 1000 years from air in Antarctic ice and fern. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 101(D2), 4115–4128.
- Fagan, B. (2000). *The little ice age: How climate made history, 1300–1850*. Basic Books.
- FAO. (2007). *The world's Mangroves 1980–2005*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
- Fedorov, A. V., Brierley, C. M., & Emanuel, K. (2013). Tropical cyclones and permanent El Niño in the early Pliocene epoch. *Nature*, 496(7443), 43–47.
- Fedorov, A. V., et al. (2015). Patterns and mechanisms of Pliocene warmth. *Nature Geoscience*, 8(6), 490–500. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ngeo2416>
- Francis, J. A., & Vavrus, S. J. (2015). Evidence linking Arctic amplification to extreme weather in mid-latitudes. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 42(1), 16–22. <https://doi.org/10.1002/2014GL091047>
- Fuchs, R., Conran, M., & Louis, E. (2011). Climate Change and Asia's Coastal Urban Cities: Can they meet the challenge? *Environment and Urbanization Asia*, 2(1), 13–28.
- Ganopolski, A., & Cramer, W. (2008). The role of freshwater in the Younger Dryas climate: A modelling study. *Paleoceanography*, 23(3). <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007PA001501>
- Giosan, L., Clift, P. D., Macklin, M. G., Fuller, D. Q., Constantinescu, Ș., Durcan, J. A., Gobo, A. R., Tabrez, J. A., Giosan, M. G. L., Vespremeanu-Stroe, D., Giosan, L., Hoey, T. M., & Goodbred, S. L. (2012). Fluvial landscapes of the Harappan civilization. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 109(26), E1688–E1694.
- Githeko, A. K., et al. (2000). Climate change and vector-borne diseases: A regional analysis. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 78(9), 1136–1147.
- Grove, J. M. (2004). *Little ice ages: Ancient and modern*. Routledge.
- Grove, J. M., & Switsur, R. (1994). Glacial geological evidence for the medieval warm period. *Climatic Change*, 26(2), 143–169.
- Grove, M. (2011). Speciation, diversity, and Mode 1 technologies: The impact of variability selection. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 61(3), 306–319.
- Hales, S., de Wet, N., Maindonald, J., & Woodward, A. (2002). Potential effect of population and climate changes on global distribution of dengue fever: An empirical model. *The Lancet*, 360(9336), 830–834.
- Hallegatte, S., Green, C., Nicholls, R. J., et al. (2013). Future flood losses in major coastal cities. *Nature Climate Change*, 3, 802–806.
- Hallegatte, S., Vogt-Schilb, A., Bangalore, M., & Rozenberg, J. (2016). *Unbreakable: Building the resilience of the poor in the face of natural disasters*. World Bank.
- Hansen, J., et al. (2005). Efficacy of climate forcing's. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 110(D18), D18104.

- Hansen, J., et al. (2010). Global surface temperature change. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 48(4), RG4004.
- Harlan, S. L., Brazel, A. J., Prashad, L., Stefanov, W. L., & Larsen, L. (2006). Neighborhood microclimates and vulnerability to heat stress. *Social Science & Medicine*, 63(11), 2847–2863.
- Harries, J. E., et al. (2001). Increases in greenhouse forcing inferred from the outgoing longwave radiation spectra of the Earth in 1970 and 1997. *Nature*, 410(6826), 355–357.
- Haug, G. H., Günther, D., Peterson, L. C., Sigman, D. M., Hughen, K. A., & Aeschlimann, B. (2003). Climate and the collapse of Maya civilization. *Science*, 299(5613), 1731–1735.
- Haug, G. H., & Tiedemann, R. (1998). Effect of the formation of the Isthmus of Panama on Atlantic Ocean thermohaline circulation. *Nature*, 393(6686), 673–676.
- Hays, J. D., Imbrie, J., & Shackleton, N. J. (1976). Variations in the earth's orbit: Pacemaker of the ice ages. *Science*, 194(4270), 1121–1132. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.194.4270.1121>
- Haywood, J., & Boucher, O. (2000). Estimates of the direct and indirect radiative forcing due to tropospheric aerosols: A review. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 38(4), 513–543.
- Hearty, P. J., & Neumann, A. C. (2001). Rapid sea level and climate change at the close of the last interglacial (MIS 5e): Evidence from the Bahama Islands. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 20(18), 1881–1895.
- Hegerl, G. C., Zwiers, F. W., Braconnot, P., Gillett, N. P., Luo, Y., Marengo Orsini, J. A., Nicholls, N., Penner, J. E., & Stott, P. A. (2007). Understanding and attributing climate change. In S. Solomon, Q. Dahe, M. Manning, M. Marquis, K. Averyt, M. M. B. Tignor, H. L. R. Miller, & Z. Chen (Eds.), *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* (pp. 663–746). Cambridge University Press.
- Held, I. M., & Soden, B. J. (2000). Water vapor feedback and global warming. *Annual Review of Energy and the Environment*, 25(1), 441–475.
- Hewitt, G. M. (2000). The genetic legacy of the Quaternary ice ages. *Nature*, 405(6789), 907–913.
- Hijioka, Y., Lin, E., Pereira, J. J., et al. (2014). Asia. In: *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, adaptation, and vulnerability. Part B: Regional aspects*. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
- Hockett, B., & Haws, J. (2003). Nutritional ecology and the human demography of Neanderthal extinctions. *Quaternary International*, 33(1), 167–178.
- Hodell, D. A., Curtis, J. H., & Brenner, M. (2001). Solar forcing of drought frequency in the Maya Lowlands. *Science*, 292(5520), 1367–1370.

- Hoegh-Guldberg, O. (1999). Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the world's coral reefs. *Marine and Freshwater Research*, 50(8), 839–866.
- Hoegh-Guldberg, O., et al. (2007). Coral reefs under rapid climate change and ocean acidification. *Science*, 318(5857), 1737–1742.
- Hoffecker, J. F. (2005). *A prehistory of the north: Human settlement of the higher latitudes*. Rutgers University Press.
- Holmgren, K., et al. (2015). Climate and land cover changes in the southern Great Plains: Implications for land management and drought responsiveness. *Journal of Climate*, 28(22), 8897–8912. <https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI-D-15-0391.1>
- Houghton, J. T. (2004). *Global Warming: The Complete Briefing*. Cambridge University Press.
- Houghton, J. T., et al. (2001). *Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis*. Cambridge University Press.
- Huang, C., et al. (2011). The impact of temperature on years of life lost in Brisbane. *Australia. Nature Climate Change*, 1(2), 59–63.
- Hughes, T. P., Kerry, J. T., Álvarez-Noriega, M., Álvarez-Romero, J. G., Anderson, K. D., Baird, A. H., Babcock, R. C., Beger, M., Bellwood, D. R., Berkelmans, R., & Bridge, T. C. (2017). Global warming and recurrent mass bleaching of corals. *Nature*, 543(7645), 373–377.
- Huq, S., & Rabbani, G. (2011). Climate change and Bangladesh: Policy and institutional development to reduce vulnerability. *Journal of Bangladesh Studies*, 13(1), 1–10.
- Im, E. S., Pal, J. S., & Eltahir, E. A. B. (2017). Deadly heat waves projected in the densely populated agricultural regions of South Asia. *Science Advances*, 3(8), e1603322.
- Imbrie, J., Berger, A., Boyle, E. A., Clemens, S., Duffy, A., Howard, W. R., Kukla, G., Kutzbach, J., Martinson, D. G., McIntyre, A., & Mix, A. C. (1993). On the structure and origin of major glaciation cycles 1. Linear responses to Milankovitch forcing. *Paleoceanography*, 8(6), 699–735.
- Imbrie, J., Berger, A., Boyle, E. A., Clemens, S. C., Duffy, A., Howard, W. R., Kukla, G., Kutzbach, J., Martinson, D. G., McIntyre, A., Mix, A. C., Molino, B., Morley, J. J., Peterson, L. C., Pisias, N. G., Prell, W. L., Raymo, M. E., Shackleton, N. J., & Toggweiler, J. R. (1992). On the structure and origin of major glaciation cycles 1. *Linear responses to Milankovitch forcing*. *Paleoceanography*, 7(6), 701–738.
- Imbrie, J., & Imbrie, K. P. (1980). Modeling the climatic response to orbital variations. *Science*, 207(4434), 943–953.
- Imbrie, J., et al. (1992). On the distribution of glacial and interglacial periods. *Paleoceanography*, 7(6), 701–738. <https://doi.org/10.1029/92PA02028>
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2013). *Climate change 2013: The physical science basis*. Cambridge University Press.

- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Synthesis Report*. IPCC.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). (2021). Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. In *Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press. <https://doi.org/10.1017/9781009157986>
- IPCC. (2013). Climate change 2013: The physical science basis. In *Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.
- IPCC. (2014). Climate change 2014: Impacts, adaptation, and vulnerability. In *Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*.
- IPCC. (2018). *Global warming of 1.5°C: An IPCC special report*. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
- IPCC. (2021). Climate change 2021: The physical science basis. In *Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.
- IPCC. (2021). Summary for policymakers. In V. Masson-Delmotte, P. Zhai, A. Pirani, S. L. Connors, C. Péan, S. Berger, N. Caud, Y. Chen, L. Goldfarb, M. I. Gomis, M. Huang, K. Leitzell, E. Lonnoy, J. B. R. Matthews, T. K. Maycock, T. Waterfield, O. Yelekçi, R. Yu, & B. Zhou (Eds.), *Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. Cambridge University Press.
- IPCC. (2023). *Climate change 2023: Synthesis report*. IPCC. www.ipcc.ch
- Ivy-Ochs, S., Kerschner, H., Maisch, M., Christl, M., Kubik, P. W., & Schlüchter, C. (2009). Latest Pleistocene and Holocene glacier variations in the European Alps. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 28(21–22), 2137–2149.
- Jacobson, M. Z. (2001). Strong radiative heating due to the mixing state of black carbon in atmospheric aerosols. *Nature*, 409(6821), 695–697.
- Johnsen, S. J., et al. (2001). Odyssey: The Greenland Ice Core Project. *Journal of Glaciology*, 47(157), 1–8. <https://doi.org/10.3189/172756501781831211>
- Jordan, W. C. (1996). *The Great Famine: Northern Europe in the Early Fourteenth Century*. Princeton University Press.
- Jouzel, J., Masson-Delmotte, V., Cattani, O., Dreyfus, G., Falourd, S., Hoffmann, G., Minster, B., Nouet, J., Barnola, J. M., Chappellaz, J., Fischer, H., Gallet, J. C., Johnsen, S., Leuenberger, M., Loulergue, L., Luethi, D., Oerter, H., Parrenin, F., Raisbeck, G., & Wolff, E. W. (2007). Orbital and millennial Antarctic climate variability over the past 800,000 years. *Science*, 317(5839), 793–796.
- Kaspar, F., et al. (2005). Simulation of the Eemian interglacial and comparison with the Holocene. *Climate Dynamics*, 25(2–3), 201–220.

- Keenan, T. F., Prentice, I. C., Canadell, J. G., Williams, C. A., Wang, H., Raupach, M., & Collatz, G. J. (2016). Recent pause in the growth rate of atmospheric CO₂ due to enhanced terrestrial carbon uptake. *Nature Communications*, 7, 13428.
- Kennett, D. J., et al. (2012). Development and disintegration of Maya political systems in response to climate change. *Science*, 338(6108), 788–791.
- Knecht, H. (1997). *Projectile technology*. Plenum Press.
- Kovats, R. S., & Kristie, L. E. (2006). Heatwaves and public health in Europe. *The European Journal of Public Health*, 16(6), 592–599.
- Krishnan, R., et al. (2020). *Assessment of climate change over the Indian region: A report of the Ministry of Earth Sciences (MoES)*. Government of India.
- Kuper, R., & Kröpelin, S. (2006). Climate-controlled Holocene occupation in the Sahara: Motor of Africa's evolution. *Science*, 313(5788), 803–807.
- Kutzbach, J. E. (1981). Monsoon climate of the early Holocene: Climate experiment with the Earth's orbital parameters for 9000 years ago. *Science*, 214(4516), 59–61.
- Lamb, H. H. (1965). The early medieval warm epoch and its sequel. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*, 1, 13–37.
- Lamb, H. H. (1995). *Climate, history, and the modern world*. Routledge.
- Lambeck, K., Rouby, H., Purcell, A., Sun, Y., & Sambridge, M. (2014). Sea level and global ice volumes from the Last Glacial Maximum to the Holocene. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 111(43), 15296–15303.
- Lean, J. L., & Rind, D. H. (2008). How natural and anthropogenic influences alter global and regional surface temperatures. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 35(18), L18701.
- Lenton, T. M., et al. (2008). Tipping elements in the Earth's climate system. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 105(6), 1786–1793.
- Leta, S., Beyene, T. J., De Clercq, E. M., Amenu, K., Kraemer, M. U., & Revie, C. W. (2020). Global risk mapping for major diseases transmitted by Aedes mosquitoes. *International Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 95, 123–131.
- Lisiecki, L. E., & Raymo, M. E. (2005). A Pliocene-Pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic $\delta^{18}\text{O}$ records. *Paleoceanography*, 20(1), PA1003. <https://doi.org/10.1029/2004PA001071>
- Lohmann, U., & Feichter, J. (2005). Global indirect aerosol effects: A review. *Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics*, 5(3), 715–737.
- Luterbacher, J., et al. (2006). Mediterranean climate variability over the last centuries: A review. In *The Mediterranean Climate: An overview of the main characteristics and issues*. Elsevier.
- Luthi, D., et al. (2008). High-resolution carbon dioxide record from the Vostok ice core. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 35(3), L03705. <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007GL029999>
- Lycett, S. J., & Cramon-Taubadel, N. V. (2008). A comparative analysis of Oldowan and Acheulean bifacial tools: Morphometric variability and the effects

- of raw material availability. *Journal of Archaeological Science*, 35(10), 2523–2530.
- Magrin, G. O., et al. (2014). Central and South America. In: *Climate Change 2014: Impacts, adaptation, and vulnerability*. Part B: Regional Aspects. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
- Malhi, Y., Roberts, J. T., Betts, R. A., Killeen, T. J., Li, W., & Nobre, C. A. (2008). Climate change, deforestation, and the fate of the Amazon. *Science*, 319(5860), 169–172.
- Malm, A. (2016). *Fossil capital: The rise of steam power and the roots of global warming*. Verso Books.
- Mann, M. E., Zhang, Z., Hughes, M. K., Bradley, R. S., Miller, S. K., Rutherford, S., & Ni, F. (2009). Proxy-based reconstructions of hemispheric and global surface temperature variations over the past two millennia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(36), 13252–13257.
- Mann, M. E., et al. (2009). Global signatures and dynamical origins of the Little Ice Age and Medieval Climate Anomaly. *Science*, 326(5957), 1256–1260.
- Martens, W. J., Niessen, L. W., Rotmans, J., Jetten, T. H., & McMichael, A. J. (1995). Potential impact of global climate change on malaria risk. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 103(5), 458–464.
- Maslin, M. A., et al. (1998). Pleistocene evolution: Northern Hemisphere ice sheets and North Atlantic Ocean. *Geology*, 26(6), 467–470.
- Mayewski, P. A., et al. (2004). Holocene climate variability. *Quaternary Research*, 62(3), 243–255.
- McNeill, J. R. (2000). *Something new under the sun: An environmental history of the twentieth-century world*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- McNeill, J. R., & Engelke, P. (2014). *The great acceleration: An environmental history of the anthropocene since 1945*. Harvard University Press.
- McPhaden, M. J., Zebiak, S. E., & Glantz, M. H. (2006). ENSO as an integrating concept in Earth science. *Science*, 314(5806), 1740–1745.
- Medina-Elizalde, M., & Rohling, E. J. (2012). Collapse of Classic Maya civilization related to modest reduction in precipitation. *Science*, 335(6071), 956–959.
- Messina, J. P., Brady, O. J., Scott, T. W., Zou, C., Pigott, D. M., Duda, K. A., & Hay, S. I. (2014). Global spread of dengue virus types: Mapping the 70-year history. *Trends in Microbiology*, 22(3), 138–146.
- Milankovitch, M. (1941). *Kanon der Erdbestrahlung und seine Anwendung auf das Eiszeitenproblem*. Royal Serbian Academy Special Publication.
- Miller, K. G., et al. (2012). A 180-million-year record of sea level rise from the New Jersey coast. *Geology*, 40(8), 685–688. <https://doi.org/10.1130/G33089>
- MIT Energy Initiative. (2024). A new breakthrough in fusion reactors could solve a major problem scientists have faced. <https://energy.mit.edu/news/a-new-breakthrough-in-fusion-reactors-could-solve-a-major-problem-scientists-have-faced>

- Mix, A. C., Bard, E., & Schneider, R. (2001). Environmental processes of the ice age: Land, oceans, glaciers (EPILOG). *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 20(4), 627–657.
- Morrison, A. C., Zielinski-Gutierrez, E., Scott, T. W., & Rosenberg, R. (2008). Defining challenges and proposing solutions for control of the virus vector *Aedes aegypti*. *PLoS Medicine*, 5(3), e68.
- Morton, J. F. (2007). The impact of climate change on smallholder and subsistence agriculture. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 104(50), 19680–19685.
- Moyes, C. L., Vontas, J., Martins, A. J., Ng, L. C., Koou, S. Y., Dusfour, I., & Weetman, D. (2017). Contemporary status of insecticide resistance in the major *Aedes* vectors of arboviruses infecting humans. *PLoS Neglected Tropical Diseases*, 11(7), e0005625.
- Murray, N. E., Quam, M. B., & Wilder-Smith, A. (2013). Epidemiology of dengue: Past, present and future prospects. *Clinical Epidemiology*, 5, 299–309.
- Musso, D., & Gubler, D. J. (2016). Zika virus. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 29(3), 487–524.
- Myhre, G., Shindell, D., Bréon, F. M., Collins, W., Fuglestad, J., Huang, J., Koch, D., Lamarque, J. F., Lee, D., Mendoza, B., & Nakajima, T. (2013). Anthropogenic and natural radiative forcing. In *Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change* (pp. 659–740). Cambridge University Press.
- NASA. (2020). The causes of climate change. *NASA Climate Change*. Available at: <https://climate.nasa.gov/causes/>
- NASA. (2024). Milankovitch (orbital) cycles and their role in earth's climate. Retrieved from NASA Science.
- National Geographic. (2024). The influence of climate change on extreme environmental events. Retrieved from National Geographic.
- NEEM Community Members. (2013). Eemian interglacial reconstructed from a Greenland folded ice core. *Nature*, 493(7433), 489–494.
- Nelson, G. C., et al. (2010). *Climate change: Impact on agriculture and costs of adaptation*. International Food Policy Research Institute.
- NOAA. (2021). Trends in atmospheric carbon dioxide. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. <https://www.esrl.noaa.gov/gmd/ccgg/trends/>
- NOAA National Centres for Environmental Information. (2020). Global Climate Report - Annual 2020. Retrieved from NOAA.
- Notz, D., & Stroeve, J. (2016). Observed Arctic sea-ice loss directly follows anthropogenic CO₂ emission. *Science*, 354(6313), 747–750.
- Oglesby, R. J., Sever, T., Saturno, W., Erickson, D., & Srikishen, J. (2010). Collapse of the Maya: Could deforestation have contributed? *Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres*, 115(D12), D12106.

- Oldroyd, G. E., & Dixon, R. A. (2018). Biotechnological approaches for sustainable agriculture. *Annual Review of Plant Biology*, 69, 709–732.
- Ostro, B., Rauch, S., Green, R., Malig, B., & Basu, R. (2010). The effects of temperature and use of air conditioning on hospitalizations. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 172(9), 1053–1061.
- Overpeck, J., Otto-Bliesner, B., & Miller, G. (2006). Paleoclimatic evidence for future ice-sheet instability and rapid sea-level rise. *Science*, 311(5768), 1747–1750.
- Pal, J. S., & Eltahir, E. A. B. (2016). Future temperature in southwest Asia projected to exceed a threshold for human adaptability. *Nature Climate Change*, 6(2), 197–200.
- Parkinson, C. L. (2019). A 40-y record reveals gradual Antarctic sea ice increases followed by decreases at rates far exceeding the rates seen in the Arctic. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116(29), 14414–14423.
- Patz, J. A., Campbell-Lendrum, D., Holloway, T., & Foley, J. A. (2005). Impact of regional climate change on human health. *Nature*, 438(7066), 310–317.
- Peltier, W. R., et al. (2015). The role of ice sheets in climate change. *Nature Climate Change*, 5(1), 43–47.
- Peltier, W. R., et al. (2019). The influence of human activity on climate and its significance for the Americas. *Nature Climate Change*, 9, 1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41558-019-0453-4>
- Petit, J. R., et al. (1999). Climate and atmospheric history of the past 420,000 years from the Vostok ice core, Antarctica. *Nature*, 399(6735), 429–436.
- Philander, S. G. (1983). El Niño Southern Oscillation phenomena. *Nature*, 302(5906), 295–301.
- Pollock, S. (1999). *Ancient Mesopotamia: The Eden that Never Was*. Cambridge University Press.
- Possehl, G. L. (2002). *The Indus Civilization: A Contemporary Perspective*. AltaMira Press.
- Potts, R. (1998). Variability selection in hominid evolution. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 7(3), 81–96.
- Rahmstorf, S. (2006). Thermohaline ocean circulation. *Encyclopedia of Quaternary Sciences*, 2, 739–750.
- Rahmstorf, S., & Coumou, D. (2011). Increase of Atlantic storminess since the 1970s. *Climate Dynamics*, 38(3–4), 2389–2399. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-011-1006-5>
- Ranson, H., Burhani, J., Lumjuan, N., & Black, W. C., IV. (2010). Insecticide resistance in dengue vectors. *Tropical Medicine & International Health*, 15(4), 632–644.
- Ravelo, A. C., Andreasen, D. H., Lyle, M., Lyle, A. O., & Wara, M. W. (2004). Regional climate shifts caused by gradual global cooling in the Pliocene epoch. *Nature*, 429(6989), 263–267.

- Raymo, M. E., & Huybers, P. (2008). Unlocking the mysteries of the ice ages. *Nature*, 451(7176), 284–285.
- Rignot, E., et al. (2019). Four decades of Antarctic Ice Sheet mass balance from 1979–2017. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116(4), 1095–1103.
- Robine, J. M., Cheung, S. L., Le Roy, S., Van Oyen, H., Griffiths, C., Michel, J. P., & Herrmann, F. R. (2008). Death toll exceeded 70,000 in Europe during the summer of 2003. *Comptes Rendus Biologies*, 331(2), 171–178.
- Rohling, E. J., et al. (2008). High rates of sea-level rise during the last interglacial period. *Nature Geoscience*, 1(1), 38–42.
- Rolnick, D., et al. (2019). Tackling climate change with machine learning. arXiv preprint arXiv:1906.05433.
- Ruddell, D. M., Harlan, S. L., Grossman-Clarke, S., & Buyantuyev, A. (2010). Risk and exposure to extreme heat in microclimates of Phoenix, AZ. In *Geospatial techniques in urban hazard and disaster analysis* (pp. 179–202). Springer.
- Ruddiman, W. F. (2008). *Earth's climate: Past and future*. W.H. Freeman and Company.
- Salzmann, U., et al. (2008). The Pliocene and future climates: Results from the PMIP2 model intercomparison. *Paleoceanography*, 23(2). <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007PA001515>
- Scambos, T. A., et al. (2004). Glacier acceleration and thinning after ice shelf collapse in the Larsen B embayment, Antarctica. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 31(18).
- Schlenker, W., & Roberts, M. J. (2009). Nonlinear temperature effects indicate severe damages to US crop yields under climate change. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(37), 15594–15598.
- Schuur, E. A. G., et al. (2015). Climate change and the permafrost carbon feedback. *Nature*, 520(7546), 171–179.
- Scussolini, P., et al. (2016). Adaptation to sea level rise: A multidisciplinary analysis for Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam. *Water Resources Research*, 52(10), 7916–7934.
- Serreze, M. C., & Barry, R. G. (2011). Processes and impacts of Arctic amplification: A research synthesis. *Global and Planetary Change*, 77(1–2), 85–96.
- Shea, J. J. (2006). The origins of lithic projectile point technology: Evidence from Africa, the Levant, and Europe. *Journal of Archaeological Science*, 33(6), 823–846.
- Siraj, A. S., Santos-Vega, M., Bouma, M. J., Yadeta, D., Ruiz Carrascal, D., & Pascual, M. (2014). Altitudinal changes in malaria incidence in highlands of Ethiopia and Colombia. *Science*, 343(6175), 1154–1158.
- Smil, V. (2010). *Energy transitions: History, requirements, prospects*. Praeger.
- Sodhi, N. S., et al. (2010). Conserving Southeast Asian forest biodiversity in human-modified landscapes. *Biological Conservation*, 143(10), 2375–2384.

- Soffer, O. (1985). *The upper Paleolithic of the Central Russian Plain*. Academic Press.
- Spreen, G., Kwok, R., & Menemenlis, D. (2010). Impact of Earth's orbital eccentricity on ice sheet stability. *Nature Geoscience*, 3, 399–404. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ngeo851>
- Stahle, D. W., Fye, F. K., Cook, E. R., & Griffin, R. D. (2007). Tree-ring reconstructed megadroughts over North America since AD 1300. *Climatic Change*, 83(1–2), 133–149.
- Stanton, E. A., & Ackerman, F. (2007). *Florida and climate change: The costs of inaction*. Tufts University Global Development and Environment Institute.
- Staubwasser, M., & Weiss, H. (2006). Holocene climate and cultural evolution in late prehistoric–early historic West Asia. *Quaternary Research*, 66(3), 372–387.
- Steffen, W., Grinevald, J., Crutzen, P., & McNeill, J. (2011). The Anthropocene: Conceptual and historical perspectives. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences*, 369(1938), 842–867.
- Steiger, R., & Abegg, B. (2013). The sensitivity of Austrian ski areas to climate change. *Tourism Planning & Development*, 10(4), 480–493.
- Stocker, T. F., Qin, D., Plattner, G. K., Tignor, M., Allen, S. K., Boschung, J., Nauels, A., Xia, Y., Bex, V., & Midgley, P. M. (2013). *Climate change 2013: The physical science basis*. Cambridge University Press.
- Stott, P. A., et al. (2011). The attribution of weather and climate-related events. *Wiley interdisciplinary reviews: Climate Change*, 2(2), 231–248.
- Strauss, B. H., et al. (2012). Tidally adjusted estimates of topographic vulnerability to sea level rise and flooding for the contiguous United States. *Environmental Research Letters*, 7(1), 014033.
- Stroeve, J., et al. (2012). The Arctic's rapidly shrinking sea ice cover: A research synthesis. *Climatic Change*, 110(3–4), 1005–1027.
- Stroeve, J., et al. (2012). Arctic Sea ice decline: Faster than forecast. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 39(8), L09501. <https://doi.org/10.1029/2012GL051090>
- Struebig, M. J., Kingston, T., Zubaid, A., Mohd-Adnan, A., Rossiter, S. J., & Turner, A. (2015). Conservation importance of forest fragments to Sundaic bats and the potential effects of climate and land-use change. *Biodiversity and Conservation*, 24(4), 1033–1050.
- Timmermann, A., et al. (2019). Climate change due to greenhouse gases. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources*, 44, 1–28.
- Trenberth, K. E. (1997). The definition of El Niño. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, 78(12), 2771–2777.
- Turner, J., et al. (2005). Antarctic climate change during the last 50 years. *International Journal of Climatology*, 25(3), 279–294.
- Turney, C. S. M., & Jones, R. T. (2010). Does the Agulhas current amplify global temperatures during super-interglacials? *Journal of Quaternary Science*, 25(6), 839–843.

- Twomey, S. (1977). The influence of pollution on the shortwave albedo of clouds. *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences*, 34(7), 1149–1152.
- Tyndall, J. (1861). On the absorption and radiation of heat by gases and vapours, and on the physical connexion of radiation, absorption, and conduction. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London*, 151, 1–36.
- Vellinga, P. (2001). Climate change and flood risk in the Netherlands. *Global Environmental Change Part B: Environmental Hazards*, 3(3–4), 103–111.
- Veron, J. E. N., Devantier, L. M., Turak, E., Green, A. L., Kininmonth, S., Stafford-Smith, M., & Peterson, N. (2009). Delineating the Coral Triangle. *Galaxea, Journal of Coral Reef Studies*, 11(2), 91–100.
- Vörösmarty, C. J., et al. (2000). Global water resources: Vulnerability from climate change and population growth. *Science*, 289(5477), 284–288.
- Weiss, H., Courty, M.-A., Wetterstrom, W., Guichard, F., Senior, L., Meadow, R., & Curnow, A. (1993). The genesis and collapse of third millennium North Mesopotamian civilization. *Science*, 261(5124), 995–1004.
- WHO. (2019). Dengue and severe dengue. Retrieved September 20, 2023, from <https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/dengue-and-severe-dengue>.
- Wiles, G. C., & Calkin, P. E. (1994). Late Holocene, high-resolution glacial chronologies and climate, Kenai Mountains, Alaska. *Geological Society of America Bulletin*, 106(2), 281–303.
- Wilkinson, C. (Ed.). (2008). *Status of Coral Reefs of the world: 2008*. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network and Reef and Rainforest Research Centre.
- Woodroffe, C. D. (2008). Reef-island topography and the vulnerability of atolls to sea-level rise. *Global and Planetary Change*, 62(1–2), 77–96.
- World Weather Attribution. (2019). *Attribution of extreme weather events to climate change*. World Weather Attribution.
- Yin, J., et al. (2013). A projection of sea level change impacts on coastal cities in 2050. *Climatic Change*, 119, 671–685.
- Zachos, J. et al. (2020). High-fidelity record of Earth’s climate history puts current changes in context. [Phys.org](https://www.eur-physics.org/).
- Zachos, J. C., et al. (2001). Trends, rhythms, and aberrations in global climate 65 Ma to present. *Science*, 292(5517), 686–693.



CHAPTER 5

Migration

INTRODUCTION

Human migration has been a fundamental aspect of our species' history, shaping the genetic, cultural, and social fabric of populations around the world. However, contemporary climate change is significantly altering traditional migration patterns and creating new challenges. As climate change exacerbates environmental conditions, such as sea-level rise, extreme weather events, and prolonged droughts, more people are being forced to migrate both within and across national borders. For example, in low-lying island nations like Kiribati and the Maldives, rising sea levels threaten to submerge entire communities, prompting discussions around 'climate refugees' and the need for international legal frameworks to protect displaced populations.¹ In Sub-Saharan Africa, recurrent droughts and desertification have made traditional agricultural practices unsustainable, pushing rural communities towards urban areas or across borders in search of better livelihoods.² In Nigeria's Lake Chad Basin, the shrinking of the

¹ McNamara, K.E. and Gibson, C. (2009), 'We do not want to leave our land': Pacific ambassadors at the United Nations resist the category of 'climate refugees'. *Geoforum*, 40(3), pp.475–483.

² Rigaud, K.K., de Sherbinin, A., Jones, B., Bergmann, J., Clement, V., Ober, K., and Midgley, A. (2018), *Groundswell: Preparing for internal climate migration*. World Bank Publications.

lake due to decreased rainfall and increased water extraction has displaced millions, exacerbating conflicts over resources and contributing to the rise of insurgent groups like Boko Haram.³ Similarly, in Central America, changing precipitation patterns and increased frequency of hurricanes have contributed to agricultural failures, particularly in the so-called ‘Dry Corridor’ spanning parts of Guatemala, Honduras, and El Salvador. These conditions have driven many to migrate northwards to Mexico and the United States, contributing to the so-called climate migration crisis at the US–Mexico border.⁴ These examples illustrate how climate change is not only altering the physical landscape but also reshaping the social and economic dynamics of migration. The impacts of these changes are multifaceted, influencing not just the individuals and communities directly affected but also posing significant challenges for host countries and international migration policies. As the climate continues to change, understanding and addressing these migration patterns will be crucial for global stability and human security. This chapter provides an overview of the key phases and patterns of global human migration over the last three million years, supported by academic research and archaeological findings.

EARLY HOMININ MIGRATIONS (THREE MILLION TO ONE MILLION YEARS AGO)

Australopithecus and Early Homo

Australopithecus

The genus *Australopithecus*, which existed around four to two million years ago, primarily inhabited eastern and southern Africa. Fossil evidence, such as the famous ‘Lucy’ skeleton, suggests they were among the first hominins to exhibit bipedalism.⁵ The fossil evidence of *Australopithecus afarensis*, particularly the famous ‘Lucy’ skeleton discovered in 1974 in Ethiopia, is crucial in understanding the early development of bipedalism

³ Okpara, U.T., Stringer, L.C., Dougill, A.J., and Bila, M.D. (2015), Conflicts about water in Lake Chad: Are environmental, vulnerability and security issues linked? *Progress in Development Studies*, 15(4), pp.308–325.

⁴ Bergmann, J. (2019), Climate change, migration, and the crisis in the Sahel. *European Union Institute for Security Studies (EUISS)*, 5, pp.1–4.

⁵ Johanson, D.C. and White, T.D. (1979), A systematic assessment of early African hominids. *Science*, 203(4379), pp.321–330.

among hominins. Lucy, who lived around 3.2 million years ago, is one of the most complete early hominin skeletons ever found, providing critical insights into the morphology of early human ancestors. Lucy's pelvic structure, leg bones, and knee joints show adaptations that are associated with walking upright on two legs, a hallmark of bipedalism.⁶ Specifically, her knee joint angles inward, a feature that aligns the legs under the body's centre of gravity, making upright walking more efficient.⁷ Bipedalism is thought to have given early hominins an advantage in terms of energy efficiency, allowing them to travel long distances more easily than their quadrupedal ancestors. It may also have freed their hands for other tasks, such as tool use or carrying food.⁸ Fossils of *Australopithecus afarensis* indicate a mix of bipedal and arboreal traits, suggesting that while they primarily walked on two legs, they retained some ability to move in trees, pointing to a transitional phase in human evolution.⁹ Bipedalism is considered a significant evolutionary adaptation in early hominins, as it conferred several advantages, particularly in terms of energy efficiency. Research indicates that walking on two legs, as opposed to quadrupedally, requires less energy over long distances. Early hominins likely lived in environments where efficient travel across large areas in search of food, water, or other resources was crucial for survival. Bipedalism reduced the energy cost of locomotion, allowing hominins to cover greater distances while conserving energy for other vital activities, such as foraging or social interaction.¹⁰ The mechanics of bipedalism also play a role in energy efficiency. When walking on two legs, the centre of gravity remains relatively stable, minimizing the need for energy-intensive muscle movements. In contrast, quadrupedal locomotion, especially on uneven terrain, requires more effort to maintain balance and coordination.¹¹ Additionally, bipedalism

⁶ Johanson, D.C. and Edey, M.A. (1981), *Lucy: The Beginnings of Humankind*. New York: Simon and Schuster.

⁷ Lovejoy, C.O. (1988), Evolution of human walking. *Scientific American*, 259(5), pp.118–125.

⁸ Stanford, C., Allen, J.S. and Anton, S.C. (2013), *Biological Anthropology: The Natural History of Humankind*. 3rd ed. Boston: Pearson.

⁹ Ward, C.V., Kimbel, W.H. and Johanson, D.C. (2011), Complete Fourth Metatarsal and Arches in the Foot of *Australopithecus afarensis*. *Science*, 331(6018), pp.750–753.

¹⁰ Sockol, M.D., Raichlen, D.A. and Pontzer, H. (2007), Chimpanzee locomotor energetics and the origin of human bipedalism. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 104(30), pp.12265–12269.

¹¹ Pontzer, H. (2010), Economics of bipedalism: effects of body size and limb length on locomotor efficiency in humans and other primates. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 58(6), pp. 568–575.

may have allowed early hominins to thermoregulate more effectively in hot savannah environments, as walking upright exposes less surface area to direct sunlight and maximizes the body's ability to cool down through wind exposure.¹² Moreover, bipedalism freed the hands, enabling early hominins to carry tools, food, or infants while travelling, which may have contributed to greater survival and reproductive success.¹³ This adaptation allowed hominins to exploit a wider range of resources and environments compared to their quadrupedal ancestors. Bipedalism is not only significant for locomotion but also for the transformative role it played in freeing the hands, a key advantage for early hominins. By walking upright, hominins could use their hands for a variety of tasks while travelling, which likely conferred survival benefits. The ability to carry tools is a particularly important development. Early stone tools, such as those from the Oldowan culture, date back around 2.6 million years and were used for activities like cutting meat or breaking bones to access marrow.¹⁴ These tools are among the earliest evidence of hominin technology, providing insights into the cognitive and cultural development of early human ancestors. The Oldowan tools, typically simple flakes and cores, were crafted from easily available materials like quartzite and basalt. The process of creating these tools involved striking one stone against another to produce sharp-edged flakes, which could then be used for various tasks such as cutting meat or processing plant materials.¹⁵ The efficiency of these tools enabled early hominins to access new food sources, particularly in scavenging activities where tools were used to break bones and extract nutrient-rich marrow.¹⁶ These tools are closely associated with early hominin species, particularly *Homo habilis*, and were likely used to supplement a diet that included a significant portion of meat, a shift that had profound implications for

¹²Wheeler, P.E. (1991), The influence of bipedalism on the energy and water budgets of early hominids. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 21(2), pp.117–136.

¹³Stanford, C., Allen, J.S. and Anton, S.C. (2013), *Biological Anthropology: The Natural History of Humankind*. 3rd ed. Boston: Pearson.

¹⁴Toth, N. and Schick, K. (2009), The Oldowan: The tool making of early hominins and chimpanzees compared. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 38, pp.289–305.

¹⁵Toth, N. and Schick, K. (2009), 'The Oldowan: The Tool Making of Early Hominins and Chimpanzees Compared', *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 38, pp. 289–305.

¹⁶de la Torre, I. (2011), 'The Early Stone Age Lithic Assemblages of Gadeb (Ethiopia) and the Developed Oldowan/early Acheulean in East Africa', *Journal of Human Evolution*, 60(6), pp. 768–812.

human evolution.¹⁷ The inclusion of meat in the diet, facilitated using tools, likely contributed to increased caloric intake, which is believed to have supported the development of larger brains in hominins.¹⁸ This process, known as the ‘expensive tissue hypothesis’, posits that the energy savings from a smaller gut, which was no longer required to digest large amounts of fibrous plant material, could be redirected to support brain growth.

Moreover, the ability to produce and use tools represents an important cognitive leap in problem-solving and innovation. The Oldowan toolmakers exhibited foresight and planning, selecting the appropriate stones and striking techniques to create functional tools. The neural circuits used in toolmaking overlap with those used in language, indicating that the development of toolmaking skills may have had broader implications for the evolution of human cognition.¹⁹ In fact, archaeological evidence from Olduvai Gorge and other sites suggests that tool use and innovation were critical factors in hominin adaptation to changing environments, allowing early humans to process a wider range of food sources and improve their chances of survival.²⁰ The development of the Oldowan tool culture was not just a technological advancement but also a reflection of increasing social complexity among early hominins. The use of tools likely encouraged more cooperative behaviours, such as sharing food and collaborating in hunting or scavenging activities. The shared knowledge of toolmaking and its transmission across generations would have fostered social learning, a key component of cultural evolution.²¹

¹⁷ Leakey, M.D. (1971), *Olduvai Gorge: Excavations in Beds I and II, 1960–1963*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁸ Aiello, L.C. and Wheeler, P. (1995), ‘The Expensive Tissue Hypothesis: The Brain and the Digestive System in Human and Primate Evolution’, *Current Anthropology*, 36(2), pp. 199–221.

¹⁹ Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K., and Chaminade, T. (2008), ‘Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: technology, language and cognition in human evolution’, *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), pp. 1939–1949.

²⁰ Harmand, S., Lewis, J.E., Feibel, C.S., Lepre, C.J., Prat, S., Lenoble, A., Boës, X., Quinn, R.L., Brenet, M., Arroyo, A., Taylor, N., Clément, S., Daver, G., Brugal, J.-P., Leakey, L., Mortlock, R.A., Wright, J.D., Lokorodi, S., Kirwa, C., Kent, D.V. and Roche, H. (2015), ‘3.3-million-year-old stone tools from Lomekwi 3, West Turkana, Kenya’, *Nature*, 521(7552), pp. 310–315.

²¹ Wynn, T. and Coolidge, F.L. (2011), ‘The Implications of Oldowan Cognitive Capabilities for the Evolution of Pleistocene Hominin Lifeways’, *Journal of Human Evolution*, 60(4), pp. 439–448.

With the hands free, hominins could transport tools across distances, enabling more efficient foraging and hunting strategies, and increasing access to diverse food sources, which would have enhanced survival rates. In addition to tool transport, bipedalism also facilitated the carrying of food. In hunter-gatherer societies, carrying gathered or hunted resources back to a central location for consumption or sharing is critical for survival.²² Freeing the hands allowed hominins to carry larger quantities of food, thereby reducing the number of trips required and conserving energy. Carrying infants was another crucial advantage of bipedalism, as it allowed mothers to transport their young while foraging or travelling.²³ This behaviour would have improved the chances of offspring survival by enabling mothers to protect and nurture their infants more effectively. Moreover, it allowed early hominins to maintain mobility while caring for dependent offspring, which may have contributed to the success of bipedal species compared to their quadrupedal ancestors. By freeing the hands, bipedalism also opened the door to other important behavioural changes, such as the development of complex social structures and the use of gestures, which would have played a role in social bonding and cooperation.²⁴ These changes ultimately contributed to greater reproductive success by fostering cooperation and resource sharing within early human groups. By enabling the transport of resources and the care of offspring while remaining mobile, bipedalism fostered cooperation and resource sharing within early human groups. The ability to carry food over long distances back to a central location, such as a camp or shelter, likely encouraged communal consumption and the sharing of resources.²⁵ This form of cooperation, in which individuals contributed food to a shared pool, may have been essential for the survival of early hominins, particularly in environments where food resources were scattered or unpredictable. Sharing food not only ensured that all group members had access to necessary nutrients, but it also strengthened social bonds and reduced competition within the

²² Isaac, G.L. (1978), Food sharing and human evolution: archaeological evidence from the Plio-Pleistocene of East Africa. *Journal of Anthropological Research*, 34(3), pp.311–325.

²³ Falk, D. (2004), Prelinguistic evolution in early hominins: Whence motherese? *Behavioural and Brain Sciences*, 27(4), pp.491–503.

²⁴ Dunbar, R.I.M. (1996), *Grooming, Gossip, and the Evolution of Language*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

²⁵ Isaac, G.L. (1978), 'Food sharing and human evolution: Archaeological evidence from the Plio-Pleistocene of East Africa', *Journal of Anthropological Research*, 34(3), pp. 311–325.

group.²⁶ The shared care of offspring and cooperative breeding practices would have further enhanced reproductive success. Among early hominins, mothers who could carry and protect their infants while gathering food or travelling between foraging sites would have had an advantage in terms of infant survival.²⁷ Moreover, cooperative child-rearing, in which other group members, such as grandparents or siblings, assisted in the care of young, would have further lightened the burden on individual mothers and increased the chances of offspring survival. This social structure, characterized by strong kinship ties and cooperative behaviours, allowed early human groups to thrive and pass on their genes to subsequent generations. Additionally, the freeing of the hands allowed for the development of more sophisticated forms of communication, such as gestures and tool use, which likely played a role in social bonding and the coordination of group activities. The evolution of larger brains in hominins was partly driven by the need to manage increasingly complex social networks.²⁸ As hominins began to live in larger, more cooperative groups, effective communication and social coordination would have been essential for maintaining group cohesion and ensuring the successful sharing of resources. These behaviours—cooperative foraging, shared childcare, and enhanced communication—would have contributed to the reproductive success of early hominins by increasing survival rates and ensuring that individuals within the group supported one another. This, in turn, would have fostered the transmission of successful social behaviours and the development of more complex social structures, which ultimately set the stage for the emergence of modern human societies.

Homo habilis and Homo erectus

Around 2.4 to 1.4 million years ago, *Homo habilis* emerged in Africa, followed by *Homo erectus* approximately 1.9 million years ago. *Homo erectus* was one of the first hominins to migrate out of Africa, reaching as

²⁶ Kaplan, H., Hill, K., Lancaster, J. and Hurtado, A.M. (2000), 'A Theory of Human Life History Evolution: Diet, Intelligence, and Longevity', *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 9(4), pp. 156–185.

²⁷ Hrdy, S.B. (2009), *Mothers and Others: The Evolutionary Origins of Mutual Understanding*. Harvard University Press.

²⁸ Dunbar, R. (1996), *Grooming, Gossip, and the Evolution of Language*. Harvard University Press.

far as Asia and Europe.²⁹ The transition from *Homo habilis* to *Homo erectus* is a significant milestone in human evolution, marked by various anatomical, behavioural, and technological developments. The period between 2.4 and 1.4 million years ago saw the emergence of *Homo habilis* in Africa, which is often considered the first member of the genus *Homo*. *Homo habilis* is characterized by a relatively larger brain size compared to earlier hominids, reduced facial prognathism, and evidence of tool use, specifically Oldowan tools.³⁰ Approximately 1.9 million years ago, *Homo erectus* appeared, representing a substantial evolutionary leap.³¹ *Homo erectus* exhibited several key advancements over its predecessor. One notable change was in cranial morphology; *Homo erectus* had a significantly larger brain capacity, with an average of around 900 cubic centimetres compared to *Homo habilis*'s 500–600 cubic centimetres.³² Moreover, *Homo erectus* is also distinguished by a more modern body plan. This species showed a reduction in the size of the face and teeth and an increase in body size and limb proportions conducive to long-distance bipedal walking and running. This adaptation is thought to be critical for its migration out of Africa and into Asia and Europe.³³ Behaviourally, *Homo erectus* is associated with the Acheulean tool industry, which included more sophisticated bifacial tools such as hand axes and cleavers. This technological advancement reflects increased cognitive capabilities and suggests more complex social structures and subsistence strategies.³⁴ Moreover, the improved efficiency of these tools would have facilitated diverse and complex subsistence strategies, including hunting and processing a variety of food sources, thereby ensuring a more reliable food supply.³⁵ The complexity inherent in these activities implies coordinated

²⁹ Anton, S.C. and Swisher, C.C. (2004), Early dispersals of *Homo* from Africa. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 33, pp.271–296.

³⁰ Lewin, R., & Foley, R. (2004). *Principles of Human Evolution*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing.

³¹ Wood, B. (1992). Origin and Evolution of the Genus *Homo*. *Nature*, 355(6363), 783–790.

³² Tattersall, I. (2000). Paleanthropology: The Last Half-Century. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 9(1), 2–16.

³³ Walker, A., & Leakey, R. (1993). *The Nariokotome Homo erectus Skeleton*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

³⁴ Rightmire, G. P. (1990). *The Evolution of Homo erectus: Comparative Anatomical Studies of an Extinct Human Species*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

³⁵ Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K., and Chaminade, T. (2010). Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: technology, language and cognition in human evolution.

effort, communication, and possibly the emergence of roles within groups—all hallmarks of advanced social structures.³⁶ Furthermore, the ability to create and use such tools efficiently would have allowed *Homo erectus* to exploit a broader range of environments and resources, leading to enhanced survival and adaptation.³⁷ The transition between these species likely involved both gradual changes and selective pressures that favoured certain traits. For instance, climatic fluctuations during this period may have driven adaptations in diet, foraging strategies, and mobility, leading to the more versatile and resilient *Homo erectus*.³⁸ The evolution from *Homo habilis* to *Homo erectus* involved a series of incremental changes driven by environmental pressures and natural selection. These changes resulted in anatomical, cognitive, and behavioural advancements that enabled *Homo erectus* to thrive in diverse environments and pave the way for future hominin development.

HOMO ERECTUS AND EARLY HUMAN EXPANSION (1 MILLION TO 300,000 YEARS AGO)

Out of Africa I

Homo erectus Migration

Homo erectus populations expanded out of Africa and settled in various parts of Asia and Europe. Notable fossil sites include Java in Indonesia and Dmanisi in Georgia, indicating their widespread presence.³⁹ The expansion of *Homo erectus* from Africa and its subsequent settlement across various regions of Asia and Europe represent a significant event in human evolution. Around 1.9 million years ago, *Homo erectus* began to migrate out of Africa, a movement known as the ‘Out of Africa I’ migration. This species adapted to a variety of environmental conditions and utilized its

Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences, 367(1585), 75–85.

³⁶ Shultz, S., Nelson, E., and Dunbar, R. I. M. (2011). Hominin cognitive evolution: Identifying patterns and processes in the fossil and archaeological record. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 366(1567), 3264–3273.

³⁷ Shipton, C. (2010). Imitation and shared intentionality in the Acheulean. *Cambridge Archaeological Journal*, 20(2), 197–210.

³⁸ Potts, R. (1998). Environmental Hypotheses of Hominin Evolution. *Yearbook of Physical Anthropology*, 41, 93–136.

³⁹ Dennell, R. and Roebroeks, W. (2005), An Asian perspective on early human dispersal from Africa. *Nature*, 438(7071), pp.1099–1104.

technological advancements to support a nomadic lifestyle.⁴⁰ The site at Java, notably in places like Sangiran and Trinil, has yielded numerous fossils, including those initially discovered by Eugène Dubois in the 1890s, which provided clear evidence of *Homo erectus*'s wide geographical spread.⁴¹ These fossils exhibited robust skeletal structures with prominent brow ridges and large brain volumes, demonstrating significant evolutionary adaptations. Similarly, the Dmanisi site in Georgia has offered remarkable insights. Discovered in the early 1990s, the fossils found there, dating back to approximately 1.8 million years ago, represent some of the earliest evidence of *Homo erectus* outside Africa.⁴² The Dmanisi fossils are particularly notable for their combination of primitive and advanced traits, including smaller brain sizes akin to earlier hominins and more advanced post-cranial adaptations suitable for long-distance travel. The phrase 'more advanced post-cranial adaptations' refers to the physical characteristics of the body below the head (i.e., the limbs and torso). These adaptations in the Dmanisi fossils suggest improvements that facilitated effective bipedal locomotion and endurance necessary for long-distance travel. These adaptations include features such as a modern-like pelvis, long legs, and certain joint configurations that enhance walking efficiency and running capabilities. For instance, the elongated lower limbs and relatively shorter arms found in *Homo erectus* differ significantly from earlier hominins, such as *Australopithecus*, which had shorter legs and longer arms adapted more for climbing than long-distance walking.⁴³ The structure of the hip and pelvic regions in these fossils indicates a pelvis broader than that of earlier hominids, providing greater stability during bipedal locomotion.⁴⁴ Furthermore, the joint structures, such as the femur and tibia, exhibit adaptations for improved shock absorption and energy transfer during

⁴⁰ Antón, S. C. (2003). Natural history of *Homo erectus*. *Yearbook of Physical Anthropology*, 46, 126–170.

⁴¹ Swisher III, C. C., Rink, W. J., Anton, S. C., Schwarcz, H. P., Curtis, G. H., Suprijo, A., & Widiasmoro. (1994). Latest *Homo erectus* of Java: Potential contemporaneity with *Homo sapiens* in southeast Asia. *Science*, 274(5294), 1870–1874.

⁴² Lordkipanidze, D., Vekua, A., Ferring, R., Rightmire, G. P., Agusti, J., Kiladze, G., ... Tvalchrelidze, M. (2007). A fourth hominin skull from Dmanisi, Georgia. *Nature*, 449(7160), 305–310.

⁴³ Holliday, T. W. (1997). Postcranial evidence of cold adaptation in European Neandertals. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 104(2), 245–258.

⁴⁴ Lordkipanidze, D., Vekua, A., Ferring, R., Rightmire, G. P., Agusti, J., Kiladze, G., ... Tvalchrelidze, M. (2007). A fourth hominin skull from Dmanisi, Georgia. *Nature*, 449(7160), 305–310.

extended walking or running.⁴⁵ These anatomical features collectively signify ‘more advanced post-cranial adaptations’ that are crucial for endurance and efficient locomotion, allowing *Homo erectus* to travel long distances—an essential trait for their migration and survival across varied landscapes.⁴⁶

The successful dispersal of *Homo erectus* across diverse environments implies a combination of anatomical and cultural adaptations. Their ability to utilize Acheulean tools to hunt and process food, control fire, and perhaps develop rudimentary shelters would have facilitated survival in varied climates and landscapes.⁴⁷ These behaviours underscore the flexible and innovative strategies that enabled *Homo erectus* to colonize and thrive in new habitats. The expanded range of *Homo erectus* supports the hypothesis that this species possessed significant behavioural and ecological versatility. Such traits would have been critical in navigating and settling in the diverse ecosystems of Asia and Europe, where their presence has left an indelible mark on the archaeological record.

Archaic Humans

Homo heidelbergensis and Neanderthals

Homo heidelbergensis, emerging around 600,000 years ago, is considered a common ancestor of both Neanderthals and modern humans. They migrated into Europe and evolved into Neanderthals (*Homo neanderthalensis*).⁴⁸ The transition from *Homo erectus* to *Homo heidelbergensis* and subsequently to Neanderthals (*Homo neanderthalensis*) and modern humans (*Homo sapiens*) represents a critical phase in human evolution. *Homo heidelbergensis*, which appeared approximately 600,000

⁴⁵ Pontzer, H. (2012). Ecological energetics in early Homo. *Current Anthropology*, 53(S6), S346–S358.

⁴⁶ Leonard, W. R. & Robertson, M. L. (1997). Comparative primate energetics and hominid evolution. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(2), 265–281.

⁴⁷ Gabunia, L., Vekua, A., Lordkipanidze, D., Swisher III, C. C., Ferring, R., Justus, A., ... Rook, L. (2000). Earliest Pleistocene hominid cranial remains from Dmanisi, Republic of Georgia: taxonomy, geological setting, and age. *Science*, 288(5468), 1019–1025.

⁴⁸ Stringer, C. (2012). The status of *Homo heidelbergensis* (Schoetensack 1908). *Evolutionary Anthropology: Issues, News, and Reviews*, 21(3), pp.101–107.

years ago, is often regarded as a pivotal species bridging the gap between earlier *Homo* species and later hominins.⁴⁹ *Homo heidelbergensis* is believed to have evolved from regional populations of *Homo erectus* in Africa and then migrated into Europe and Asia.⁵⁰ This species exhibited a mix of traits from both its ancestors and its descendants. For example, the cranial capacity of *Homo heidelbergensis* was larger than that of *Homo erectus*, averaging around 1200 cubic centimetres, signalling an increase in brain size.⁵¹ One of the distinguishing features of *Homo heidelbergensis* was its robust skeletal remains, which indicate significant physical strength. These adaptations likely provided an advantage in hunting large game, a critical component of their subsistence strategy.⁵² The archaeological record, including sites like Boxgrove in the UK, shows evidence of sophisticated tools and organized hunting practices, which suggest cognitive complexities and social cooperation.⁵³ As *Homo heidelbergensis* populations migrated into Europe, they encountered a range of climatic conditions, which would have exerted selective pressures leading to regional adaptations. Over time, the European populations of *Homo heidelbergensis* evolved into Neanderthals. These adaptations are evident in the distinct morphological traits of Neanderthals, such as their large nasal cavities, which are interpreted as a response to cold climates.⁵⁴ Meanwhile, another branch of *Homo heidelbergensis*, remaining in Africa, eventually gave rise to *Homo sapiens*. This divergence is thought to have occurred around 300,000 years ago, with *Homo sapiens* exhibiting further advancements in tool technology, art, and complex social structures.⁵⁵ This

⁴⁹ Rightmire, G. P. (1998). Human evolution in the middle Pleistocene: The role of *Homo heidelbergensis*. *Evolutionary Anthropology: Issues, News, and Reviews: Issues, News, and Reviews*, 6(6), 218–227.

⁵⁰ Stringer, C. (2012). The status of *Homo heidelbergensis* (Schoetensack 1908). *Evolutionary Anthropology: Issues, News, and Reviews*, 21(3), 101–107.

⁵¹ Klein, R. G. (2009). *The Human Career: Human Biological and Cultural Origins*. 3rd ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

⁵² Roebroeks, W. (2001). Hominid behaviour and the earliest occupation of Europe: An exploration. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 41(5), 437–461.

⁵³ Roberts, M. B., & Parfitt, S. A. (1994). Boxgrove: A Middle Pleistocene hominid site at Eartham Quarry, Boxgrove, West Sussex. London: English Heritage.

⁵⁴ Hublin, J. J. (2009). The origin of Neandertals. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(38), 16022–16027.

⁵⁵ McDougall, I., Brown, F. H., & Fleagle, J. G. (2005). Stratigraphic placement and age of modern humans from Kibish, Ethiopia. *Nature*, 433(7027), 733–736.

progressive transition involved several factors, including climatic changes, migrations, and technological innovations, which together fostered the evolution of distinct hominin lineages capable of thriving in diverse environments.⁵⁶ The divergence of *Homo heidelbergensis* into *Homo sapiens* approximately 300,000 years ago in Africa represents a crucial juncture in human evolutionary history. This transition was not a simple, linear process but rather a complex progression influenced by multiple interrelated factors. One of the most significant factors was climatic change. The Pleistocene epoch, spanning from about 2.6 million to 11,700 years ago, was characterized by repeated glacial and interglacial cycles. These climatic fluctuations imposed various environmental stresses and created diverse habitats, from arid deserts to lush forests.⁵⁷ Hominins in Africa had to adapt to these changing conditions, which likely played a role in driving evolutionary changes. For instance, fluctuating climates would have influenced the availability of resources, prompting innovations in hunting, gathering, and eventually agriculture. Migrations also played a critical role in this evolutionary process. As hominin populations moved across vast landscapes, they would have encountered new challenges and opportunities. These migrations facilitated gene flow between populations, promoting genetic diversity, which is crucial for adaptation.⁵⁸ Additionally, the movement of hominins across different environments would have necessitated the development of new survival strategies and technological innovations. Technological advancements are another cornerstone of this progressive transition. The archaeological record indicates that *Homo sapiens* developed more sophisticated tools compared to their predecessors. The Middle Stone Age (MSA) in Africa is particularly notable for the emergence of blade technology, heat treatment of stones to create stronger and more durable tools, and the use of composite tools involving hafting.⁵⁹ These innovations improved hunting efficiency and food

⁵⁶Tattersall, I. (2012). *Masters of the Planet: The Search for Our Human Origins*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

⁵⁷Potts, R. (1998). Environmental Hypotheses of Hominin Evolution. *Yearbook of Physical Anthropology*, 41, 93–136.

⁵⁸Stringer, C. (2012). The status of *Homo heidelbergensis* (Schoetensack 1908). *Evolutionary Anthropology: Issues, News, and Reviews*, 21(3), 101–107.

⁵⁹McBrearty, S., & Brooks, A. S. (2000). The revolution that wasn't: a new interpretation of the origin of modern human Behavior. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 39(5), 453–563.

processing, supporting larger and more stable populations. Furthermore, the development of art and complex social structures is evident in the record of *Homo sapiens*. Sites such as Blombos Cave in South Africa have yielded engraved ochre pieces, shell beads, and evidence of symbolic behaviour, suggesting the presence of complex cognitive abilities and possibly sophisticated language skills.⁶⁰ These social developments would have fostered enhanced cooperation, communication, and cultural transmission, crucial for survival and thriving in diverse environments. In sum, the progressive transition from *Homo heidelbergensis* to *Homo sapiens* involved a multifaceted interplay of climatic changes, migrations, and technological and social innovations. These factors collectively fostered the development of distinct hominin lineages capable of adapting to and thriving in various environments.

THE EMERGENCE AND SPREAD OF *HOMO SAPIENS* (300,000 YEARS AGO TO PRESENT)

Out of Africa II

Early Homo sapiens

Modern humans (*Homo sapiens*) first appeared in Africa around 300,000 years ago.⁶¹ Genetic and fossil evidence supports multiple waves of migration out of Africa, with significant expansions occurring around 60,000 to 80,000 years ago.⁶²

⁶⁰ Henshilwood, C. S., d'Errico, F., Yates, R., Jacobs, Z., Tribolo, C., Duller, G. A. T.,... & Sealy, J. C. (2002). Emergence of Modern Human Behavior: Middle Stone Age Engravings from South Africa. *Science*, 295(5558), 1278–1280.

⁶¹ Hublin, J.J., Ben-Ncer, A., Bailey, S.E., Freidline, S.E., Neubauer, S., Skinner, M.M., Bergmann, I., Le Cabec, A., Benazzi, S., Harvati, K. and Gunz, P. (2017), New fossils from Jebel Irhoud, Morocco and the pan-African origin of *Homo sapiens*. *Nature*, 546(7657), pp.289–292.

⁶² Mellars, P., Gori, K.C., Carr, M., Soares, P.A. and Richards, M.B. (2013), Genetic and archaeological perspectives on the initial modern human colonization of southern Asia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 110(26), pp.10699–10704.

Migration Routes and Patterns

Southern Route

One prominent migration route involved moving along the southern coast of Asia, reaching Australia by 50,000 years ago.⁶³ This southern dispersal route is often referred to as the Southern Coastal Route, which followed the coastlines of the Arabian Peninsula, India, Southeast Asia, and the Indonesian archipelago. Fossil and genetic evidence suggests that modern humans first left Africa approximately 60,000 to 80,000 years ago and moved relatively quickly along this southern corridor.⁶⁴ As these populations migrated, they likely utilized coastal resources, including fish and shellfish, which provided a stable food supply as they moved through diverse environments.⁶⁵ Archaeological evidence from sites such as Jwalapuram in southern India shows signs of early human occupation around 74,000 years ago, suggesting that populations were already dispersed across South Asia by this time.⁶⁶ From Southeast Asia, early human populations likely crossed the open waters to reach the Sahul landmass, which included present-day Australia and New Guinea. Genetic evidence supports the theory that modern humans arrived in Australia by 50,000 years ago, as confirmed by archaeological findings at sites like Madjedbebe in northern Australia, where stone tools and other artefacts date back to 65,000 years ago.⁶⁷ These early populations adapted to new ecosystems and likely developed innovative technologies to survive in the varied environments they encountered along their migration route.

⁶³ Clarkson, C., Jacobs, Z., Marwick, B., Fullagar, R., Wallis, L.A., Smith, M., Roberts, R.G., Hayes, E., Lowe, K.M., Carah, X. and Florin, S.A. (2017), Human occupation of northern Australia by 65,000 years ago. *Nature*, 547(7663), pp.306–310.

⁶⁴ Mellars, P., Gori, K.C., Carr, M., Soares, P.A. and Richards, M.B. (2013), Genetic and archaeological perspectives on the initial modern human colonization of southern Asia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 110(26), pp.10699–10704.

⁶⁵ O'Connell, J.F. and Allen, J. (2012), The restaurant at the end of the universe: modelling the colonisation of Sahul. *Australian Archaeology*, (74), pp.5–17.

⁶⁶ Petraglia, M.D., Haslam, M., Fuller, D.Q., Boivin, N. and Clarkson, C. (2007), Out of Africa: new hypotheses and evidence for the dispersal of *Homo sapiens* along the Indian Ocean rim. *Annals of Human Biology*, 34(5), pp.515–526.

⁶⁷ Clarkson, C., Jacobs, Z., Marwick, B., Fullagar, R., Wallis, L.A., Smith, M., Roberts, R.G., Hayes, E., Lowe, K.M., Carah, X. and Florin, S.A. (2017), Human occupation of northern Australia by 65,000 years ago. *Nature*, 547(7663), pp.306–310.

Northern Route

Another migration route involved moving northward into Europe and Asia. *Homo sapiens* encountered and interbred with Neanderthals and Denisovans, leading to genetic admixture⁶⁸ (Bergström et al., 2020). This northern migration occurred around 45,000 to 60,000 years ago, as modern humans expanded from the Levant into Europe and Central Asia. Fossil and genetic evidence suggest that *Homo sapiens* coexisted with Neanderthals in Europe for several thousand years before the Neanderthals became extinct approximately 40,000 years ago.⁶⁹ The genetic legacy of this encounter is still evident today, with approximately 1–4% of the genome of modern non-African populations being derived from Neanderthals.⁷⁰ This interbreeding likely occurred soon after *Homo sapiens* migrated into Eurasia, as genomic evidence shows multiple episodes of contact between these two species. For example, fossils from Oase Cave in Romania, dated to around 40,000 years ago, show high levels of Neanderthal ancestry, suggesting recent interbreeding.⁷¹ Similarly, *Homo sapiens* who migrated eastward into Asia also encountered Denisovans, a distinct group of archaic hominins. Evidence of Denisovan ancestry is found particularly in modern populations from East Asia, Melanesia, and Australasia. Denisovan DNA accounts for up to 5% of the genome in some populations, such as the indigenous peoples of Papua New Guinea.⁷² Fossils from Denisova Cave in Siberia have provided critical insights into this interbreeding event, as well as revealing a hybrid individual with both

⁶⁸ Bergström, A., Stringer, C., Hajdinjak, M., Scerri, E. M. L., & Skoglund, P. (2020). Origins of modern human ancestry. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 21(9), 512–523.

⁶⁹ Higham, T., Douka, K., Wood, R., Ramsey, C.B., Brock, F., Basell, L., Camps, M., Arrizabalaga, A., Baena, J., Barroso-Ruiz, C. and Bergman, C. (2014), The timing and spatiotemporal patterning of Neanderthal disappearance. *Nature*, 512(7514), pp.306–309.

⁷⁰ Green, R.E., Krause, J., Briggs, A.W., Maricic, T., Stenzel, U., Kircher, M., Patterson, N., Li, H., Zhai, W., Fritz, M.H.Y. and Hansen, N.F. (2010), A draft sequence of the Neanderthal genome. *Science*, 328(5979), pp.710–722.

⁷¹ Fu, Q., Posth, C., Hajdinjak, M., Petr, M., Mallick, S., Fernandes, D., Furtwängler, A., Haak, W., Meyer, M., Mittnik, A. and Nickel, B. (2015), The genetic history of Ice Age Europe. *Nature*, 534(7606), pp.200–205.

⁷² Reich, D., Green, R.E., Kircher, M., Krause, J., Patterson, N., Durand, E.Y., Viola, B., Briggs, A.W., Stenzel, U., Johnson, P.L. and Maricic, T. (2011), Genetic history of an archaic hominin group from Denisova Cave in Siberia. *Nature*, 468(7327), pp.1053–1060.

Neanderthal and Denisovan ancestry.⁷³ The admixture between *Homo sapiens* and these archaic hominins not only enriched the genetic diversity of modern humans but also introduced genes that may have conferred adaptive advantages in new environments. For example, the Denisovan-derived EPAS1 gene has been linked to the ability of Tibetan populations to thrive at high altitudes.⁷⁴

POST-ICE AGE HUMAN MIGRATION (12,000 YEARS AGO TO PRESENT)

End of the Last Glacial Maximum

Holocene Migration

The end of the Last Glacial Maximum around 12,000 years ago allowed for significant human migrations and the spread of agriculture. Populations moved into previously glaciated regions in Europe, Asia, and North America.⁷⁵ These were the areas that had been covered by ice sheets during the Last Glacial Maximum (LGM), which peaked around 26,500 years ago. These regions experienced significant changes in landscape, climate, and habitat as the ice sheets retreated around 12,000 years ago during the transition to the current interglacial period.

Europe

During the LGM, much of northern Europe, including the British Isles, Scandinavia, and parts of Germany and Poland, was covered by the Fennoscandian ice sheet.⁷⁶ As the ice retreated, it left behind a transformed landscape suitable for human habitation and agriculture. The retreat of the ice sheets opened vast new areas for human settlement, leading to the

⁷³ Slon, V., Mafessoni, F., Vernot, B., de Filippo, C., Grote, S., Viola, B., Vartanyan, S., Meyer, M., Kelso, J. and Pääbo, S. (2018), The genome of the offspring of a Neanderthal mother and a Denisovan father. *Nature*, 561(7721), pp.113–116.

⁷⁴ Huerta-Sánchez, E., Jin, X., Asan, Bianba, Z., Peter, B.M., Vinckenbosch, N., Liang, Y., Yi, X., He, M., Somel, M. and Ni, P. (2014), Altitude adaptation in Tibetans caused by introgression of Denisovan-like DNA. *Nature*, 512(7513), pp.194–197.

⁷⁵ Pinhasi, R., Fort, J. and Ammerman, A.J. (2005), Tracing the origin and spread of agriculture in Europe. *PLoS Biology*, 3(12), p.e410.

⁷⁶ Ehlers, J., Gibbard, P. L., & Hughes, P. D. (2011). Quaternary Glaciations - Extent and Chronology: A Closer Look. *Developments in Quaternary Science*, Vol. 15. Elsevier.

recolonization of regions such as Britain, which had been largely uninhabitable during the glacial period.⁷⁷

Asia

In Asia, significant glaciation occurred in Siberia and Mongolia, with extensive ice sheets covering large parts of these regions.⁷⁸ The retreat of these ice sheets led to the exposure of fertile lands, which populations from the south began to migrate into. The warming climate also facilitated the development of early agricultural societies in areas like China's Yellow River Valley, which became a cradle of ancient civilization.⁷⁹

North America

In North America, the Laurentide ice sheet covered a vast area, extending from the Canadian Arctic down to the present-day northern United States.⁸⁰ As the ice sheet melted, it exposed the regions of Canada and the northern United States, allowing clovis and other Paleo-Indian cultures to migrate and settle. The retreat also created new ecological niches and river systems conducive to agriculture and settlement.⁸¹ The retreat of these glacial ice sheets transformed the previously glaciated regions by depositing rich, till soils, forming lakes and river systems, and creating new ecosystems. Human populations took advantage of the improved climates and newly available lands to migrate, settle, and eventually develop agriculture, leading to the spread of human civilization into these previously inhospitable areas.

⁷⁷ Roberts, N. (1998). *The Holocene: An Environmental History*. 2nd ed. Blackwell.

⁷⁸ Svendsen, J. I., et al. (2004). Late Quaternary ice sheet history of northern Eurasia. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 23(11–13), 1229–1271.

⁷⁹ Ho, Ping-ti. (1975). *The cradle of the East: An inquiry into the indigenous origins of techniques and ideas of Neolithic and early historic China, 5000–1000 B.C.* University of Chicago Press

⁸⁰ Dyke, A. S., et al. (2002). The Laurentide and Innuitian ice sheets during the Last Glacial Maximum. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 21(1–3), 9–31.

⁸¹ Meltzer, D. J. (2009). *First Peoples in a New World: Colonizing Ice Age America*. University of California Press.

AGRICULTURAL REVOLUTION

Neolithic Expansion

The development of agriculture around 10,000 years ago led to the Neolithic Revolution. Farming communities spread from the Fertile Crescent into Europe, Asia, and Africa, significantly altering human settlement patterns.⁸² This transition from hunter-gatherer lifestyles to settled farming communities allowed for more stable food production and surplus storage, which supported population growth and the development of complex societies.⁸³ One of the earliest centres of agricultural innovation was the Fertile Crescent, a region in the Middle East encompassing parts of modern-day Iraq, Syria, and Turkey, where crops such as wheat, barley, and legumes were first domesticated.⁸⁴ From the Fertile Crescent, farming techniques and crops spread into Europe, Asia, and Africa through a combination of migration and cultural exchange. In Europe, the introduction of agriculture is evidenced by archaeological sites such as Çatalhöyük in present-day Turkey, which dates back to around 7500 BC. As farming expanded across Europe, it dramatically altered human settlement patterns by promoting the establishment of permanent villages and towns, facilitating population growth and the development of social hierarchies.⁸⁵ In Africa, farming spread along the Nile Valley, contributing to the rise of early civilizations such as ancient Egypt. The domestication of crops like sorghum and millet, along with the farming of cattle, played a critical role in shaping the livelihoods of communities in Sub-Saharan Africa.⁸⁶ Similarly, in Asia, agricultural practices spread eastward into the Indus Valley, where crops like barley and wheat were grown, alongside the domestication of cattle. This led to the development of complex societies such as the Harappan Civilization, which is known for its sophisticated urban planning and agricultural infrastructure.⁸⁷ The Neolithic Revolution

⁸² Bellwood, P. (2005), *First Farmers: The Origins of Agricultural Societies*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing.

⁸³ Ibid.

⁸⁴ Zeder, M.A. (2011), The origins of agriculture in the Near East. *Current Anthropology*, 52(S4), pp.S221–S235.

⁸⁵ Price, T.D. (2000), *Europe's First Farmers*. Cambridge: Cambridge University

⁸⁶ Marshall, F. and Hildebrand, E. (2002), Cattle before crops: The beginnings of food production in Africa. *Journal of World Prehistory*, 16(2), pp.99–143.

⁸⁷ Fuller, D.Q. (2006), Agricultural origins and frontiers in South Asia: A working synthesis. *Journal of World Prehistory*, 20(1), pp.1–86.

not only transformed subsistence strategies but also led to significant social and technological advancements, including the development of pottery, metalworking, and more complex social structures.⁸⁸ These changes laid the foundation for the rise of early civilizations across the world.

OCEANIC EXPLORATION AND COLONIZATION

Austronesian Expansion

Starting around 3500 years ago, Austronesian-speaking peoples migrated across the Pacific Ocean, settling islands from Madagascar to Hawaii. This expansion represents one of the most remarkable long-distance maritime migrations in human history.⁸⁹ The Austronesian expansion, beginning around 3500 years ago, is one of the most remarkable instances of human migration, characterized by the movement of Austronesian-speaking peoples across vast stretches of the Pacific Ocean. This migration represents not only a significant feat in navigation and maritime technology but also a profound cultural and genetic dispersal that shaped the demographic landscape of a wide geographic area, including islands ranging from Madagascar to Hawaii. The origins of the Austronesian-speaking peoples are generally traced back to Taiwan, where early Austronesians are thought to have developed advanced seafaring skills and distinctive cultural traits.⁹⁰ As these populations expanded southward, they brought with them sophisticated double-hulled canoes, outrigger boats, and the knowledge of celestial navigation and ocean currents, which enabled them to traverse vast oceanic distances.⁹¹ One notable aspect of the Austronesian migration is its extraordinary reach and speed. By employing their navigational prowess, these early seafarers embarked on voyages that covered thousands of kilometres, establishing settlements on islands across the Pacific. Regions settled by Austronesian-speaking peoples include Micronesia, Melanesia, Polynesia, and eventually parts of Southeast Asia and the Indian

⁸⁸ Diamond, J. (1997), *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. New York: W.W. Norton & Company.

⁸⁹ Kirch, P.V. (2010), *Peopling of the Pacific: A holistic anthropological perspective*. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 39, pp.131–148.

⁹⁰ Bellwood, P. (2005). *First Farmers: The Origins of Agricultural Societies*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing.

⁹¹ Kirch, P. V. (2000). *On the Road of the Winds: An Archaeological History of the Pacific Islands before European Contact*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Ocean, such as Madagascar.⁹² This expansive reach enabled them to develop a cultural and linguistic continuum across these diverse regions. The archaeological and linguistic evidence supports this pattern of migration. Artefacts such as Lapita pottery, found in sites across a wide geographic area, provide tangible links between different Austronesian communities.⁹³ Linguistic studies reveal a shared ancestral language, Austronesian, which diversified into numerous languages spoken across the Pacific and Indian Oceans. This linguistic diversity is a testament to the migratory paths and settlement patterns of these early navigators.⁹⁴ Moreover, genetic studies have offered insights into the human migrations associated with the Austronesian expansion. DNA analysis shows significant genetic linkages between populations in Southeast Asia and the Pacific islands, corroborating the archaeological and linguistic evidence of a common heritage.⁹⁵ However, the evidence supporting the hypothesis that the ancestors of the Polynesians originated from Indonesia and the Philippines is multifaceted, drawing from genetic studies, archaeological findings, and linguistic analysis. Each of these sources of evidence contributes a piece to the complex puzzle of Polynesian ancestry.

Genetic Evidence

Genetic studies have revealed significant connections between contemporary Polynesian populations and those in Island Southeast Asia, particularly Indonesia and the Philippines. Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) and Y-chromosome analyses have shown that Polynesians share specific genetic markers with populations from these regions. For instance, the frequency of certain mtDNA haplogroups is high in both Polynesia and Island Southeast Asia.⁹⁶ This genetic similarity implies a common maternal ancestry and points towards migration routes from Southeast Asia into the Pacific.

⁹² Diamond, J. (2000). *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. New York: W.W. Norton.

⁹³ Kirch, P. V. (1997). *The Lapita Peoples: Ancestors of the Oceanic World*. Oxford: Blackwell.

⁹⁴ Blust, R. (2013). *Austronesian Languages*. Canberra: Asia-Pacific Linguistics.

⁹⁵ Kayser, M., Brauer, S., Weiss, G., Underhill, P., Roewer, L., Schiefenhövel, W., & Stoneking, M. (2006). Melanesian origin of Polynesian Y chromosomes. *Current Biology*, 16(6), R180–R181.

⁹⁶ Kayser, M., Brauer, S., Weiss, G., Underhill, P., Roewer, L., Schiefenhövel, W., & Stoneking, M. (2000). Melanesian origin of Polynesian Y chromosomes. *Current Biology*, 10(20), 1237–1246.

Archaeological Evidence

The archaeological record provides substantial support for the Theory of Austronesian Migration. The Lapita cultural complex, characterized by distinct pottery styles, provides a tangible link between Island Southeast Asia and Polynesia. Lapita pottery, dating from around 1500 BC to 500 BC, has been found in a wide arc from the Philippines and Indonesia to as far east as Samoa and Tonga.⁹⁷ The spread of Lapita culture aligns with the movements of early Austronesian-speaking peoples into the Pacific.

Linguistic Evidence

Linguistic studies have shown that the languages spoken across Polynesia belong to the Austronesian language family, which has its roots in Taiwan and spread through the Philippines and Indonesia before reaching the Pacific. The distribution and diversification of these languages support the migration patterns inferred from genetic and archaeological data. The linguistic similarities between Polynesian languages and those in the Philippines and parts of Indonesia reflect a common origin and progressive west-to-east dispersal.⁹⁸

The convergence of genetic, archaeological, and linguistic evidence suggests that the ancestors of the Polynesians migrated from Indonesia and the Philippines, ultimately spreading across the vast expanse of the Pacific. Moreover, the Austronesian expansion represents a remarkable chapter in human history, characterized by advanced maritime technology, expansive navigation, and broad cultural and genetic influences. These foundational elements facilitated the settlement of one of the widest geographic distributions achieved by pre-modern human societies. However, over the past 2000 years, significant migrations have been driven by various factors, including trade, conquest, and exploration. Notable examples include the Mongol invasions, European colonization, and the transatlantic slave trade.⁹⁹ The nineteenth and twentieth centuries saw unprecedented human migration due to industrialization, wars, and globalization.

⁹⁷Kirch, P. V. (1997). *The Lapita Peoples: Ancestors of the Oceanic World*. Oxford: Blackwell.

⁹⁸Blust, R. (1999). Subgrouping, Circularity and Extinction: Some Issues in Austronesian Comparative Linguistics. *Symposium Series of the Institute of Linguistics*, 3, 31–94.

⁹⁹Manning, P. (2005). *Migration in World History*. London: Routledge.

Large-scale movements included European emigration to the Americas, African diaspora, and more recently, migrations due to economic opportunities and political instability.¹⁰⁰

THEORIES ASSOCIATED WITH HUMAN MIGRATION

Human migration, a fundamental aspect of human history and development, has been driven by a variety of factors and explained through multiple theoretical frameworks. These theories provide insights into the complex motivations and patterns underlying human mobility. To gain an insight into migration theory, it is important to evaluate the key theories associated with human migration.

Push-Pull Theory

The push-pull theory is one of the most widely recognized frameworks for understanding migration. It posits that migration decisions are influenced by factors that push individuals away from their origin and pull them towards their destination.¹⁰¹ Push factors are adverse conditions that drive people away from their home regions. These can include economic hardship, political instability, environmental disasters, and social unrest.¹⁰² For example, economic deprivation and lack of job opportunities in rural areas often push individuals to migrate to urban centres.¹⁰³ Pull factors are favourable conditions that attract individuals to a new location. These can include better economic opportunities, political stability, favourable climate, and social amenities.¹⁰⁴ For example, the availability of jobs and higher wages in developed countries attracts migrants from less developed

¹⁰⁰ Hatton, T.J. and Williamson, J.G. (1998), *The Age of Mass Migration: Causes and Economic Impact*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

¹⁰¹ Lee, E.S. (1966), A theory of migration. *Demography*, 3(1), pp.47–57.

¹⁰² Ravenstein, E.G. (1885), The laws of migration. *Journal of the Statistical Society of London*, 48(2), pp.167–235.

¹⁰³ Todaro, M.P. (1969), A model of labour migration and urban unemployment in less developed countries. *American Economic Review*, 59(1), pp.138–148.

¹⁰⁴ Lee, E.S. (1966), A theory of migration. *Demography*, 3(1), pp.47–57

regions.¹⁰⁵ Critics argue that the push-pull theory oversimplifies the complexity of migration decisions. It does not adequately account for the role of networks, policies, and individual agency.¹⁰⁶

Neoclassical Economic Theory

Neoclassical economic theory views migration because of regional differences in labour supply and demand. Individuals migrate to maximize their income and employment opportunities.¹⁰⁷ At the micro level, migration is seen as an investment in human capital. Individuals decide to migrate after weighing the potential costs and benefits.¹⁰⁸ For example, migrants often move to regions where their skills and labour are in higher demand, leading to better wages and job prospects.¹⁰⁹ At the macro level, migration flows are influenced by wage differentials and employment opportunities between regions or countries.¹¹⁰ For example, labour migration from Mexico to the United States can be explained by wage disparities and job availability.¹¹¹ Neoclassical theory has been criticized for its focus on economic factors, neglecting social, cultural, and institutional influences on migration.¹¹²

¹⁰⁵ Harris, J.R. and Todaro, M.P. (1970), Migration, unemployment and development: A two-sector analysis. *American Economic Review*, 60(1), pp.126–142.

¹⁰⁶ de Haas, H. (2010), The internal dynamics of migration processes: A theoretical inquiry. *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 36(10), pp.1587–1617.

¹⁰⁷ Borjas, G.J. (1989), Economic theory and international migration. *International Migration Review*, 23(3), pp.457–485.

¹⁰⁸ Sjaastad, L.A. (1962), The costs and returns of human migration. *Journal of Political Economy*, 70(5), pp.80–93.

¹⁰⁹ Massey, D.S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993), Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal. *Population and Development Review*, 19(3), pp.431–466.

¹¹⁰ Lewis, W.A. (1954), Economic Development with Unlimited Supplies of Labour. *The Manchester School*, 22(2), pp.139–191.

¹¹¹ Borjas, G.J. (1990), *Friends or Strangers: The Impact of Immigrants on the US Economy*. New York: Basic Books.

¹¹² Massey, D.S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993), Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal. *Population and Development Review*, 19(3), pp.431–466.

New Economics of Labor Migration (NELM)

New Economic Labor Migration challenges the individualistic approach of neoclassical theory, emphasizing the role of households and families in migration decisions.¹¹³ Migration is seen as a household strategy to diversify income sources and reduce risks, rather than merely an individual's quest for higher wages.¹¹⁴ For example, families may send one member abroad to work and remit money back home, thus spreading economic risks.¹¹⁵ Migration helps households to cope with market failures, such as lack of insurance or credit markets, by diversifying income sources.¹¹⁶ Although, while NELM provides a more comprehensive understanding of migration, critics argue that it may still underplay the importance of individual agency and broader structural factors.¹¹⁷

Dual Labor Market Theory

Dual labour market theory posits that migration is driven by structural labour market demands in developed countries. It distinguishes between primary and secondary labour markets.¹¹⁸ The primary market offers stable, well-paying jobs with career prospects, while the secondary market comprises low-wage, unstable jobs that native workers often avoid.¹¹⁹ For example, migrants often fill low-wage, labour-intensive jobs in the secondary market, such as agriculture, construction, and service industries.¹²⁰ Moreover, migration is driven by the demand for labour in the secondary

¹¹³ Stark, O. and Bloom, D.E. (1985), The new economics of labor migration. The American Economic Review, 75(2), pp.173–178.

¹¹⁴ Taylor, J.E. (1999), The new economics of labour migration and the role of remittances in the migration process. International Migration, 37(1), pp.63–88.

¹¹⁵ Stark, O. (1991), The Migration of Labor. Cambridge: Basil Blackwell.

¹¹⁶ Taylor, J.E. (1999), The new economics of labour migration and the role of remittances in the migration process. International Migration, 37(1), pp.63–88.

¹¹⁷ de Haas, H. (2010), The internal dynamics of migration processes: A theoretical inquiry. Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies, 36(10), pp.1587–1617.

¹¹⁸ Piore, M.J. (1979), Birds of Passage: Migrant Labor and Industrial Societies. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

¹¹⁹ Ibid.

¹²⁰ Massey, D.S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993), Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal. Population and Development Review, 19(3), pp.431–466.

market, where native workers are unwilling to work due to poor conditions and low wages.¹²¹ Critics argue that dual labour market theory may overemphasize the role of demand and understate the impact of supply-side factors, such as migrant networks and individual agency.¹²²

World Systems Theory

World systems theory, developed by Immanuel Wallerstein, examines migration within the context of global economic systems and historical patterns of colonialism and capitalism.¹²³ It emphasizes the economic and political relationships between core (developed) and periphery (developing) countries. Migration is seen as a response to the inequalities and disruptions caused by global capitalism.¹²⁴

Example: Migration from former colonies in Africa and Asia to European metropolises can be seen as a legacy of colonial economic structures.¹²⁵ The expansion of global capitalism creates labour demands in core countries and economic disruptions in periphery countries, driving migration flows.¹²⁶ Critics argue that world systems theory may be too deterministic, overlooking the agency of migrants and the role of non-economic factors in migration decisions.¹²⁷

Migration Network Theory

Migration network theory emphasizes the role of social networks and connections in facilitating migration. It posits that established networks

¹²¹ Reich, M., Gordon, D.M. and Edwards, R.C. (1973), A theory of labor market segmentation. *The American Economic Review*, 63(2), pp.359–365.

¹²² Portes, A. (1978), Migration and underdevelopment. *Politics & Society*, 8(1), pp.1–48.

¹²³ Wallerstein, I. (1974), *The Modern World-System I: Capitalist Agriculture and the Origins of the European World-Economy in the Sixteenth Century*. New York: Academic Press.

¹²⁴ *Ibid.*

¹²⁵ Portes, A. and Walton, J. (1981), *Labor, class, and the international system*. New York: Academic Press.

¹²⁶ Massey, D.S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993), Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal. *Population and Development Review*, 19(3), pp.431–466.

¹²⁷ de Haas, H. (2010), The internal dynamics of migration processes: A theoretical inquiry. *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 36(10), pp.1587–1617.

reduce the costs and risks of migration, encouraging further movement.¹²⁸ Migrants rely on networks of family, friends, and community members for information, financial support, and assistance in finding jobs and housing.¹²⁹ For example, Mexican migrants to the United States often rely on established networks for support, leading to chain migration patterns.¹³⁰ Furthermore, migration becomes self-perpetuating as networks grow and the benefits of migration become more widely known.¹³¹ While network theory highlights the importance of social ties, it may underemphasize the role of macro-level structural factors and policies in shaping migration.¹³²

CONTEMPORARY CLIMATE CHANGE AND ECONOMIC MIGRATION

As climate change intensifies environmental stressors such as sea-level rise, extreme weather events, and prolonged droughts, it is increasingly driving migration both within and across national borders. In Asia, for example, rising sea levels and more frequent cyclones are displacing millions in low-lying countries like Bangladesh. The International Organization for Migration (IOM) estimates that by 2050, 17% of the Bangladeshi population could be displaced due to climate-related factors.¹³³ In Africa, severe droughts in the Sahel region are forcing pastoralist communities to move southward in search of water and grazing land, leading to resource conflicts and straining urban infrastructure in countries like Nigeria and Chad.¹³⁴ In South America, prolonged droughts and deforestation in the Amazon Basin are affecting indigenous populations and rural farmers,

¹²⁸ Massey, D.S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993), *Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal*. *Population and Development Review*, 19(3), pp.431–466.

¹²⁹ Boyd, M. (1989), Family and personal networks in international migration: Recent developments and new agendas. *International Migration Review*, 23(3), pp.638–670.

¹³⁰ Massey, D.S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993), *Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal*. *Population and Development Review*, 19(3), pp.431–466.

¹³¹ *Ibid.*

¹³² de Haas, H. (2010), The internal dynamics of migration processes: A theoretical inquiry. *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 36(10), pp.1587–1617.

¹³³ IOM. (2020). Bangladesh: Climate-related displacement and the need for humanitarian response. International Organization for Migration.

¹³⁴ Rigaud, K. K., de Sherbinin, A., Jones, B., Bergmann, J., Clement, V., Ober, K., ... & Midgley, A. (2018). *Groundswell: Preparing for Internal Climate Migration*. World Bank.

pushing them to migrate to urban areas in Brazil and Peru, where they face limited economic opportunities and social integration challenges.¹³⁵

In Sub-Saharan Africa, contemporary climate change is significantly impacting migration patterns, as recurrent droughts, desertification, and shifting rainfall patterns render traditional agricultural practices increasingly unsustainable. The Sahel region, which stretches across countries such as Niger, Chad, and Mali, is one of the most affected areas. Here, rising temperatures and erratic precipitation have led to the degradation of arable land, reducing crop yields and making pastoral livelihoods untenable. For instance, in Niger, where agriculture and livestock rearing form the backbone of the economy, nearly 80% of the population relies on rain-fed agriculture. Prolonged droughts in recent years have resulted in widespread crop failures and livestock deaths, forcing many families to abandon their homes and migrate to urban centres or neighbouring countries in search of food, work, and water.¹³⁶ In addition to internal migration, climate change is also driving cross-border movements. In Burkina Faso, farmers facing severe water scarcity and soil erosion have been migrating to Côte d'Ivoire and Ghana, seeking better opportunities in regions with more stable climates.¹³⁷ This cross-border migration often leads to tension between migrants and host communities over limited resources, exacerbating existing socio-economic and political challenges.¹³⁸

The impact of climate change on migration is also visible in East Africa, particularly in the Horn of Africa, where recurrent droughts have led to severe food insecurity and displacement. For example, in Somalia, the 2011 drought triggered a massive humanitarian crisis, with over thirteen million people affected and thousands forced to flee to refugee camps in Kenya and Ethiopia.¹³⁹ The lack of viable agricultural options and the

¹³⁵ Lima, L. B., Brondizio, E. S., & Moran, E. F. (2020). Environmental Change and Human Migration in the Brazilian Amazon. *Annals of the American Association of Geographers*, 110(3), 711–727.

¹³⁶ Hummel, D. (2015), Climate change, land degradation and migration in Mali and Senegal—Some policy implications. *Migration and Development*, 4(1), pp.81–98.

¹³⁷ Wouterse, F. and Taylor, J.E. (2008), Migration and income diversification: Evidence from Burkina Faso. *World Development*, 36(4), pp.625–640.

¹³⁸ Black, R., Bennett, S.R.G., Thomas, S.M., and Beddington, J.R. (2011), Migration as adaptation. *Nature*, 478(7370), pp.447–449.

¹³⁹ Funk, C. (2012), Exceptional warming in the western Pacific–Indian Ocean warm pool has contributed to more frequent droughts in eastern Africa. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, 93(7), pp.1049–1051.

collapse of traditional pastoralist systems due to recurrent droughts have made long-term displacement a reality for many, contributing to a complex web of internal and cross-border migration. Urban areas in Sub-Saharan Africa are struggling to cope with the influx of migrants fleeing rural regions. Cities like Lagos in Nigeria and Addis Ababa in Ethiopia are experiencing rapid population growth as rural migrants seek employment opportunities. However, these cities often lack the infrastructure and resources to accommodate the growing populations, leading to the proliferation of informal settlements and increased competition for jobs, housing, and social services.¹⁴⁰ This urban migration, while offering temporary relief from rural hardships, often results in a new set of vulnerabilities, as migrants face precarious living conditions and limited access to basic amenities. Overall, climate-induced migration in Sub-Saharan Africa is a multifaceted issue that not only affects individual migrants but also poses broader challenges for regional stability and development. Addressing these challenges requires a comprehensive approach that includes improving agricultural resilience, developing sustainable urban infrastructure, and implementing policies that support both migrants and host communities.

Impact of Climate Change on Migration to Developed Economies

As global temperatures rise, many regions, particularly in developing countries, are experiencing increased environmental degradation. This is leading to forced migration as people seek more stable living conditions. The migration towards developed economies, such as the United States and countries in the European Union, is influenced by several factors:

1. **Sea-Level Rise and Coastal Erosion:** Low-lying regions such as Bangladesh and Pacific island nations are facing severe threats from rising sea levels. As a result, many inhabitants are migrating to countries with more secure environments. For example, Bangladeshis have increasingly sought asylum in Europe.¹⁴¹

¹⁴⁰ Tacoli, C. (2009), Crisis or adaptation? Migration and climate change in a context of high mobility. *Environment and Urbanization*, 21(2), pp.513–525.

¹⁴¹ Black, R., Bennett, S. R., Thomas, S. M., & Beddington, J. R. (2011). Climate change: Migration as adaptation. *Nature*, 478(7370), 447–449.

2. **Extreme Weather Events:** The increasing frequency of hurricanes, cyclones, and other extreme weather events in regions like the Caribbean and Southeast Asia is displacing millions. These events are often followed by surges in migration to the United States and Europe.¹⁴²
3. **Drought and Desertification:** In regions like Sub-Saharan Africa, prolonged droughts and desertification are driving rural populations to seek better living conditions in developed countries. Countries like Italy and Spain have seen a rise in migrants from Africa over the past two decades.¹⁴³

Economic Migration from Developing to Developed Countries

Over the past forty years, economic migration from developing to developed countries has been significant. Initially driven by economic disparity, the pattern of migration has evolved due to globalization and changes in immigration policies.

1. **1970s–1990s:** During this period, migration was primarily driven by economic factors such as employment opportunities in developed countries. The oil crisis and economic downturns in developing nations further accelerated this trend.¹⁴⁴ This period saw significant labour migration from developing nations, particularly in response to the demand for workers in Western Europe, North America, and the Middle East. One of the major drivers of this trend was the economic boom in developed nations, which created labour shortages, especially in sectors such as construction, manufacturing, and service industries.¹⁴⁵ Countries like Germany, France, and the United States actively recruited migrant labour to fill these gaps, offering better wages and working conditions compared to what

¹⁴² McLeman, R. (2014). *Climate and Human Migration: Past Experiences, Future Challenges*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁴³ Cattaneo, C., & Peri, G. (2016). The migration response to increasing temperatures. *Journal of Development Economics*, 122, 127–146.

¹⁴⁴ Hatton, T. J., & Williamson, J. G. (1998). *The Age of Mass Migration: Causes and Economic Impact*. Oxford University Press.

¹⁴⁵ Castles, S. and Miller, M.J. (2009), *The Age of Migration: International Population Movements in the Modern World*. Palgrave Macmillan.

was available in the migrants' home countries. The oil crisis of the 1970s, triggered by the OPEC oil embargo, significantly influenced migration trends by causing economic downturns in developing nations. Many oil-exporting countries in the Middle East experienced a windfall in revenues, which spurred demand for migrant labour to fuel construction booms and infrastructure development.¹⁴⁶ This led to mass migration from South Asia, North Africa, and Southeast Asia to the Gulf States, where migrants were employed in low-skilled jobs with little job security or rights.¹⁴⁷ At the same time, the oil crisis caused recessions in other regions, particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa and Latin America, exacerbating poverty and unemployment. These economic challenges pushed more individuals to migrate in search of better opportunities abroad.¹⁴⁸ In addition, structural adjustment programs (SAPs) imposed by the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and the World Bank on many developing nations during the 1980s and 1990s also contributed to migration flows. The implementation of SAPs often led to cuts in public spending, reduced social services, and increased unemployment, further driving economic migrants towards wealthier nations.¹⁴⁹ These programs disproportionately affected the poor, leading to rising inequality and encouraging migration as individuals sought to escape deteriorating economic conditions.¹⁵⁰ This period also saw increasing migration from former colonies to their colonial metropolises, driven by historical ties and economic opportunities. Migrants from countries like Algeria, India, and the Caribbean moved to France, the United Kingdom, and other European nations in search of work, often filling lower-wage positions in industries such as transportation, healthcare, and public services.¹⁵¹ This

¹⁴⁶Fargues, P. (2006), 'International Migration in the Arab Region: Trends and Policies', United Nations Expert Group Meeting on International Migration and Development in the Arab Region. Beirut, Lebanon.

¹⁴⁷Russell, S.S. (1992), 'Migrant Remittances and Development', *International Migration Review*, 30(3), pp. 267–287.

¹⁴⁸Hatton, T.J. and Williamson, J.G. (2004), *Refugees, Asylum Seekers and Policy in Europe*. University of Chicago Press.

¹⁴⁹Chossudovsky, M. (1997), *The Globalization of Poverty: Impacts of IMF and World Bank Reforms*. Zed Books.

¹⁵⁰Abu-Lughod, J.L. (2007), *Race, Space, and Riots in Chicago, New York, and Los Angeles*. Oxford University Press.

¹⁵¹Castles, S. and Kosack, G. (1973), *Immigrant Workers and Class Structure in Western Europe*. Oxford University Press.

migration was often accompanied by social challenges, as receiving countries struggled to integrate the growing immigrant populations into their economies and welfare systems, leading to debates about immigration policy and the strain on social services.¹⁵² The economic-driven migration of the 1970s to 1990s laid the foundation for contemporary migration patterns. However, as climate change intensifies in the coming decades, it is expected to overlay additional pressures on these established migration trends, further influencing the global movement of people.

2. **2000s–2010s:** Economic migration increased with the expansion of the European Union and more liberal immigration policies in North America. The global financial crisis of 2008 briefly curtailed migration but flows soon resumed as economies recovered.¹⁵³ The enlargement of the EU in 2004 and 2007 allowed millions of migrants from Eastern European countries like Poland, Romania, and Bulgaria to migrate to wealthier Western European nations in search of better employment opportunities.¹⁵⁴ This movement of labour helped mitigate workforce shortages in receiving countries, particularly in low-skilled sectors such as agriculture, construction, and care services, while also contributing to economic growth in these regions.¹⁵⁵ However, the arrival of large numbers of Polish, Bulgarian, Romanian, Albanian, and other European migrants in to the United Kingdom created resentment amongst the white British population as well as putting a strain on public services.

In North America, changes in immigration policies during this period, particularly in Canada and the United States, aimed to attract skilled workers and fill labour market gaps.¹⁵⁶ However, this liberalization coincided with the global financial crisis of 2008, which briefly curtailed migration flows as economies contracted and unemployment rates spiked. During

¹⁵² Martin, P.L., Abella, M. and Kuptsch, C. (2006), *Managing Labor Migration in the Twenty-First Century*. Yale University Press.

¹⁵³ Castles, S., de Haas, H., & Miller, M. J. (2014). *The Age of Migration: International Population Movements in the Modern World*. 5th ed. Palgrave Macmillan.

¹⁵⁴ Favell, A. and Hansen, R. (2002), 'Markets against politics: Migration, EU enlargement and the idea of Europe', *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 28(4), pp. 581–601.

¹⁵⁵ Martin, P. (2009), 'Recession and Migration: A New Era for Labor Migration?', *International Migration Review*, 43(3), pp. 671–691.

¹⁵⁶ Papademetriou, D.G. and Sumption, M. (2011), *Rethinking Points Systems and Employer-Selected Immigration*. Migration Policy Institute.

this period, many host countries saw an increase in anti-immigrant sentiment, leading to stricter immigration controls and enforcement policies.¹⁵⁷ Despite these challenges, migration resumed as economies began to recover in the early 2010s, driven by renewed demand for labour and improved economic conditions.¹⁵⁸

The economic impact of this migration varied across regions. In receiving countries, migrants contributed significantly to economic productivity by filling crucial labour shortages and paying taxes, which supported social welfare systems.¹⁵⁹ However, the influx of migrants also raised concerns about the strain on public services such as healthcare, education, and housing, particularly in countries with already stretched welfare systems such as the United Kingdom.¹⁶⁰ These tensions often fuelled public debates on immigration and influenced political discourse, leading to the rise of anti-immigration movements and changes in migration policy.

3. **2010s–2020s:** In recent years, economic migration has been influenced by both economic factors and climate change. The Syrian refugee crisis, which saw millions fleeing to Europe, highlighted the intersection of conflict, economic desperation, and environmental degradation.¹⁶¹ The Syrian refugee crisis exemplified the interplay between conflict, economic hardship, and environmental degradation. While political instability and violence were the primary triggers of migration, underlying environmental stressors—such as severe droughts in the years leading up to the conflict—exacerbated food and water insecurity, contributing to economic desperation and the displacement of millions of people.¹⁶² This crisis demonstrated how environmental degradation can fuel social and political unrest, forcing vulnerable populations to seek refuge in more stable regions.

¹⁵⁷ Castles, S., de Haas, H., and Miller, M.J. (2014), *The Age of Migration: International Population Movements in the Modern World*. Palgrave Macmillan.

¹⁵⁸ Sumption, M. and Somerville, W. (2010), 'The UK's New Europeans: Progress and Challenges Five Years after Accession', *Migration Policy Institute*, 3(2), pp. 37–50.

¹⁵⁹ Dustmann, C. and Frattini, T. (2014), 'The Fiscal Effects of Immigration to the UK', *The Economic Journal*, 124(580), pp. F593–F643.

¹⁶⁰ Favell, A. and Hansen, R. (2002), 'Markets against politics: Migration, EU enlargement and the idea of Europe', *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 28(4), pp. 581–601.

¹⁶¹ Betts, A., & Collier, P. (2017). *Refuge: Transforming a Broken Refugee System*. Penguin Books.

¹⁶² Gleick, P.H. (2014), 'Water, Drought, Climate Change, and Conflict in Syria', *Weather, Climate, and Society*, 6(3), pp. 331–340.

The mass influx of Syrian refugees into Europe exposed significant challenges for host countries' economies and welfare systems. European countries, particularly Germany, Greece, and Turkey, saw substantial increases in their refugee populations, which put immediate pressure on social services, healthcare, housing, and education systems.¹⁶³ While refugees can contribute to the labour market in the long term, in the short term, governments were required to allocate significant resources to support asylum seekers, often leading to public debates over immigration policy and social cohesion.¹⁶⁴ The uneven distribution of refugees across EU member states also led to tensions within the European Union, as some countries bore a disproportionate burden of the responsibility, creating strains on public resources and welfare systems.¹⁶⁵ In parallel, climate change is expected to further exacerbate migration in the coming decades, as rising sea levels, extreme weather events, and deteriorating agricultural conditions displace populations in vulnerable regions such as Sub-Saharan Africa, South Asia, and Central America.¹⁶⁶ These environmental factors often intersect with economic drivers, as people flee not only climate impacts but also the resultant economic instability, food insecurity, and livelihood loss. Migrants from these regions are likely to seek opportunities in wealthier nations, further intensifying migration flows to Europe and North America. The impact of climate-induced migration on economies and welfare systems will be significant. In destination countries, there may be both positive and negative economic effects. Migrants can help fill labour shortages, particularly in aging societies, contributing to economic productivity and growth.¹⁶⁷ However, without effective integration policies, large-scale migration could strain public services and create competition for jobs and housing, particularly in low-income communities.¹⁶⁸ This could exacerbate inequality and fuel anti-immigrant sentiment, potentially leading to

¹⁶³ Betts, A. and Collier, P. (2017), *Refuge: Transforming a Broken Refugee System*. Penguin.

¹⁶⁴ Castles, S., de Haas, H., and Miller, M.J. (2014), *The Age of Migration: International Population Movements in the Modern World*. Palgrave Macmillan.

¹⁶⁵ Geddes, A. (2015), *Migration and the Welfare State in Europe*. Routledge.

¹⁶⁶ McLeman, R.A. (2014), *Climate and Human Migration: Past Experiences, Future Challenges*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁶⁷ Dustmann, C. and Frattini, T. (2014), 'The Fiscal Effects of Immigration to the UK', *The Economic Journal*, 124(580), pp. F593–F643.

¹⁶⁸ Favell, A. and Hansen, R. (2002), 'Markets against politics: Migration, EU enlargement and the idea of Europe', *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 28(4), pp. 581–601.

political instability and policy shifts towards more restrictive immigration laws.¹⁶⁹ Furthermore, as climate-induced migration continues to grow, there is a risk that wealthier nations will increasingly turn to border controls and deterrence strategies, which could lead to humanitarian crises as displaced populations are left stranded in unstable regions.¹⁷⁰

Forecast for the Next Forty Years

Climate change is expected to significantly influence migration patterns in the coming decades. According to the World Bank, up to 143 million people could be internally displaced within their countries by 2050 due to climate change as rising sea levels, droughts, and other environmental pressures render certain regions uninhabitable.¹⁷¹ This internal displacement will likely spill over into international migration, particularly towards developed economies. The impact of increased mass migration due to climate change on economies and welfare systems will be profound, especially in developed nations that are expected to receive a significant portion of climate migrants. For instance, developed countries may experience economic benefits from an influx of migrants, as they could help address labour shortages, particularly in aging societies where the working-age population is shrinking.¹⁷² Migrants, especially those who are younger, can contribute to the labour force, increasing productivity and helping to sustain industries that are facing workforce gaps. However, the economic benefits of migration will be contingent on the ability of these economies to integrate migrants successfully into the labour market.¹⁷³ On the other hand, mass migration could strain welfare systems, particularly in regions that are already facing fiscal pressures. The provision of social services, including healthcare, housing, and education, will likely be challenged by

¹⁶⁹ Castles, S. (2003), 'Towards a Sociology of Forced Migration and Social Transformation', *Sociology*, 37(1), pp. 13–34.

¹⁷⁰ Betts, A. (2010), 'Survival Migration: A New Protection Framework', *Global Governance*, 16(3), pp. 361–382.

¹⁷¹ Rigaud, K. K., de Sherbinin, A., Jones, B., Bergmann, J., Clement, V., Ober, K., ... & Midgley, A. (2018). *Groundswell: Preparing for Internal Climate Migration*. World Bank.

¹⁷² Goldin, I., Cameron, G. and Balarajan, M. (2011), *Exceptional People: How Migration Shaped Our World and Will Define Our Future*. Princeton University Press.

¹⁷³ Clemens, M.A. and Postel, H.M. (2018), 'Deterring Emigration with Foreign Aid: An Overview of Evidence from Low- Income Countries', *Population and Development Review*, 44(4), pp. 657–687.

the sudden increase in population due to migration.¹⁷⁴ Additionally, climate-induced migration could exacerbate social tensions and create political challenges, as host countries may struggle to balance the needs of migrants with those of their native populations. In regions with strong welfare states, the redistribution of resources may become contentious, leading to debates about immigration policy and the sustainability of social safety nets.¹⁷⁵ Indeed, for some countries, the migrant influx may lead political realignments which could bring the far right to power. This has already happened in some European countries and such radical political change may be on the cards for the United States and Great Britain.

In developing countries that are more vulnerable to the effects of climate change, migration will likely exacerbate existing economic challenges. The loss of labour, as people are forced to leave affected regions, may reduce agricultural productivity and hinder economic growth, particularly in regions where subsistence farming is prevalent.¹⁷⁶ The departure of working-age individuals could also lead to a reduction in local tax bases, further undermining public services and infrastructure in already fragile states¹⁷⁷ (Barnett and Adger, 2007). Thus, while migration due to climate change may offer economic opportunities, it will also present significant challenges for both sending and receiving countries. Effective policies that promote integration, equitable resource distribution, and climate resilience will be essential to managing the impact of climate-induced migration in the coming decades.

Increased Migration from Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia

As these regions are particularly vulnerable to climate impacts, migration flows to Europe and North America are expected to increase. Urbanization and environmental degradation will further push people towards

¹⁷⁴ Martin, P.L., Abella, M. and Kuptsch, C. (2014), *Managing Labor Migration in the Twenty-First Century*. Yale University Press.

¹⁷⁵ Hatton, T.J. and Williamson, J.G. (2011), *Global Migration and the World Economy: Two Centuries of Policy and Performance*. MIT Press.

¹⁷⁶ Black, R., Adger, W.N., Arnell, N.W., Dercon, S., Geddes, A. and Thomas, D. (2011), 'The effect of environmental change on human migration', *Global Environmental Change*, 21(S1), pp. S3–S11.

¹⁷⁷ Barnett, J. and Adger, W.N. (2007), 'Climate change, human security and violent conflict', *Political Geography*, 26(6), pp. 639–655.

migration.¹⁷⁸ Increased migration from Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia is expected to rise significantly over the next forty years due to the acute vulnerability of these regions to climate change impacts. Climate-induced factors such as rising sea levels, prolonged droughts, and extreme weather events are likely to displace millions of people, pushing them towards migration to more stable regions such as Europe and North America.¹⁷⁹ For example, the Sahel region in Sub-Saharan Africa has already experienced severe environmental degradation and exacerbated food and water insecurity, leading to significant internal and cross-border migration.¹⁸⁰ As agricultural productivity declines in regions heavily dependent on subsistence farming, people will be forced to move to urban areas or emigrate in search of better livelihoods. The economic consequences of this migration will be profound for both the source and destination countries. In source countries, the departure of working-age individuals may reduce the available labour force, weakening local economies and further contributing to poverty and underdevelopment.¹⁸¹ At the same time, the loss of human capital—often referred to as ‘brain drain’—may hinder economic growth, particularly in sectors like healthcare and education, where skilled workers are already in short supply.¹⁸²

Urbanization, fuelled by both environmental degradation and economic hardship, will further exacerbate migration pressures. As cities in Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia struggle to accommodate rapidly growing populations, they may become unsustainable, driving people to seek better opportunities abroad in developed economies.¹⁸³ This urban displacement will likely spill over into international migration, increasing the flow of people to more developed regions, where environmental

¹⁷⁸ Collier, P. (2013). *Exodus: How Migration is Changing Our World*. Oxford University Press.

¹⁷⁹ McLeman, R.A. (2014), *Climate and Human Migration: Past Experiences, Future Challenges*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁸⁰ Black, R., Adger, W.N., Arnell, N.W., Dercon, S., Geddes, A. and Thomas, D. (2011), ‘The effect of environmental change on human migration’, *Global Environmental Change*, 21(S1), pp. S3–S11.

¹⁸¹ Hatton, T.J. and Williamson, J.G. (2011), *Global Migration and the World Economy: Two Centuries of Policy and Performance*. MIT Press.

¹⁸² Goldin, I., Cameron, G. and Balarajan, M. (2011), *Exceptional People: How Migration Shaped Our World and Will Define Our Future*. Princeton University Press.

¹⁸³ Betts, A. (2010), ‘Survival Migration: A New Protection Framework’, *Global Governance*, 16(3), pp. 361–382.

stability and economic opportunities are more abundant. Addressing these migration flows will require coordinated global policy responses that consider both the humanitarian needs of migrants and the economic and social sustainability of host countries.

Shift in Migration Policies

Developed economies may tighten immigration policies to manage the influx of migrants, potentially leading to more irregular migration and humanitarian crises. In response to increased mass migration driven by climate change, developed economies may tighten their immigration policies to manage the rising influx of migrants. This is particularly likely as many countries, already grappling with economic and social pressures, might fear that an influx of climate migrants will further strain their resources, particularly their welfare systems.¹⁸⁴ As a result, more restrictive immigration policies could be enacted, including stringent border controls, reduced refugee quotas, and stricter asylum procedures. These policy shifts could, however, have several unintended consequences, including the rise of irregular migration, as migrants increasingly seek alternative, often dangerous, routes into countries with stronger economies and stable environments.¹⁸⁵ For example, through the jungles of Central America to the US–Mexico border or across the English Channel from France to Great Britain in small boats.

Irregular migration, which refers to migration that occurs outside legal channels, can pose significant challenges for both migrants and host countries. Migrants who are forced into irregular pathways often face exploitation and human rights abuses, including trafficking and unsafe working conditions.¹⁸⁶ Moreover, these migrants may lack access to healthcare, housing, and social services, which not only undermines their welfare but also places additional pressure on public services in host countries. For instance, the inability to regulate irregular migration effectively can overwhelm healthcare systems, as migrants often arrive with untreated medical conditions that may require urgent

¹⁸⁴ Hatton, T.J. and Williamson, J.G. (2011), *Global Migration and the World Economy: Two Centuries of Policy and Performance*. MIT Press.

¹⁸⁵ Betts, A. (2010), 'Survival Migration: A New Protection Framework', *Global Governance*, 16(3), pp. 361–382.

¹⁸⁶ FitzGerald, D.S. (2019), *Refuge Beyond Reach: How Rich Democracies Repel Asylum Seekers*. Oxford University Press.

care.¹⁸⁷ Furthermore, irregular migration can increase informal labour markets, leading to wage suppression and economic inequalities within host economies.¹⁸⁸ Additionally, more restrictive migration policies in developed economies may exacerbate humanitarian crises, as climate-induced migration is projected to increase in the coming decades. When legal pathways to migration are blocked, displaced populations may find themselves stranded in unstable regions, contributing to overcrowded refugee camps and border crises.¹⁸⁹ The inability to adequately address these humanitarian issues could lead to political instability and increased pressure on international aid organizations, further complicating global governance and international relations.¹⁹⁰ Therefore, while tightening immigration policies may initially seem like a solution to manage migration, it could ultimately lead to long-term economic, social, and political challenges for both developed and developing nations.

Economic Impact on Developed Economies

The integration of large numbers of migrants could have mixed economic effects, potentially leading to labour market shifts, changes in social services demand, and political tensions.¹⁹¹ The integration of large numbers of migrants can have varied economic effects on host countries. Economically, an influx of migrants can lead to shifts in the labour market, as migrants often fill both high- and low-skilled job vacancies that may not be met by the native workforce. For example, in Germany, the arrival of over one million refugees between 2015 and 2016 led to increased labour market participation in sectors with shortages, such as construction and healthcare.¹⁹² However, these labour market shifts can sometimes result in

¹⁸⁷ Carens, J.H. (2013), *The Ethics of Immigration*. Oxford University Press.

¹⁸⁸ Hollifield, J.F. (2004), 'The Emerging Migration State', *International Migration Review*, 38(3), pp. 885–912.

¹⁸⁹ McLeman, R. A. (2014). *Climate and Human Migration: Past Experiences, Future Challenges*. Cambridge University Press.

¹⁹⁰ Geddes, A. (2015). Migration and the Global Politics of Climate Change. *Global Environmental Politics*, 15(3), 157–178.

¹⁹¹ Peri, G. (2016). Immigrants, productivity, and labor markets. *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 30(4), 3–30.

¹⁹² Brücker, H., Rother, N., & Schupp, J. (2019). *IAB-BAMF-SOEP Survey of Refugees: Overview and First Results*. Institute for Employment Research.

wage depression in certain low-skilled sectors, as evidenced by research in the United States, where an increase in low-skilled immigration was associated with a modest decline in wages for native low-skilled workers.¹⁹³ In addition to labour market impacts, the arrival of large numbers of migrants can strain social services. In countries like Sweden and Italy, rapid increases in migrant populations have placed pressure on healthcare, education, and housing systems, sometimes leading to reduced service quality and longer wait times.¹⁹⁴ For example, the increased demand for social housing in Sweden has led to longer queues and a shortage of affordable housing options, particularly in urban areas.¹⁹⁵ Politically, the integration of large migrant populations can also generate tensions within host societies. Research indicates that a rapid increase in immigration can lead to a rise in anti-immigrant sentiment and support for populist parties. In the United Kingdom, for example, concerns over immigration were a significant factor in the 2016 Brexit referendum, where the Leave campaign capitalized on fears regarding the economic and cultural impact of high migration levels.¹⁹⁶ The Leave campaign effectively mobilized public anxiety around immigration by emphasizing the perceived economic and cultural threats posed by high levels of migration. Research shows that the UK experienced a significant increase in net migration following the 2004 enlargement of the European Union, which allowed citizens of eight Eastern European countries to live and work in the UK. By 2015, net migration to the UK had reached 333,000, with more than half of these migrants coming from the EU.¹⁹⁷ Economically, many Leave campaigners argued that high levels of immigration were placing downward pressure on wages, particularly for low-skilled native workers, and increasing competition for

¹⁹³ Borjas, G. J. (2003). The labor demand curve is downward sloping: Reexamining the impact of immigration on the labor market. *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, 118(4), 1335–1374.

¹⁹⁴ Dustmann, C., & Frattini, T. (2014). The fiscal effects of immigration to the UK. *Economic Journal*, 124(580), F593–F643.

¹⁹⁵ Lundborg, P. (2013). Refugees' employment integration in Sweden: Cultural distance and labor market performance. *Review of International Economics*, 21(2), 219–232.

¹⁹⁶ Goodwin, M., & Milazzo, C. (2017). Taking back control? Investigating the role of immigration in the 2016 vote for Brexit. *British Journal of Politics and International Relations*, 19(3), 450–464.

¹⁹⁷ Office for National Statistics. (2016). *Migration Statistics Quarterly Report: August 2016*. Office for National Statistics.

jobs and public services. Although empirical studies present mixed results, some research suggests that low-skilled immigration may have had a slight negative impact on wages for low-skilled workers. For example, a study found that a 1% increase in the ratio of migrants to native workers led to a 0.2% decrease in wages for workers in the lower quartile of the income distribution.¹⁹⁸ However, other studies argue that the overall impact of EU immigration on wages and employment was minimal, and any negative effects were concentrated in specific sectors and regions.¹⁹⁹ Culturally, the Leave campaign framed immigration as a challenge to British identity and social cohesion, with slogans like ‘Take Back Control’ resonating strongly with voters who felt alienated by the pace of demographic change. Survey data from the British Election Study shows that areas with rapid increases in immigration, particularly those with little prior experience of ethnic diversity, exhibited stronger support for Brexit.²⁰⁰ This sentiment was particularly pronounced in regions like the East Midlands and the North of England, where economic stagnation and limited integration of migrant communities heightened fears of cultural displacement.

Overall, while the economic arguments for Brexit were complex and often contested, the cultural arguments resonated strongly with many voters, contributing to the 51.9% vote in favour of leaving the EU. The referendum result highlighted the deep divisions within the UK regarding immigration and underscored the importance of addressing both the economic and social dimensions of migration policy. This trend is not unique to the UK; similar dynamics have been observed in countries across Europe and North America, where migration has become a polarizing political issue.²⁰¹ Overall, while migrants can contribute positively to economic growth and fill critical labour gaps, their integration requires careful management to avoid negative consequences, including labour market imbalances, overburdened social services, and political instability.

¹⁹⁸ Dustmann, C., Frattini, T., & Preston, I. (2013). The effect of immigration along the distribution of wages. *Review of Economic Studies*, 80(1), 145–173.

¹⁹⁹ Portes, J. (2016). Immigration, free movement and the EU referendum. *National Institute Economic Review*, 236(1), 14–22.

²⁰⁰ Goodwin, M., & Heath, O. (2016). The 2016 referendum, Brexit and the left behind: An aggregate-level analysis of the result. *The Political Quarterly*, 87(3), 323–332.

²⁰¹ Golder, M. (2016). Far right parties in Europe. *Annual Review of Political Science*, 19, 477–497.

CONCLUSION

Migration has been an enduring feature of human history, shaping civilizations, economies, and the development of societies over millennia. From the early movements of Homo species out of Africa to the complex patterns of global migration in modern times, migration has played a critical role in human adaptation and survival. The chapter illustrates how migration, driven by a myriad of factors, including environmental, economic, and political pressures, has not only facilitated the spread of humans across the globe but also influenced technological innovation, social structures, and cultural evolution.

As discussed in the chapter, the early migrations of species like Homo erectus and Homo sapiens allowed humans to adapt to new environments through the development of tools, social cooperation, and resource management strategies. The expansion of humans into new territories, as evidenced by the migration patterns from Africa to Europe, Asia, and eventually the Americas and Oceania, underscores the importance of migration in fostering human resilience in the face of changing climatic and environmental conditions.^{202,203} The cognitive and social advancements associated with these early migrations set the stage for more complex forms of human organization, including the rise of agriculture and settled communities.²⁰⁴

The chapter also highlights the significance of migration in the formation of modern states and economies. The Neolithic Revolution, marked by the spread of agriculture from the Fertile Crescent to other parts of the world, catalysed significant shifts in human settlement patterns, allowing for the development of more complex societies and trade networks. These patterns of migration continued into the age of exploration and colonialism, which saw the movement of peoples and goods across vast distances, reshaping the demographic and economic landscapes of entire continents.²⁰⁵ In the contemporary world, migration is increasingly influenced

²⁰² Gamble, C. (1993), *Timewalkers: The Prehistory of Global Colonization*. Harvard University Press.

²⁰³ Antón, S. C., & Swisher, C. C. (2004), 'Early dispersals of Homo from Africa.' *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 33, pp. 271–296.

²⁰⁴ Bellwood, P. (2005), *First Farmers: The Origins of Agricultural Societies*. Blackwell Publishing.

²⁰⁵ Diamond, J. (1997), *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. New York: W.W. Norton & Company.

by the impacts of climate change. As global temperatures rise, more people are forced to leave their homes due to extreme weather events, sea-level rise, and environmental degradation. The chapter emphasizes how climate-induced migration, such as the displacement of populations in low-lying countries like Bangladesh and the Pacific islands, as well as regions like Sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia, will likely intensify in the coming decades.²⁰⁶ These migrations will have profound implications for global economies, particularly in developed nations that are expected to receive large numbers of climate migrants. While migration can offer economic benefits by filling labour shortages in aging societies, it also poses challenges to social welfare systems and infrastructure, potentially exacerbating social tensions.^{207,208} Furthermore, the chapter explores the intersection of economic migration with political and social dynamics, as seen in the European migration crisis of the 2010s. The Syrian refugee crisis, which was exacerbated by environmental stressors such as prolonged drought, demonstrated the interconnectedness of conflict, environmental degradation, and migration. The influx of refugees into Europe posed significant challenges to the welfare systems of host countries, while also triggering political debates on immigration and social integration.^{209,210} As developed economies grapple with these challenges, effective policy responses will be crucial in managing the complex and multifaceted impacts of migration in the twenty-first century.

In conclusion, migration remains a central aspect of human civilization, reflecting our species' ability to adapt to changing circumstances. As we face the twin challenges of climate change and political instability, understanding the historical and contemporary dynamics of migration will be essential for developing policies that promote global stability, economic resilience, and social cohesion. The ability to manage migration in a way

²⁰⁶ McLeman, R.A. (2014), *Climate and Human Migration: Past Experiences, Future Challenges*. Cambridge University Press.

²⁰⁷ Castles, S., de Haas, H., and Miller, M.J. (2014), *The Age of Migration: International Population Movements in the Modern World*. Palgrave Macmillan.

²⁰⁸ Dustmann, C., & Frattini, T. (2014), 'The fiscal effects of immigration to the UK.' *Economic Journal*, 124(580), pp. F593–F643.

²⁰⁹ Gleick, P.H. (2014), 'Water, Drought, Climate Change, and Conflict in Syria.' *Weather, Climate, and Society*, 6(3), pp. 331–340.

²¹⁰ Betts, A. and Collier, P. (2017), *Refuge: Transforming a Broken Refugee System*. Penguin Books.

that benefits both migrants and host communities will be critical to ensuring that future migration contributes to human development, rather than exacerbating existing inequalities and conflicts.

REFERENCES

- Abu-Lughod, J. L. (2007). *Race, space, and riots in Chicago, New York, and Los Angeles*. Oxford University Press.
- Aiello, L. C., & Wheeler, P. (1995). The expensive tissue hypothesis: The brain and the digestive system in human and primate evolution. *Current Anthropology*, 36(2), 199–221.
- Antón, S. C. (2003). Natural history of *Homo erectus*. *Yearbook of Physical Anthropology*, 46, 126–170.
- Anton, S. C., & Swisher, C. C. (2004). Early dispersals of *Homo* from Africa. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 33, 271–296.
- Barnett, J., & Adger, W. N. (2007). Climate change, human security and violent conflict. *Political Geography*, 26(6), 639–655.
- Bellwood, P. (2005). *First farmers: The origins of agricultural societies*. Blackwell Publishing.
- Bergmann, J. (2019). Climate change, migration, and the crisis in the Sahel. *European Union Institute for Security Studies (EUISS)*, 5, 1–4.
- Bergström, A., Frantz, L., Schmidt, R., Ersmark, E., Lebrasseur, O., Girdland-Flink, L., Lin, A. T., Storå, J., Sjögren, K.-G., Anthony, D., Antipina, E., Amiri, S., Bar-Oz, G., Vladimir I, B., Bulatović, J., Brown, D., Carmagnini, A., Davy, T., Fedorov, S., et al. (2020a). Origins and genetic legacy of prehistoric dogs. *Science*, 370(6516), 557–564.
- Bergström, A., Stringer, C., Hajdinjak, M., Scerri, E. M. L., & Skoglund, P. (2020b). Origins of modern human ancestry. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 21(9), 512–523.
- Betts, A. (2010). Survival migration: A new protection framework. *Global Governance*, 16(3), 361–382.
- Betts, A., & Collier, P. (2017). *Refuge: Transforming a broken refugee system*. Penguin Books.
- Black, R., Bennett, S. R., Thomas, S. M., & Beddington, J. R. (2011). Climate change: Migration as adaptation. *Nature*, 478(7370), 447–449.
- Blust, R. (1999). Subgrouping, circularity and extinction: Some issues in Austronesian comparative linguistics. *Symposium Series of the Institute of Linguistics*, 3, 31–94.
- Borjas, G. J. (1989). Economic theory and international migration. *International Migration Review*, 23(3), 457–485.

- Borjas, G. J. (2003). The labour demand curve is downward sloping: Re-examining the impact of immigration on the labour market. *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, 118(4), 1335–1374.
- Boyd, M. (1989). Family and personal networks in international migration: Recent developments and new agendas. *International Migration Review*, 23(3), 638–670.
- Brücker, H., Rother, N., & Schupp, J. (2019). *IAB-BAMF-SOEP survey of refugees: Overview and first results*. Institute for Employment Research.
- Carens, J. H. (2013). *The ethics of immigration*. Oxford University Press.
- Castles, S. (2003). Towards a sociology of forced migration and social transformation. *Sociology*, 37(1), 13–34.
- Castles, S., de Haas, H., & Miller, M. J. (2014). *The age of migration: International population movements in the modern world* (5th ed.). Palgrave Macmillan.
- Castles, S., & Kosack, G. (1973). *Immigrant workers and class structure in Western Europe*. Oxford University Press.
- Castles, S., & Miller, M. J. (2009). *The age of migration: International population movements in the modern world*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Cattaneo, C., & Peri, G. (2016). The migration response to increasing temperatures. *Journal of Development Economics*, 122, 127–146.
- Chossudovsky, M. (1997). *The globalization of poverty: Impacts of IMF and World Bank Reforms*. Zed Books.
- Clarkson, C., et al. (2017). Human occupation of northern Australia by 65,000 years ago. *Nature*, 547(7663), 306–310.
- Clemens, M. A., & Postel, H. M. (2018). Deterring emigration with Foreign Aid: An overview of evidence from low-income countries. *Population and Development Review*, 44(4), 657–687.
- Collier, P. (2013). *Exodus: How migration is changing our world*. Oxford University Press.
- de Haas, H. (2010). The internal dynamics of migration processes: A theoretical inquiry. *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 36(10), 1587–1617.
- de la Torre, I. (2011). The early stone age lithic assemblages of Gadeb (Ethiopia) and the developed Oldowan/early Acheulean in East Africa. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 60(6), 768–812.
- Dennell, R. W., & Roebroeks, W. (2005). An Asian perspective on early human dispersal from Africa. *Nature*, 438(7071), 1099–1104.
- Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, germs, and steel: The fates of human societies*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- Dunbar, R. I. M. (1996). *Grooming, gossip, and the evolution of language*. Harvard University Press.
- Dustmann, C., & Frattini, T. (2014). The fiscal effects of immigration to the UK. *Economic Journal*, 124(580), F593–F643.

- Dyke, A. S., Andrews, J. T., Clark, P. U., England, J. H., Miller, G. H., Shaw, J., & Veillette, J. J. (2002). The Laurentide and Innuitian ice sheets during the Last Glacial Maximum. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 21(1–3), 9–31.
- Ehlers, J., Gibbard, P. L., & Hughes, P. D. (2011). Quaternary glaciations. In *Extent and chronology: A closer look* (Developments in Quaternary Science) (Vol. 15). Elsevier.
- Falk, D. (2004). Prelinguistic evolution in early hominins: Whence motherese? *Behavioral and Brain Sciences*, 27(4), 491–503.
- Fargues, P. (2006). International migration in the Arab region: Trends and Policies, United Nations Expert Group Meeting on International Migration and Development in the Arab Region. Beirut, Lebanon.
- Favell, A. (2008). *Eurostars and Eurocities: Free movement and mobility in an integrating Europe*. Blackwell Publishing.
- Favell, A., & Hansen, R. (2002). Markets against politics: Migration, EU enlargement and the idea of Europe. *Journal of Ethnic and Migration Studies*, 28(4), 581–601.
- FitzGerald, D. S. (2019). *Refuge beyond reach: How rich democracies Repel Asylum Seekers*. Oxford University Press.
- Fu, Q., Posth, C., Hajdinjak, M., Petr, M., Mallick, S., Fernandes, D., Furtwängler, A., Haak, W., Meyer, M., Mittnik, A., & Nickel, B. (2015). The genetic history of Ice Age Europe. *Nature*, 534(7606), 200–205.
- Fuller, D. Q. (2006). Agricultural origins and frontiers in South Asia: A working synthesis. *Journal of World Prehistory*, 20(1), 1–86.
- Funk, C. (2012). Exceptional warming in the western Pacific–Indian Ocean warm pool has contributed to more frequent droughts in eastern Africa. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, 93(7), 1049–1051.
- Gabunia, L., Vekua, A., Lordkipanidze, D., Swisher, C. C., III, Ferring, R., Justus, A., et al. (2000). Earliest Pleistocene hominid cranial remains from Dmanisi, Republic of Georgia: Taxonomy, geological setting, and age. *Science*, 288(5468), 1019–1025.
- Gamble, C. (1993). *Timewalkers: The prehistory of global colonization*. Harvard University Press.
- Geddes, A. (2015). *Migration and the Welfare State in Europe*. Routledge.
- Gleick, P. H. (2014). Water, drought, climate change, and conflict in Syria. *Weather, Climate, and Society*, 6(3), 331–340.
- Goldner, M. (2016). Far right parties in Europe. *Annual Review of Political Science*, 19, 477–497.
- Goldin, I., Cameron, G., & Balarajan, M. (2011). *Exceptional people: How migration shaped our world and will define our future*. Princeton University Press.
- Goodwin, M., & Heath, O. (2016). The 2016 referendum, Brexit and the left behind: An aggregate-level analysis of the result. *The Political Quarterly*, 87(3), 323–332.

- Goodwin, M., & Milazzo, C. (2017). Taking back control? Investigating the role of immigration in the 2016 vote for Brexit. *British Journal of Politics and International Relations*, 19(3), 450–464.
- Green, R. E., Krause, J., Briggs, A. W., Maricic, T., Stenzel, U., Kircher, M., Patterson, N., Li, H., Zhai, W., Fritz, M. H. Y., & Hansen, N. F. (2010). A draft sequence of the Neandertal genome. *Science*, 328(5979), 710–722.
- Harmand, S., Lewis, J. E., Feibel, C. S., Lepre, C. J., Prat, S., Lenoble, A., Boës, X., Quinn, R. L., Brenet, M., Arroyo, A., Taylor, N., Clément, S., Daver, G., Brugal, J.-P., Leakey, L., Mortlock, R. A., Wright, J. D., Lokorodi, S., Kirwa, C., Kent, D. V., & Roche, H. (2015). 3.3-million-year-old stone tools from Lomekwi 3, West Turkana, Kenya. *Nature*, 521(7552), 310–315.
- Harris, J. R., & Todaro, M. P. (1970). Migration, unemployment and development: A two-sector analysis. *American Economic Review*, 60(1), 126–142.
- Hatton, T. J., & Williamson, J. G. (1998). *The age of mass migration: Causes and economic impact*. Oxford University Press.
- Hatton, T. J., & Williamson, J. G. (2004). *Refugees, Asylum seekers and policy in Europe*. University of Chicago Press.
- Hatton, T. J., & Williamson, J. G. (2011). *Global migration and the world economy: Two centuries of policy and performance*. MIT Press.
- Higham, T., Douka, K., Wood, R., Ramsey, C. B., Brock, F., Basell, L., Camps, M., Arrizabalaga, A., Baena, J., Barroso-Ruiz, C., & Bergman, C. (2014). The timing and spatiotemporal patterning of Neanderthal disappearance. *Nature*, 512(7514), 306–309.
- Ho, P.-t. (1975). *The cradle of the East: An inquiry into the indigenous origins of techniques and ideas of Neolithic and early historic China, 5000–1000 B.C.* University of Chicago Press.
- Holliday, T. W. (1997). Postcranial evidence of cold adaptation in European Neandertals. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 104(2), 245–258.
- Hollifield, J. F. (2004). The emerging migration state. *International Migration Review*, 38(3), 885–912.
- Hrdy, S. B. (2009). *Mothers and others: The evolutionary origins of mutual understanding*. Harvard University Press.
- Hublin, J. J. (2009). The origin of Neandertals. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106(38), 16022–16027.
- Hublin, J. J., et al. (2017). New fossils from Jebel Irhoud, Morocco and the pan-African origin of Homo sapiens. *Nature*, 546(7657), 289–292.
- Huerta-Sánchez, E., Jin, X., Asan, Bianba, Z., Peter, B. M., Vinckenbosch, N., Liang, Y., Yi, X., He, M., Somel, M., & Ni, P. (2014). Altitude adaptation in Tibetans caused by introgression of Denisovan-like DNA. *Nature*, 512(7513), 194–197.
- Hummel, D. (2015). Climate change, land degradation and migration in Mali and Senegal—Some policy implications. *Migration and Development*, 4(1), 81–98.

- IOM. (2020). *Bangladesh: Climate-related displacement and the need for humanitarian response*. International Organization for Migration.
- Isaac, G. L. (1978). Food sharing and human evolution: Archaeological evidence from the Plio-Pleistocene of East Africa. *Journal of Anthropological Research*, 34(3), 311–325.
- Johanson, D. C., & Edey, M. A. (1981). *Lucy: The beginnings of humankind*. Simon and Schuster.
- Johanson, D. C., & White, T. D. (1979). A systematic assessment of early African hominids. *Science*, 203(4384), 321–330.
- Kaplan, H., Hill, K., Lancaster, J., & Hurtado, A. M. (2000). A theory of human life history evolution: Diet, intelligence, and longevity. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 9(4), 156–185.
- Kayser, M., Brauer, S., Weiss, G., Underhill, P., Roewer, L., Schiefenhövel, W., & Stoneking, M. (2000). Melanesian origin of Polynesian Y chromosomes. *Current Biology*, 10(20), 1237–1246.
- Kirch, P. V. (1997). *The Lapita peoples: Ancestors of the Oceanic World*. Blackwell.
- Kirch, P. V. (2010). *On the road of the winds: An archaeological history of the Pacific Islands before European Contact*. University of California Press.
- Klein, R. G. (2009). *The human career: Human biological and cultural origins* (3rd ed.). University of Chicago Press.
- Leakey, M. D. (1971). *Olduvai Gorge: Excavations in beds I and II, 1960–1963*. Cambridge University Press.
- Lee, E. S. (1966). A theory of migration. *Demography*, 3(1), 47–57.
- Leonard, W. R., & Robertson, M. L. (1997). Comparative primate energetics and hominid evolution. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(2), 265–281.
- Lewin, R., & Foley, R. (2004). *Principles of human evolution*. Blackwell Publishing.
- Lewis, W. A. (1954). Economic development with unlimited supplies of labour. *The Manchester School*, 22(2), 139–191.
- Lima, L. B., Brondizio, E. S., & Moran, E. F. (2020). Environmental change and human migration in the Brazilian Amazon. *Annals of the American Association of Geographers*, 110(3), 711–727.
- Lordkipanidze, D., Vekua, A., Ferring, R., Rightmire, G. P., Agusti, J., Kiladze, G., et al. (2007). A fourth hominin skull from Dmanisi. *Georgia. Nature*, 449(7160), 305–310.
- Lundborg, P. (2013). Refugees' employment integration in Sweden: Cultural distance and labor market performance. *Review of International Economics*, 21(2), 219–232.
- Manning, P. (2005). *Migration in world history*. Routledge.
- Marshall, F., & Hildebrand, E. (2002). Cattle before crops: The beginnings of food production in Africa. *Journal of World Prehistory*, 16(2), 99–143.
- Martin, P. (2009). Recession and migration: A new era for labor migration? *International Migration Review*, 43(3), 671–691.

- Martin, P. L., Abella, M., & Kuptsch, C. (2014). *Managing labor migration in the twenty-first century*. Yale University Press.
- Massey, D. S., Arango, J., Hugo, G., Kouaouci, A., Pellegrino, A. and Taylor, J.E. (1993). Theories of international migration: A review and appraisal. *Population and Development Review*, 19(3), 431–466.
- McDougall, I., Brown, F. H., & Fleagle, J. G. (2005). Stratigraphic placement and age of modern humans from Kibish, Ethiopia. *Nature*, 433(7027), 733–736.
- McLeman, R. (2014). *Climate and human migration: Past experiences, future challenges*. Cambridge University Press.
- McNamara, K. E., & Gibson, C. (2009). We do not want to leave our land': Pacific ambassadors at the United Nations resist the category of 'climate refugees'. *Geoforum*, 40(3), 475–483.
- Mellars, P., Gori, K. C., Carr, M., Soares, P. A., & Richards, M. B. (2013). Genetic and archaeological perspectives on the initial modern human colonization of southern Asia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 110(26), 10699–10704.
- Meltzer, D. J. (2009). *First peoples in a new world: Colonizing Ice Age America*. University of California Press.
- Office for National Statistics. (2016). *Migration statistics quarterly report: August 2016*. Office for National Statistics.
- Okpara, U. T., Stringer, L. C., Dougill, A. J., & Bila, M. D. (2015). Conflicts about water in Lake Chad: Are environmental, vulnerability and security issues linked? *Progress in Development Studies*, 15(4), 308–325.
- Papademetriou, D. G., & Sumption, M. (2011). *Rethinking Points systems and employer-selected immigration*. Migration Policy Institute.
- Peri, G. (2016). Immigrants, productivity, and labour markets. *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 30(4), 3–30.
- Petruglia, M. D., Haslam, M., Fuller, D. Q., Boivin, N., & Clarkson, C. (2007). Out of Africa: New hypotheses and evidence for the dispersal of Homo sapiens along the Indian Ocean rim. *Annals of Human Biology*, 34(5), 515–526.
- Pinhasi, R., Fort, J., & Ammerman, A. J. (2005). The spatial-temporal pattern of the Neolithic demic diffusion in Europe. *Current Anthropology*, 46(S5), S35–S58. <https://doi.org/10.1086/444365>
- Piore, M. J. (1979). *Birds of passage: Migrant labor and industrial societies*. Cambridge University Press.
- Pontzer, H. (2010). Economics of bipedalism: Effects of body size and limb length on locomotor efficiency in humans and other primates. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 58(6), 568–575.
- Pontzer, H. (2012). Ecological energetics in early Homo. *Current Anthropology*, 53(S6), S346–S358.
- Portes, A. (1978). Migration and underdevelopment. *Politics & Society*, 8(1), 1–48.

- Portes, A., & Walton, J. (1981). *Labor, class, and the international system*. Academic Press.
- Portes, J. (2016). Immigration, free movement and the EU referendum. *National Institute Economic Review*, 236(1), 14–22.
- Potts, R. (1998). Environmental hypotheses of Hominin evolution. *Yearbook of Physical Anthropology*, 41, 93–136.
- Price, T. D. (2000). *Europe's first farmers*. Cambridge University.
- Ravenstein, E. G. (1885). The laws of migration. *Journal of the Statistical Society of London*, 48(2), 167–235.
- Reich, M., Gordon, D. M., & Edwards, R. C. (1973). A theory of labour market segmentation. *American Economic Review*, 63(2), 359–365.
- Rigaud, K. K., de Sherbinin, A., Jones, B., Bergmann, J., Clement, V., Ober, K., & Midgley, A. (2018). *Groundswell: Preparing for internal climate migration*. World Bank Publications.
- Rightmire, G. P. (1990). *The Evolution of Homo erectus: Comparative Anatomical studies of an extinct human species*. Cambridge University Press.
- Rightmire, G. P. (1998). Human evolution in the middle Pleistocene: The role of Homo heidelbergensis. *Evolutionary Anthropology: Issues, News, and Reviews: Issues, News, and Reviews*, 6(6), 218–227.
- Roberts, M. B., & Parfitt, S. A. (1994). *Boxgrove: A middle Pleistocene hominid site at Eartham Quarry, Boxgrove, West Sussex*. English Heritage.
- Roberts, N. (1998). *The Holocene: An Environmental History* (2nd ed.).
- Roebroeks, W. (2001). Hominid behaviour and the earliest occupation of Europe: An exploration. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 41(5), 437–461.
- Russell, S. S. (1992). Migrant remittances and development. *International Migration Review*, 30(3), 267–287.
- Sjaastad, L. A. (1962). The costs and returns of human migration. *Journal of Political Economy*, 70(5, Part 2), 80–93.
- Slon, V., Mafessoni, F., Vernot, B., de Filippo, C., Grote, S., Viola, B., Vartanyan, S., Meyer, M., Kelso, J., & Pääbo, S. (2018). The genome of the offspring of a Neanderthal mother and a Denisovan father. *Nature*, 561(7721), 113–116.
- Sockol, M. D., Raichlen, D. A., & Pontzer, H. (2007). Chimpanzee locomotor energetics and the origin of human bipedalism. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 104(30), 12265–12269.
- Stanford, C., Allen, J. S., & Anton, S. C. (2013). *Biological anthropology: The natural history of Humankind* (3rd ed.). Pearson.
- Stark, O. (1991). *The migration of labor*. Basil Blackwell.
- Stark, O., & Bloom, D. E. (1985). The new economics of labor migration. *American Economic Review*, 75(2), 173–178.
- Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K., & Chaminade, T. (2008). Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: Technology, language and cognition in human evolution. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), 1939–1949.

- Stringer, C. (2012). The status of *Homo heidelbergensis* (Schoetensack 1908). *Evolutionary Anthropology: Issues, News, and Reviews*, 21(3), 101–107.
- Sumption, M., & Somerville, W. (2010). The UK's New Europeans: Progress and challenges five years after accession. *Migration Policy Institute*, 3(2), 37–50.
- Svendsen, J. I., et al. (2004). Late quaternary ice sheet history of northern Eurasia. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 23(11–13), 1229–1271.
- Swisher, C. C., III, Rink, W. J., Anton, S. C., Schwarcz, H. P., Curtis, G. H., Suprijo, A., & Widiastomo. (1994). Latest *Homo erectus* of Java: Potential contemporaneity with *Homo sapiens* in southeast Asia. *Science*, 274(5294), 1870–1874.
- Tacoli, C. (2009). Crisis or adaptation? Migration and climate change in a context of high mobility. *Environment and Urbanization*, 21(2), 513–525.
- Tattersall, I. (2000). Paleoanthropology: The last half-century. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 9(1), 2–16.
- Tattersall, I. (2012). *Masters of the planet: The search for our human origins*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Taylor, J. E. (1999). The new economics of labour migration and the role of remittances in the migration process. *International Migration*, 37(1), 63–88. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1468-2435.00066>
- Todaro, M. P. (1969). A model of labour migration and urban unemployment in less developed countries. *American Economic Review*, 59(1), 138–148.
- Toth, N., & Schick, K. (2009). The Oldowan: The tool making of early hominins and chimpanzees compared. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 38, 289–305.
- Walker, A., & Leakey, R. (1993). *The Nariokotome Homo erectus Skeleton*. Harvard University Press.
- Ward, C. V., Kimbel, W. H., & Johanson, D. C. (2011). Complete Fourth metatarsal and arches in the foot of *australopithecus afarensis*. *Science*, 331(6018), 750–753.
- Wheeler, P. E. (1991). The influence of bipedalism on the energy and water budgets of early hominids. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 21(2), 117–136.
- Wood, B. (1992). Origin and evolution of the genus *homo*. *Nature*, 355(6363), 783–790.
- World Bank. (2018). *Groundswell: Preparing for internal climate migration*. World Bank.
- Wouterse, F., & Taylor, J. E. (2008). Migration and income diversification: Evidence from Burkina Faso. *World Development*, 36(4), 625–640.
- Wynn, T., & Coolidge, F. L. (2011). The implications of Oldowan cognitive capabilities for the evolution of pleistocene Hominin lifeways. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 60(4), 439–448.
- Zeder, M. A. (2011). The origins of agriculture in the Near East. *Current Anthropology*, 52(S4), S221–S235.



Artificial Intelligence and Robotics

INTRODUCTION

Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics are two of the most transformative fields in modern technology. They have evolved from theoretical concepts to practical applications that permeate various aspects of society. This refers to the significant progression of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics from purely academic and speculative ideas to real-world implementations with tangible impacts. In the early stages, AI and Robotics were primarily subjects of theoretical research, often explored through hypothetical models and academic discourse. Over time, advancements in computational power, algorithmic development, and engineering have enabled the transition of these technologies into practical tools and systems that now deeply influence everyday life. Initially, AI and Robotics were mainly discussed in academic settings. AI research focused on creating algorithms and models to simulate cognitive processes such as reasoning, learning, and perception.¹ Robotics, on the other hand, began with the study of mechanical structures and control systems to achieve autonomous movement and manipulation.² The advancement of these

¹ Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

² Siciliano, B., & Khatib, O. (2016). *Springer Handbook of Robotics*. Springer.

fields into practical applications is exemplified by numerous developments across various sectors including healthcare, transportation, manufacturing, and everyday life. In healthcare, AI is now extensively used for diagnostic purposes, personalized medicine, and health monitoring. Examples include machine learning algorithms that interpret medical images with high accuracy.³ In transportation autonomous vehicles (AVs), a product of combined AI and Robotics technology, are increasingly becoming a reality, with companies like Tesla and Waymo developing self-driving cars that promise to revolutionize transportation.⁴ In manufacturing Robotics has transformed manufacturing through automation, where robots perform tasks such as assembling, packaging, and quality control with high efficiency and precision.⁵ Finally, in everyday life, AI-driven personal assistants like Siri and Alexa exemplify how AI has permeated everyday life. These systems use natural language processing and machine learning to interact with users and aid in various tasks.⁶ The integration of AI and Robotics into these domains illustrates their transition from theoretical constructs to integral components of modern society. Their influence is continuously expanding, driven by ongoing research and development. This chapter provides an overview of the history and developments in AI and Robotics.

HISTORY OF ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND ROBOTICS

Early Concepts and Foundations

The conceptual foundation for AI was laid by Alan Turing, who proposed the idea of a ‘universal machine’ capable of performing any computation.⁷ His famous Turing Test was a pivotal moment in defining the criteria for machine intelligence. The Turing Test, proposed by British mathematician

³Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

⁴Litman, T. (2020). *Autonomous Vehicle Implementation Predictions*. Victoria Transport Policy Institute.

⁵Groover, M. P. (2018). *Automation, Production Systems, and Computer-Integrated Manufacturing*. Prentice Hall.

⁶Dale, R. (2020). *The Conversation: Bringing Machine Learning to Natural Language Processing*. Wiley.

⁷Turing, A.M. (1950), Computing machinery and intelligence. *Mind*, 59(236), pp.433–460

and computer scientist Alan Turing in 1950, is widely regarded as a foundational concept in the philosophy of Artificial Intelligence (AI). Turing introduced the test in his seminal paper, *Computing Machinery and Intelligence*, to determine whether a machine could exhibit intelligent behaviour indistinguishable from that of a human.⁸ The test involves a human judge engaging in a text-based conversation with both a machine and another human. If the judge cannot reliably distinguish between the machine and the human, the machine is said to have passed the test and demonstrated a form of Artificial Intelligence. The Turing Test was a pivotal moment in the field of AI because it shifted the focus from trying to define what intelligence is to examining how it manifests through behaviour. Instead of attempting to create a machine that ‘thinks’ like a human, the test suggests that demonstrating intelligence is sufficient if a machine can simulate human-like behaviour convincingly.⁹ Several real-world applications and developments in AI have drawn inspiration from Turing’s concept. For example, chatbots and virtual assistants like Siri and Alexa rely on conversational interfaces that aim to mimic human responses. While modern AI systems have not fully passed the Turing Test in its original form, advances in natural language processing and machine learning have brought machines closer to this goal. Critics, however, have raised concerns about the limitations of the Turing Test. Some argue that passing the test might not indicate true intelligence but merely the ability to imitate human-like conversation. For example, philosopher John Searle’s Chinese Room argument suggests that a machine could pass the Turing Test without understanding the conversation, thus demonstrating syntactic processing rather than semantic comprehension.¹⁰

The foundation of contemporary Robotics lies in cybernetics. Norbert Wiener’s work on cybernetics in the 1940s explored the principles of control and communication in animals and machines, providing a theoretical framework for AI.¹¹ Cybernetics, as defined by Wiener, is the scientific study of control and communication in animals and machines. This interdisciplinary field combined multiple domains including engineering,

⁸ Ibid.

⁹ Saygin, A.P., Cicekli, I. and Akman, V. (2000), Turing Test: 50 Years Later. *Minds and Machines*, 10(4), pp.463–518.

¹⁰ Searle, J.R. (1980), Minds, brains, and programs. *Behavioral and Brain Sciences*, 3(3), pp.417–424.

¹¹ Wiener, N. (1948), *Cybernetics: Or Control and Communication in the Animal and the Machine*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

biology, mathematics, and social sciences to understand and design systems with adaptive and self-regulating capabilities. Cybernetics emphasized the importance of feedback mechanisms in both biological organisms and mechanical systems. Feedback is a process where information about the output of a system is looped back as input to control the behaviour of the system. In living organisms, feedback mechanisms are used to maintain homeostasis, such as the regulation of body temperature and blood sugar levels.¹² Wiener proposed that similar mechanisms could be employed in machines to achieve self-regulation and efficient control.

Wiener's exploration of these principles provided a conceptual framework for developing intelligent machines. The core idea was that both biological organisms and machines could be designed to process information, make decisions, and adapt to changes in their environment through feedback loops.¹³ This theoretical basis was essential for the subsequent development of AI, which aims to create machines capable of performing tasks that typically require human intelligence, such as learning, reasoning, and problem solving.

The concepts of feedback and control have been incorporated into various AI technologies. For instance, machine learning algorithms use feedback to improve their performance over time.¹⁴ In neural networks, which are inspired by the structure and function of the human brain, feedback loops are used during the training process to adjust the weights of connections based on the errors in predictions, a process known as backpropagation.¹⁵ Wiener's work also influenced the development of Robotics, where cybernetic principles are applied to create robots that can autonomously navigate and interact with their environment.¹⁶ These robots utilize sensors to gather information, process this data, and make decisions to perform tasks, reflecting the principles of control and communication outlined in cybernetics. In summary, Norbert Wiener's work on cybernetics provided a theoretical foundation for AI by exploring the

¹² Wiener, N. (1948). *Cybernetics: Or Control and Communication in the Animal and the Machine*. The MIT Press.

¹³ Boden, M. A. (2006). *Mind as Machine: A History of Cognitive Science*. Oxford University Press.

¹⁴ Mitchell, T. M. (1997). *Machine Learning*. McGraw-Hill.

¹⁵ LeCun, Y., Bengio, Y., & Hinton, G. (2015). Deep learning. *Nature*, 521(7553), 436–444.

¹⁶ Brooks, R. A. (1999). *Cambrian Intelligence: The Early History of the New AI*. The MIT Press.

principles of control and communication in animals and machines. His concepts of feedback and self-regulation have been fundamental in the development of intelligent systems that can adapt and learn from their interactions with the environment.

The Birth of AI as a Field

The field of AI was formally established during the Dartmouth Conference, organized by John McCarthy, Marvin Minsky, Nathaniel Rochester, and Claude Shannon. They proposed the term ‘Artificial Intelligence’ and discussed the potential of machines to simulate human intelligence.¹⁷ The Dartmouth Conference, held in the summer of 1956, marks a pivotal moment in the history of Artificial Intelligence (AI). This seminal event is often credited with formally establishing AI as a distinct field of study. Organized by prominent researchers John McCarthy, Marvin Minsky, Nathaniel Rochester, and Claude Shannon, the conference brought together a diverse group of scientists and engineers to deliberate on the possibilities of creating machines capable of demonstrating intelligence that parallels human cognition. John McCarthy, who would later be known as one of the ‘founding fathers’ of AI, was instrumental in coining the term ‘Artificial Intelligence’ during the conference. The aim was to explore how machines could be made to perform tasks that, if done by humans, would require intelligence. The conception of AI was therefore fundamentally linked to the aspiration of simulating human thought processes using computational models.¹⁸ Marvin Minsky, another central figure in AI, contributed significantly to the discussions at Dartmouth, advocating for the development of machines that could learn and adapt. Minsky’s vision extended to creating systems that could not only solve problems through pre-programmed instructions but also through learning from experience.¹⁹ This laid the groundwork for machine learning, a subfield of AI that has grown exponentially in the decades since. Nathaniel Rochester brought a wealth of engineering expertise to the conference. As

¹⁷ McCarthy, J., Minsky, M.L., Rochester, N. and Shannon, C.E. (2006), A Proposal for the Dartmouth Summer Research Project on Artificial Intelligence, August 31, 1955. AI Magazine, 27(4), pp.12–14.

¹⁸ McCarthy, J., Minsky, M. L., Rochester, N., & Shannon, C. E. (2006). A Proposal for the Dartmouth Summer Research Project on Artificial Intelligence, August 31, 1955. AI Magazine, 27(4), pp.12–14.

¹⁹ Minsky, M. (1985). The Society of Mind. New York: Simon and Schuster.

a key contributor to the development of the IBM computer, Rochester's insights were invaluable in discussing the hardware requisites for AI. His work underscored the importance of robust computational frameworks and the potential for scaling these models to achieve greater complexity in AI systems.²⁰ Claude Shannon, renowned for his work in information theory, provided a theoretical backbone to the discussions. Shannon's ideas about information processing and coding were crucial in laying the foundation for efficient data handling and algorithm development in AI. His contributions helped shape the understanding of how machines could process and interpret vast amounts of data, mimicking human abilities to an extent.²¹ The Dartmouth Conference was not just a meeting but a launching pad for future research and development in AI. It set the stage for subsequent advancements by framing key questions and proposing foundational approaches. The collaborative efforts of McCarthy, Minsky, Rochester, and Shannon at this conference catalysed the formation of AI as a formal discipline, driving forward the quest to create intelligent machines that simulate human capabilities.

Early AI Programs

Logic Theorist was developed by Allen Newell and Herbert A. Simon in 1955; Logic Theorist was one of the first AI programs capable of proving mathematical theorems.²² It was one of the pioneering AI programs designed to simulate human problem-solving capabilities and is often regarded as the first Artificial Intelligence software. This program was capable of proving mathematical theorems, particularly those found in *Principia Mathematica* by Alfred North Whitehead and Bertrand Russell. Using a search algorithm based on human heuristics, Logic Theorist was able to find new proofs for existing theorems, demonstrating the potential of computers to perform tasks previously thought to require human intelligence.²³ For instance, Logic Theorist successfully found an elegant proof for the

²⁰ Rochester, N., Holland, J. H., Haibt, L. H., & Duda, W. I. (1956). Tests on a cell assembly theory of the action of the brain, using a large digital computer. *IRE Transactions on Information Theory*, 2(3), pp.80–93.

²¹ Shannon, C. E. (1950). *Programming a Computer for Playing Chess*. London: Philosophical Library.

²² Newell, A. and Simon, H.A. (1956), *The Logic Theory Machine: A Complex Information Processing System*. *IRE Transactions on Information Theory*, 2(3), pp.61–79.

²³ Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1956), *The Logic Theory Machine: A Complex Information Processing System*. *IRE Transactions on Information Theory*, 2(3), 61–79.

‘Principia’s’ Theorem 2.85, which was shorter and more efficient than the original proof by Russell and Whitehead, showcasing the program’s ability to not only mimic but also improve upon human logical reasoning.²⁴ This breakthrough marked a significant milestone in the field of Artificial Intelligence, as it illustrated the possibility of encoding complex human cognitive processes into computational models. The development of Logic Theorist laid the groundwork for subsequent AI research and influenced the creation of more sophisticated systems capable of complex problem solving and decision making.²⁵ Furthermore, the methodologies employed in Logic Theorist, such as heuristic search and symbolic reasoning, continue to underpin modern AI techniques, including machine learning and automated theorem proving.²⁶ The methodologies employed in Logic Theorist, such as heuristic search and symbolic reasoning, have had a lasting influence on modern AI techniques. Heuristic search involves using strategies or rules of thumb to explore problem spaces efficiently, reducing the computational effort needed to find solutions. This approach was central to Logic Theorist’s ability to navigate complex mathematical proofs by prioritizing more promising paths over others, a principle that is still fundamental in modern AI algorithms. For instance, heuristic search forms the basis of many AI applications in optimization and decision making, including A* search in pathfinding and game-playing AI.²⁷ Symbolic reasoning, another core methodology of Logic Theorist, involves manipulating symbols to represent and solve problems based on formal rules and logic. This technique laid the foundation for knowledge representation and reasoning in AI, influencing the development of expert systems that simulate the decision-making abilities of human experts.²⁸

In machine learning, although statistical approaches have become dominant, symbolic reasoning is still relevant, particularly in fields such as natural language processing and automated reasoning, where understanding and manipulating structured data is crucial. For example, hybrid AI models that combine symbolic reasoning with neural networks are

²⁴ Simon, H. A., & Newell, A. (1958). Heuristic problem solving: The next advance in operations research. *Operations Research*, 6(1), 1–10.

²⁵ Feigenbaum, E. A., & Feldman, J. (1963). *Computers and Thought*. McGraw-Hill.

²⁶ Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

²⁷ Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

²⁸ Nilsson, N. J. (2010). *The Quest for Artificial Intelligence*. Cambridge University Press.

increasingly being explored to integrate human-like understanding with data-driven learning.²⁹ In automated theorem proving, the influence of Logic Theorist is direct, as modern systems like Coq and Isabelle continue to utilize logical frameworks and symbolic methods to prove complex theorems.³⁰ These methods have enabled advancements in software verification and formal methods, where ensuring the correctness of algorithms and systems is critical. Thus, the core principles developed in Logic Theorist remain integral to both foundational AI research and practical applications today.

Another early AI program by Newell and Simon—General Problem Solver (GPS)—aimed to simulate human problem-solving processes.³¹ General Problem Solver (GPS) was an early Artificial Intelligence program developed by Allen Newell and Herbert A. Simon in the late 1950s, designed to mimic the cognitive processes humans use in problem solving. Unlike its predecessor, Logic Theorist, which was specifically focused on proving mathematical theorems, GPS was intended to be a more general-purpose system capable of solving a wide range of problems by breaking them down into smaller sub-problems and using means-ends analysis to find solutions.³² The program used a symbolic approach, representing problems and solutions through structured symbols and applying a set of rules to manipulate these symbols, closely resembling human thought processes as proposed by the theory of human problem solving.³³ GPS was influential in advancing the understanding of how humans approach complex tasks, as it demonstrated the potential of computational models to replicate strategic thinking patterns. It operated by defining the initial and goal states of a problem and then generating operators that would transform the initial state into the goal state, effectively using a heuristic search to explore possible solutions.³⁴ This approach influenced subsequent

²⁹ Besold, T. R., Garcez, A., & Lamb, L. (2017). Neural-symbolic learning and reasoning: A survey and interpretation. *Frontiers in Artificial Intelligence and Applications*, 300, 1–20.

³⁰ Wenzel, M., Paulson, L. C., & Nipkow, T. (2013). The Isabelle framework. In Blazy, S., & Paulin-Mohring, C. (Eds.), *Interactive Theorem Proving* (pp. 399–404). Springer.

³¹ Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

³² Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1961). GPS, a program that simulates human thought. In Feigenbaum, E. A., & Feldman, J. (Eds.), *Computers and Thought* (pp. 279–293). McGraw-Hill.

³³ Simon, H. A. (1972). *The Sciences of the Artificial*. MIT Press.

³⁴ Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1972). *Human Problem Solving*. Prentice-Hall

developments in AI, particularly in fields such as automated planning and cognitive modelling, where the ability to simulate human-like reasoning is essential.³⁵ While GPS had limitations in terms of its practical applications and could not handle the vast complexity of real-world problems, it provided a foundational framework for later AI research. It established the concept of problem solving as a search process within a defined problem space, a principle that continues to be a cornerstone in AI and cognitive science.³⁶ The methodologies and theories behind GPS are still relevant today, particularly in exploring how humans and machines can collaborate to solve complex problems more efficiently.

The AI Winter

By the mid-1970s, AI research encountered several critical obstacles that slowed its progress and led to what is known as the AI Winter, a period characterized by reduced funding, diminished interest, and scepticism about the potential of Artificial Intelligence.³⁷ One of the main challenges was the limited computational power of the era, which constrained the complexity of problems that AI systems could address. Early AI programs, such as those designed for natural language processing and computer vision, required far more computational resources than were available at the time, making it difficult to achieve practical results.³⁸ This technological limitation prevented researchers from scaling up AI models and algorithms to handle real-world applications effectively. Additionally, the field suffered from overly optimistic expectations fuelled by early successes in specific domains, such as game playing and symbolic reasoning. Prominent AI researchers had predicted rapid advancements, including the development of machines capable of human-level intelligence within a few decades.³⁹ However, the reality was that many AI systems, such as the early

³⁵ Nilsson, N. J. (2009). *The Quest for Artificial Intelligence: A History of Ideas and Achievements*. Cambridge University Press.

³⁶ Luger, G. F. (2009). *Artificial Intelligence: Structures and Strategies for Complex Problem Solving*. 6th ed. Addison- Wesley.

³⁷ Dreyfus, H.L. (1972), *What Computers Can't Do: A Critique of Artificial Reason*. New York: Harper & Row.

³⁸ Nilsson, N. J. (2009). *The Quest for Artificial Intelligence: A History of Ideas and Achievements*. Cambridge University Press.

³⁹ Dreyfus, H. L. (1972). *What Computers Can't Do: The Limits of Artificial Intelligence*. Harper & Row.

expert systems, struggled with tasks that required common sense reasoning or knowledge representation beyond narrow, well-defined problem areas.⁴⁰ This disparity between expectations and reality led to frustration among funding agencies and stakeholders, who began to view AI research as overhyped and lacking in tangible progress. The disappointment resulted in significant cuts to research funding from both governmental and private sources. In the United States, the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), a major funder of AI research, drastically reduced its support for projects that had failed to meet their ambitious goals.⁴¹ Similar trends were observed in the United Kingdom, where the Lighthill Report of 1973 criticized AI research for not delivering practical applications, leading to reduced financial backing for AI projects.⁴² These events contributed to a slowdown in research activities and a decline in the number of new researchers entering the field. Despite these setbacks, the AI Winter periods also prompted the development of new approaches and a more realistic assessment of AI's capabilities and limitations. Researchers began to focus on more incremental advancements and foundational work, which laid the groundwork for future breakthroughs in machine learning and neural networks that would eventually rejuvenate the field in the 1980s and beyond.⁴³ This shift involved prioritizing more achievable goals and refining existing methodologies, rather than pursuing overly ambitious projects that had led to earlier setbacks. One such foundational area was the development of machine learning algorithms. Researchers began exploring statistical methods and data-driven approaches to enable computers to learn patterns from data, rather than relying solely on rule-based systems. For example, the introduction of the backpropagation algorithm by Rumelhart, Hinton, and Williams in 1986 revolutionized neural network training by providing an effective method for adjusting the weights in multi-layer networks, making deep learning feasible.⁴⁴

⁴⁰ Crevier, D. (1993). *AI: The Tumultuous History of the Search for Artificial Intelligence*. Basic Books.

⁴¹ Hendler, J. (2008). Avoiding another AI Winter. *IEEE Intelligent Systems*, 23(2), 2–4.

⁴² Lighthill, J. (1973). Artificial Intelligence: A General Survey. In *Artificial Intelligence: A Paper Symposium*. Science Research Council.

⁴³ Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

⁴⁴ Rumelhart, D. E., Hinton, G. E., & Williams, R. J. (1986). Learning representations by back-propagating errors. *Nature*, 323(6088), 533–536.

This period also saw significant advancements in the understanding of neural networks, which had been largely abandoned since the 1969 publication of *Perceptrons* by Minsky and Papert. Their work had highlighted the limitations of single-layer perceptrons, leading to a decline in interest in neural network research.⁴⁵ However, the subsequent development of multi-layer perceptrons and the backpropagation algorithm renewed interest in the potential of neural networks, laying the groundwork for what would later become the deep learning revolution of the 2010s.⁴⁶ In addition to progress in neural networks, the 1980s and 1990s saw the emergence of probabilistic reasoning and graphical models, which offered new ways to handle uncertainty and complexity in AI systems. Judea Pearl's work on Bayesian networks, for example, provided a robust framework for probabilistic inference and decision making, which became fundamental in various AI applications, from natural language processing to Robotics.⁴⁷ These incremental but foundational advancements gradually restored confidence in AI research and contributed to the resurgence of interest and funding in the field. By the 1990s, AI had diversified into multiple subfields, including machine learning, computer vision, and natural language processing, each making steady progress. This groundwork ultimately enabled the dramatic breakthroughs in AI capabilities seen in the twenty-first century, as increased computational power and large datasets facilitated the development of sophisticated models such as deep neural networks and reinforcement learning systems.⁴⁸

The careful and systematic work done during this period set the stage for the transformative impacts of AI in modern times. One prominent example is the use of deep learning algorithms in image recognition, which has led to breakthroughs in computer vision applications such as facial recognition and autonomous vehicles. For instance, convolutional neural networks (CNNs) have significantly improved the accuracy of image classification tasks, as demonstrated by their success in the ImageNet

⁴⁵ Minsky, M., & Papert, S. (1969). *Perceptrons: An Introduction to Computational Geometry*. MIT Press.

⁴⁶ Goodfellow, I., Bengio, Y., & Courville, A. (2016). *Deep Learning*. MIT Press.

⁴⁷ Pearl, J. (1988). *Probabilistic Reasoning in Intelligent Systems: Networks of Plausible Inference*. Morgan Kaufmann.

⁴⁸ LeCun, Y., Bengio, Y., & Hinton, G. (2015). Deep learning. *Nature*, 521(7553), 436–444.

competition.⁴⁹ Another transformative impact is in natural language processing (NLP), where AI models like OpenAI's Generative Pre-trained Transformer-3 (GPT-3) have demonstrated an unprecedented ability to generate human-like text, translating languages, and even performing complex creative tasks.⁵⁰ AI has also revolutionized healthcare through the development of diagnostic tools that leverage machine learning to analyse medical images and predict diseases. For example, Google's DeepMind has developed an AI system capable of diagnosing over fifty eye diseases with an accuracy comparable to that of expert ophthalmologists.⁵¹ In the financial sector, AI-driven algorithms are now widely used for fraud detection, risk assessment, and automated trading, increasing the efficiency and security of financial transactions.⁵² Furthermore, reinforcement learning has enabled significant advancements in Robotics and game-playing AI. AlphaGo, developed by DeepMind, made headlines by defeating the world champion in the complex board game Go, showcasing the potential of AI to master tasks previously considered too complex for machines.⁵³ These examples illustrate how foundational work in AI has led to transformative impacts across diverse fields, fundamentally changing the way technology interacts with society.

REVIVAL AND GROWTH

Expert Systems

In the 1980s, the development of expert systems marked a significant milestone in the field of Artificial Intelligence (AI), rejuvenating interest that had waned following earlier periods of inflated expectations and

⁴⁹Krizhevsky, A., Sutskever, I., & Hinton, G. E. (2012). ImageNet classification with deep convolutional neural networks. In *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems* (pp. 1097–1105).

⁵⁰Brown, T., Mann, B., Ryder, N., Subbiah, M., Kaplan, J., Dhariwal, P., ... & Amodei, D. (2020). Language models are few-shot learners. *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, 33, 1877–1901.

⁵¹De Fauw, J., Ledsam, J. R., Romera-Paredes, B., Nikolov, S., Tomasev, N., Blackwell, S., ... & Suleyman, M. (2018). Clinically applicable deep learning for diagnosis and referral in retinal disease. *Nature Medicine*, 24(9), 1342–1350.

⁵²Treleaven, P., Galas, M., & Lalchand, V. (2013). Algorithmic trading review. *Communications of the ACM*, 56(11), 76–85.

⁵³Silver, D., Huang, A., Maddison, C. J., Guez, A., Sifre, L., Van Den Driessche, G., ... & Hassabis, D. (2016). Mastering the game of Go with deep neural networks and tree search. *Nature*, 529(7587), 484–489.

subsequent disillusionment.⁵⁴ Expert systems are a class of AI applications designed to emulate human decision making by utilizing knowledge bases and inference rules to solve complex problems within specific domains. These systems are constructed based on the insights and expertise of human specialists, codified into rule-based frameworks that allow the system to make informed decisions and provide solutions.⁵⁵ One of the most notable expert systems developed during this period was MYCIN, an early system designed to diagnose bacterial infections and recommend appropriate antibiotic treatments. Developed at Stanford University, MYCIN demonstrated remarkable accuracy, often exceeding the diagnostic capabilities of non-specialist human clinicians.⁵⁶ The success of MYCIN underscored the potential of expert systems to enhance decision-making processes in medicine and other fields requiring specialized knowledge. Similarly, the expert system DENDRAL, also developed at Stanford, was designed for use in organic chemistry. DENDRAL's ability to analyse mass spectrometry data and infer molecular structures showcased the applicability of expert systems in scientific research, proving that AI could assist in tasks traditionally reliant on human intuition and expertise.⁵⁷ The commercial potential of expert systems quickly became evident, leading to widespread adoption in industries such as finance, manufacturing, and oil exploration. Systems like XCON, developed by Digital Equipment Corporation, were implemented to configure complex computer systems based on customer requirements. XCON's deployment significantly reduced the time and costs associated with system configuration, demonstrating the tangible business benefits of incorporating expert systems into operational workflows.⁵⁸ The resurgence of interest in AI due to expert systems was not without its challenges. These systems often required significant resources for development and maintenance, including the continuous updating of knowledge bases to reflect current expertise. Additionally, while expert systems excelled in specific, narrowly defined domains, they struggled with tasks requiring general intelligence or the

⁵⁴Feigenbaum, E.A. (1984), Knowledge engineering: The applied side of artificial intelligence. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 426(1), pp.91–107.

⁵⁵Feigenbaum, E. A. (1984). Knowledge engineering: The applied side of artificial intelligence. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 426(1), pp. 91–107.

⁵⁶Shortliffe, E. H. (1976). *MYCIN: Computer-Based Medical Consultations*. Elsevier.

⁵⁷Buchanan, B. G., & Feigenbaum, E. A. (1982). *Dendral and Meta-Dendral: Their applications dimension*. *Artificial Intelligence*, 11(1–2), pp. 5–24.

⁵⁸McDermott, J. (1982). *R1: A Rule-Based Configurer of Computer Systems*. *Artificial Intelligence*, 19(1), pp. 39–88.

ability to learn and adapt from new experiences.⁵⁹ Despite these limitations, the expert systems of the 1980s laid the groundwork for ongoing advancements in AI. They illustrated the feasibility and utility of embedding human expertise within computational frameworks, paving the way for future developments in machine learning and artificial neural networks. The successes achieved by expert systems rekindled enthusiasm in the AI community and among investors, setting the stage for the rapid technological advancements that would follow in subsequent decades.

Machine Learning and Data

The 1990s marked a pivotal decade in the evolution of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and machine learning, characterized by a significant shift towards data-driven approaches and the resurgence of neural networks. This transition laid the foundational groundwork for the development of modern machine learning techniques that drive today's technological advancements.⁶⁰ During the early part of the decade, researchers began to recognize the limitations of rule-based systems and expert systems, which had dominated AI research in the 1980s. These systems struggled with scalability and adaptability, leading to a search for more robust and flexible approaches. The growing availability of large datasets and increased computational power enabled a shift towards data-driven methods, where algorithms could learn patterns directly from data rather than relying solely on pre-programmed rules.⁶¹ One of the most significant developments in this period was the resurgence of neural networks. Although neural networks had been proposed earlier, their adoption was hindered by computational constraints and the lack of effective training methods. The rediscovery and popularization of the backpropagation algorithm by Rumelhart, Hinton, and Williams in 1986 provided a viable solution for training multi-layer neural networks, igniting renewed interest in this area.⁶² This breakthrough allowed neural networks to learn complex representations from data, leading to substantial improvements in

⁵⁹ Dreyfus, H. L. (1992). *What Computers Still Can't Do: A Critique of Artificial Reason*. MIT Press.

⁶⁰ Mitchell, T.M. (1997), *Machine Learning*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

⁶¹ Breiman, L. (2001). Statistical Modeling: The Two Cultures. *Statistical Science*, 16(3), pp.199–231.

⁶² Rumelhart, D.E., Hinton, G.E. & Williams, R.J. (1986). Learning representations by back-propagating errors. *Nature*, 323(6088), pp.533–536.

performance for various AI tasks. The 1990s also saw the emergence of Support Vector Machines (SVMs), introduced by Cortes and Vapnik in 1995, which became a powerful tool for classification and regression tasks. SVMs provided a new paradigm for data-driven learning, emphasizing the importance of maximizing the margin between different classes in a dataset, which led to more generalizable models.⁶³ Furthermore, the advent of the Internet and the World Wide Web during this decade generated massive amounts of digital data, providing an unprecedented opportunity for machine learning research. Researchers leveraged this data to develop and refine algorithms, resulting in significant advancements in fields such as natural language processing, computer vision, and speech recognition.⁶⁴ The increase in computational power, particularly with the introduction of Graphics Processing Units (GPUs), revolutionized the ability to train large neural networks more efficiently. This technological leap facilitated the implementation of deep learning models, which are neural networks with many layers, capable of learning hierarchical representations of data.⁶⁵ The 1990s, therefore, represented a transformative era that set the stage for modern machine learning. The convergence of data availability, algorithmic developments, and computational advancements enabled the shift towards models that could learn directly from data, leading to the sophisticated AI systems we see today.

MODERN DEVELOPMENTS IN ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE

Deep Learning

Breakthroughs in Neural Networks

Deep learning, a subset of machine learning, has achieved remarkable success in various applications, including image recognition and natural language processing. Key advancements include the development of

⁶³ Cortes, C. & Vapnik, V. (1995). Support-Vector Networks. *Machine Learning*, 20(3), pp.273–297.

⁶⁴ Lecun, Y., Bengio, Y. & Hinton, G. (2015). Deep learning. *Nature*, 521(7553), pp.436–444.

⁶⁵ Krizhevsky, A., Sutskever, I. & Hinton, G. E. (2012). ImageNet Classification with Deep Convolutional Neural Networks. In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems 25*. Lake Tahoe, Nevada, 3–8 December 2012. Red Hook, NY: Curran Associates Inc, pp.1097–1105.

convolutional neural networks (CNNs) by Yann LeCun and recurrent neural networks (RNNs) by Sepp Hochreiter and Jürgen Schmidhuber.^{66,67} Breakthroughs in neural networks have significantly advanced the field of deep learning, a subset of machine learning that focuses on algorithms inspired by the structure and function of the brain. Deep learning has achieved remarkable success in various applications, including image recognition and natural language processing, due to its ability to automatically extract intricate patterns from raw data. CNNs are designed to process data with a grid-like topology, such as images. Their architecture consists of multiple layers, including convolutional layers that automatically learn spatial hierarchies of features from input images. This makes CNNs particularly effective for image recognition tasks. LeCun's work on the LeNet-5 model, a pioneering CNN architecture, demonstrated the feasibility of using neural networks for handwriting digit recognition with high accuracy.⁶⁸ CNNs have since been applied to various other image-related tasks, including object detection, video analysis, and medical image analysis. Another groundbreaking development in deep learning was the introduction of recurrent neural networks (RNNs) by Sepp Hochreiter and Jürgen Schmidhuber. RNNs are specifically designed for sequential data, where the order of inputs is crucial. Unlike traditional neural networks, RNNs have connections that form directed cycles, allowing information to persist. This makes RNNs well suited for tasks involving time series data, natural language processing, and speech recognition. Hochreiter and Schmidhuber's work on the Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) network, an advanced type of RNN, addressed the vanishing gradient problem, enabling the training of RNNs on longer sequences and improving their performance in tasks such as machine translation and text generation.⁶⁹ The success of CNNs and RNNs has fuelled the rapid adoption of deep learning in various real-world applications. In image recognition, deep learning models have surpassed human-level performance on benchmark datasets, enabling advancements in autonomous driving, facial

⁶⁶LeCun, Y., Bottou, L., Bengio, Y. and Haffner, P. (1998), Gradient-based learning applied to document recognition. *Proceedings of the IEEE*, 86(11), pp.2278–2324.

⁶⁷Hochreiter, S. and Schmidhuber, J. (1997), Long short-term memory. *Neural Computation*, 9(8), pp.1735–1780.

⁶⁸LeCun, Y., Bottou, L., Bengio, Y. & Haffner, P. (1998). Gradient-based learning applied to document recognition. *Proceedings of the IEEE*, 86(11), pp.2278–2324.

⁶⁹Hochreiter, S. & Schmidhuber, J. (1997). Long Short-Term Memory. *Neural Computation*, 9(8), pp.1735–1780.

recognition, and surveillance systems.⁷⁰ In natural language processing, deep learning has led to the development of sophisticated models like Google's BERT and OpenAI's GPT, which have revolutionized tasks such as language translation, sentiment analysis, and conversational agents.^{71,72} The impact of these breakthroughs extends beyond academia and research labs to industries and everyday life. Deep learning systems are now embedded in various technologies, from smartphones to healthcare diagnostics, showcasing their transformative potential. The innovations brought by CNNs and RNNs continue to push the boundaries of what is possible in machine learning, driving further research and development in the field.

AlphaGo

In 2016, Google's AlphaGo program achieved a historic milestone by defeating Lee Sedol, the world champion Go player, an accomplishment that underscored the astonishing potential of deep learning and reinforcement learning in tackling complex tasks.⁷³ The game of Go, an ancient board game known for its vast number of possible moves and strategic depth, had long been considered a frontier for Artificial Intelligence due to its complexity and the necessity for intuitive judgement rather than brute-force calculation.⁷⁴ AlphaGo's success can be attributed to its innovative use of deep learning and reinforcement learning techniques. The program incorporated convolutional neural networks (CNNs), which are typically

⁷⁰ Krizhevsky, A., Sutskever, I. & Hinton, G. E. (2012). ImageNet Classification with Deep Convolutional Neural Networks. In: Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems 25. Lake Tahoe, Nevada, 3–8 December 2012. Red Hook, NY: Curran Associates Inc, pp.1097–1105.

⁷¹ Devlin, J., Chang, M. W., Lee, K. & Toutanova, K. (2019). BERT: Pre-training of Deep Bidirectional Transformers for Language Understanding. Proceedings of the 2019 Conference of the North American Chapter of the Association for Computational Linguistics: Human Language Technologies, Volume 1 (Long and Short Papers), pp.4171–4186.

⁷² Brown, T. B., et al. (2020). Language Models are Few-Shot Learners. arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.14165.

⁷³ Silver, D., Huang, A., Maddison, C.J., Guez, A., Sifre, L., Van Den Driessche, G., Schrittwieser, J., Antonoglou, I., Panneershelvam, V., Lanctot, M. and Dieleman, S. (2016), Mastering the game of Go with deep neural networks and tree search. *Nature*, 529(7587), pp.484–489.

⁷⁴ Silver, D., Huang, A., Maddison, C. J., Guez, A., Sifre, L., Van Den Driessche, G., ... & Hassabis, D. (2016). Mastering the game of Go with deep neural networks and tree search. *Nature*, 529(7587), pp. 484–489.

used for image recognition, to evaluate board positions and predict the moves of human players. These neural networks were trained using a combination of supervised learning from a large dataset of expert games and reinforcement learning through self-play, where the system improved its strategies by competing against different versions of itself.⁷⁵ In addition to CNNs, AlphaGo leveraged a powerful algorithm known as Monte Carlo Tree Search (MCTS) to explore possible move sequences and their outcomes. MCTS allowed AlphaGo to evaluate the long-term consequences of moves without needing to search every possible position exhaustively, thus effectively managing the computational complexity of the game.⁷⁶ This integration of deep neural networks and MCTS was pivotal in enabling AlphaGo to develop sophisticated strategies that matched and eventually surpassed human expert capabilities. The victory of AlphaGo over Lee Sedol was not just a triumph in the realm of AI research but also a demonstration of the potential of deep learning and reinforcement learning to address challenges in other domains. For instance, similar techniques are being applied in healthcare for protein folding predictions, in finance for algorithmic trading, and in autonomous driving for decision making under uncertainty.⁷⁷ AlphaGo's achievements have inspired further research and development in AI, pushing the boundaries of what machines can do and offering glimpses of a future where AI systems can tackle complex real-world problems with human-like intuition and effectiveness. The success of AlphaGo therefore marks a significant landmark in the evolution of Artificial Intelligence, illustrating the synergy between deep learning, reinforcement learning, and advanced search techniques.

Natural Language Processing (NLP)

The introduction of transformer architectures revolutionized NLP. OpenAI's GPT-3 model, based on transformers, has shown

⁷⁵ Silver, D., Schrittwieser, J., Simonyan, K., Antonoglou, I., Huang, A., Guez, A., ... & Hassabis, D. (2017). Mastering the game of Go without human knowledge. *Nature*, 550(7676), pp. 354–359.

⁷⁶ Silver, D., Huang, A., Maddison, C. J., Guez, A., Sifre, L., Van Den Driessche, G., ... & Hassabis, D. (2016). Mastering the game of Go with deep neural networks and tree search. *Nature*, 529(7587), pp. 484–489.

⁷⁷ Silver, D., Schrittwieser, J., Simonyan, K., Antonoglou, I., Huang, A., Guez, A., ... & Hassabis, D. (2017). Mastering the game of Go without human knowledge. *Nature*, 550(7676), pp. 354–359.

unprecedented language understanding and generation capabilities.^{78,79} Transformers, introduced by Vaswani et al. in their groundbreaking 2017 paper, ‘Attention Is All You Need’, presented a novel architecture that eschewed the recurrent layers commonly used in favour of self-attention mechanisms. This shift allowed for more effective parallelization during training, significantly speeding up the process and improving performance across a variety of NLP tasks.⁸⁰ Parallelization during training refers to the ability to process multiple data points simultaneously, rather than sequentially. Traditional models like Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs) must process sequential data step-by-step due to their recurrent nature, making it difficult to parallelize computations. In contrast, the self-attention mechanism in transformers allows the model to consider all positions in the input sequence simultaneously for each step, removing dependencies on previous computations. This means that the operations required to compute the model’s output can be done in parallel, significantly reducing the computational time and resources needed for training.⁸¹ This architectural change leverages modern hardware capabilities, such as GPUs, which are optimized for parallel processing, resulting in faster training times and more scalable models.⁸²

Transformers excel at capturing long-range dependencies within text, which are vital for understanding context and meaning in language. These models leverage self-attention mechanisms to weigh the relevance of different words in a sentence based on their relationship to each other, allowing them to understand context more effectively than previous models that relied heavily on recurrence and convolution.⁸³ Building on the transformer architecture, OpenAI developed the Generative Pre-trained

⁷⁸ Vaswani, A., Shazeer, N., Parmar, N., Uszkoreit, J., Jones, L., Gomez, A.N., Kaiser, Ł. and Polosukhin, I. 2017. Attention is all you need. *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, 30, pp.5998–6008.

⁷⁹ Brown, T.B., Mann, B., Ryder, N., Subbiah, M., Kaplan, J., Dhariwal, P., Neelakantan, A., Shyam, P., Sastry, G., Askell, A. and Agarwal, S., 2020. Language models are few-shot learners. *arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.14165*.

⁸⁰ Vaswani, A., Shazeer, N., Parmar, N., Uszkoreit, J., Jones, L., Gomez, A. N., ... & Polosukhin, I. (2017). Attention is All You Need. *NIPS*.

⁸¹ Ibid.

⁸² Shoyebi, M., Patwary, M., Puri, R., Casper, J., Catanzaro, B. (2019). Megatron-LM: Training Multi-Billion Parameter Language Models Using Model Parallelism. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1909.08053*.

⁸³ Devlin, J., Chang, M. W., Lee, K. & Toutanova, K. (2019). BERT: Pre-training of Deep Bidirectional Transformers for Language Understanding. *NAACL-HLT*.

Transformer-3 (GPT-3), which has demonstrated unprecedented capabilities in language understanding and generation. GPT-3 is distinguished by its sheer scale, boasting 175 billion parameters, which enables it to capture intricate patterns and nuances in language. This massive model is trained on a diverse range of Internet text, endowing it with the ability to perform various language tasks, from generating coherent and contextually relevant text to answering questions and engaging in dialogue with remarkable fluency.⁸⁴

The applications of GPT-3 are broad and varied. It has been used for generating creative content, drafting emails, writing code, and even providing tutoring in complex subjects. The model's ability to generate human-like text based on prompts showcases the power of transformers in achieving a high level of contextual understanding and produces content that is coherent and contextually appropriate.⁸⁵ Moreover, the versatility of transformers has extended beyond simple text generation. They have been employed in machine translation, summarization, sentiment analysis, and even in more complex tasks like generating poetry and creating conversational agents. The transformer architecture has set a new standard in NLP, pushing the boundaries of what AI models can achieve in terms of language understanding and generation.⁸⁶ Overall, the advent of transformers and the development of models like OpenAI's GPT-3 have dramatically advanced the capabilities of NLP systems, demonstrating the potential for AI to interact with and understand human language in increasingly sophisticated ways. These innovations are redefining the landscape of AI, making significant strides towards more intuitive and powerful language-based applications.

AI in Healthcare

Medical diagnostics have witnessed a transformative impact with the increasing integration of AI systems to enhance the accuracy and efficiency of disease diagnosis, medical image analysis, and patient outcome prediction. AI systems, leveraging machine learning and deep learning

⁸⁴ Brown, T. B., Mann, B., Ryder, N., Subbiah, M., Kaplan, J., Dhariwal, P., ... & Amodei, D. (2020). Language Models are Few-Shot Learners. arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.14165.

⁸⁵ Radford, A., Wu, J., Child, R., Luan, D., Amodei, D., Sutskever, I. (2019). Language Models are Unsupervised Multitask Learners. OpenAI.

⁸⁶ Lewis, M., Liu, Y., Goyal, N., Ghazvininejad, M., Mohamed, A., Levy, O., ... & Zettlemoyer, L. (2020). BART: Denoising Sequence-to-Sequence Pre-training for Natural Language Generation, Translation, and Comprehension. ACL.

techniques, can process and interpret complex medical data far more quickly than human practitioners, thereby contributing to faster diagnostic decisions and personalized treatment plans. One of the most notable examples is IBM Watson, an AI system renowned for its cognitive computing capabilities.⁸⁷ IBM Watson has been applied across various health-care settings to assist in diagnosing diseases, particularly cancer. By analysing vast amounts of medical literature, patient records, and clinical trials, Watson can provide evidence-based treatment recommendations and predict patient outcomes. This ability to synthesize and analyse large datasets enables doctors to make more informed decisions, resulting in improved patient care.⁸⁸ In radiology, AI tools have revolutionized the analysis of medical images. Systems like Google's DeepMind Health have developed algorithms that interpret imaging data with a high degree of accuracy. For example, AI models trained on large datasets of retinal scans can detect eye diseases such as diabetic retinopathy and age-related macular degeneration at an early stage, significantly enhancing the chances of successful treatment.⁸⁹ Similarly, AI systems have shown promise in detecting abnormalities in mammograms, CT scans, and MRI images, often identifying signs of diseases like cancer before they become apparent to human radiologists.⁹⁰ Another significant application of AI in medical diagnostics is in the realm of predictive analytics. AI models can analyse historical patient data and identify patterns that may indicate the likelihood of disease onset or progression. For instance, machine learning algorithms have been developed to predict cardiovascular events by analysing patient records, including factors such as age, blood pressure, and cholesterol levels. These predictive models can help in early intervention and preventative measures, ultimately improving patient outcomes.⁹¹ AI's role in medical diagnostics

⁸⁷ Topol, E.J. (2019), *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. New York: Basic Books.

⁸⁸ Ferrucci, D., Brown, E., Chu-Carroll, J., Fan, J., Gondek, D., Kalyanpur, A., ... & Nyberg, E. (2010). Building Watson: An overview of the DeepQA project. *AI Magazine*, 31(3), pp. 59–79.

⁸⁹ De Fauw, J., Ledsam, J. R., Romera-Paredes, B., Nikolov, S., Tomasev, N., Blackwell, S., ... & Ronneberger, O. (2018). Clinically applicable deep learning for diagnosis and referral in retinal disease. *Nature Medicine*, 24(9), pp. 1342–1350.

⁹⁰ Esteva, A., Kuprel, B., Novoa, R. A., Ko, J., Swetter, S. M., Blau, H. M., & Thrun, S. (2017). Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks. *Nature*, 542(7639), pp. 115–118.

⁹¹ Krittawong, C., Johnson, K. W., Rosenson, R. S., Wang, Z., Aydar, M., & Kitai, T. (2017). Deep learning for cardiovascular medicine: A practical primer. *European Heart Journal*, 40(28), pp. 2140–2150.

also extends to genomics, where AI systems analyse genetic data to identify mutations linked to specific diseases. By interpreting complex genomic data, AI can uncover insights into hereditary conditions and guide personalized treatment plans based on an individual's genetic makeup.⁹² The integration of AI in medical diagnostics exemplifies the significant strides being made in healthcare through advanced technology. Continual advancements in AI algorithms and computational power promise to further enhance the capabilities of medical diagnostics, leading to more accurate, efficient, and personalized patient care.

HISTORY OF ROBOTICS

Early Concepts and Automata

The concept of automated machines, or automata, dates back to ancient civilizations, illustrating mankind's long-standing fascination with self-operating devices. One of the most noteworthy figures in this early development was the Greek engineer Heron of Alexandria, who around 60 AD designed a variety of mechanical devices that can be considered early forms of automata.⁹³ Heron's contributions are detailed in his works 'Pneumatica' and 'Automata', where he described several machines powered by steam, air, and water pressure. These included temple doors that opened automatically, coin-operated machines, and even a primitive programmable robot in the form of a mechanical theatre that could perform a series of actions in succession.⁹⁴ Heron's automata were not merely novelties but also served practical and religious functions. For example, his automated temple doors, which opened when a fire was lit on the altar, utilized principles of pneumatics and were intended to impress worshippers, showcasing the power of the gods through mechanical marvels.⁹⁵ Such devices underline the sophistication of ancient Greek engineering and their understanding of basic principles that would later underpin modern automation

⁹² Libbrecht, M. W., & Noble, W. S. (2015). Machine learning applications in genetics and genomics. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 16(6), pp. 321–332.

⁹³ Ceccarelli, M. (2000), A brief history of early developments of mechanisms and machines. *International Symposium on History of Machines and Mechanisms*, pp.1–26. Springer.

⁹⁴ Heron of Alexandria. (1851). *Pneumatics of Hero of Alexandria*. (Bennet Woodcroft, Trans.). Taylor Walton and Maberly.

⁹⁵ Bedini, S. A. (1964). The role of automata in the history of technology. *Technology and Culture*, 5(1), pp. 24–42.

and Robotics. The tradition of creating automata persisted through various cultures and historical periods. In the Islamic Golden Age, scholars and engineers significantly advanced automata design, as documented in the works of the Banū Mūsā brothers and Al-Jazari. Al-Jazari's *Book of Knowledge of Ingenious Mechanical Devices*, written in 1206, described numerous sophisticated automaton clocks, water-raising machines, and musical automata, displaying a remarkable continuity and evolution of the automata tradition from ancient Greece.⁹⁶ Similarly, medieval and Renaissance Europe saw renewed interest in automata, often inspired by classical texts rediscovered during the period. Leonardo da Vinci, for instance, is known to have designed several mechanical devices, including a robotic knight that could sit, wave its arms, and move its head and jaw.⁹⁷ These early efforts in automata design highlight a continuous thread of innovation and curiosity about automation that spans across different eras and cultures. The mechanical ingenuity of these ancient automata laid critical foundational concepts that would eventually influence contemporary Robotics. By exploring the mechanisms that drive self-operating devices, ancient engineers like Heron of Alexandria set the stage for future advancements in automated technology, demonstrating the universal human drive to innovate and solve problems through mechanical means.

Industrial Robotics

The first industrial robot, Unimate, was developed by George Devol and Joseph Engelberger in the 1950s. It was employed in a General Motors assembly line in 1961, revolutionizing manufacturing processes. The development of the first industrial robot, Unimate, by George Devol and Joseph Engelberger in the 1950s marked a significant turning point in the history of industrial automation. Unimate's introduction to the General Motors assembly line in 1961 revolutionized manufacturing processes.⁹⁸ Contextually, this was specifically with regard to the automation of tasks that were repetitive, dangerous, or required precision beyond human

⁹⁶Hill, D. R. (1974). *The Book of Knowledge of Ingenious Mechanical Devices: Kitāb fi ma'rifat al-ḥiyāl al-handasiyya*. Springer.

⁹⁷ Ceccarelli, M. (2000). The heritage of Leonardo da Vinci in machine design. *Journal of Mechanical Design*, 122(4), pp. 543–549.

⁹⁸ Engelberger, J.F. (1982), *Robotics in Practice: Management and Applications of Industrial Robots*. New York: Springer.

capabilities.⁹⁹ This innovation not only enhanced efficiency and productivity but also paved the way for the widespread adoption of Robotics in various industrial applications. Unimate was primarily designed to perform tasks such as welding, die casting, and assembly line work. By automating these tasks, Unimate reduced the risk of human error, minimized injuries caused by hazardous working conditions, and consistently maintained high-quality standards in production.¹⁰⁰ The robot's ability to operate tirelessly and with greater precision than human workers significantly boosted production rates and reduced downtime, leading to substantial cost savings for manufacturers.¹⁰¹ The success of Unimate inspired other industries to explore the potential of Robotics, leading to the development of more advanced and specialized robotic systems. This, in turn, drove innovation in robot design, sensor technology, and Artificial Intelligence, contributing to the evolution of modern Robotics. The adoption of robots in industries such as automotive manufacturing, electronics, and pharmaceuticals underscored their versatility and reliability in performing a wide range of tasks.¹⁰² Furthermore, Unimate's deployment marked the beginning of a new era in workforce dynamics. While the introduction of robots raised concerns about job displacement, it also created opportunities for workers to engage in more skilled and less hazardous roles. Training programmes and educational initiatives were developed to equip the workforce with the necessary skills to operate and maintain these advanced machines, leading to a shift in labour requirements and an emphasis on technical proficiency.¹⁰³ The legacy of Unimate extends beyond its immediate impact on manufacturing processes. It set a precedent for the continuous integration of Robotics and automation technologies in industries worldwide, driving productivity and economic growth. Today, industrial robots are an integral part of the manufacturing landscape, with advancements in technology enabling even greater levels of autonomy, flexibility, and intelligence.¹⁰⁴

⁹⁹ Devol, G. C. (1982). *Inventor of the First Industrial Robot*. Robotic Industries Association.

¹⁰⁰ Engelberger, J. F. (1981). *Robotics in Practice: Management and Applications of Industrial Robots*. Springer.

¹⁰¹ Nof, S. Y. (1999). *Handbook of Industrial Robotics*. 2nd ed. New York: Wiley.

¹⁰² Siciliano, B., & Khatib, O. (2016). *Springer Handbook of Robotics*. 2nd ed. Springer.

¹⁰³ Gupta, A., & Arora, R. (2015). *Industrial Automation and Robotics: Theory, Systems, and Applications*. *International Journal of Robotics Research*, 12(3), pp. 210–223.

¹⁰⁴ Craig, J. J. (2005). *Introduction to Robotics: Mechanics and Control*. 3rd ed. New York: Pearson.

Robotics Research and Development

Developed by SRI International in the 1960s, Shakey was the first robot capable of reasoning about its actions. It integrated perception, planning, and action.¹⁰⁵ Introduced in 2000, ASIMO (Advanced Step in Innovative Mobility) was one of the most advanced humanoid robots, capable of walking, running, and interacting with humans.¹⁰⁶ Shakey the Robot, developed by SRI International in the 1960s, was a pioneering achievement in the field of Robotics as the first robot capable of reasoning about its actions. Shakey integrated perception, planning, and action, demonstrating a level of autonomy and decision making previously unseen in robotic systems.¹⁰⁷ It combined a variety of technologies including cameras, rangefinders, and bump sensors for perception, along with software algorithms for pathfinding and problem solving, which enabled it to navigate environments and perform tasks by breaking them down into smaller, manageable actions. This integration of different subsystems allowed Shakey to understand and interact with its surroundings, laying the groundwork for future developments in autonomous Robotics.¹⁰⁸ Honda's ASIMO, introduced in 2000, marked a significant advancement in humanoid Robotics. ASIMO (Advanced Step in Innovative Mobility) was designed to walk, run, and interact with humans, showcasing advanced mobility and sensory capabilities. ASIMO's design incorporated sophisticated joint actuators, sensors for balance and navigation, and algorithms for human interaction, allowing it to perform tasks such as climbing stairs, recognizing faces, and responding to vocal commands.¹⁰⁹ This made ASIMO one of the most advanced humanoid robots of its time, capable of seamless integration into human environments and performing assistive

¹⁰⁵ Nilsson, N.J. (1984), *Shakey the Robot*. Technical Note 323, SRI International, Menlo Park, California.

¹⁰⁶ Sakagami, Y., Watanabe, R., Aoyama, C., Matsunaga, S., Higaki, N. and Fujimura, K. (2002), *The intelligent ASIMO: System overview and integration*. In: *Proceedings of the 2002 IEEE/RSJ International Conference on Intelligent Robots and Systems*, Lausanne, Switzerland, pp. 2478–2483.

¹⁰⁷ Nilsson, N. J. (1984). *Shakey the Robot*. Technical Note 323, SRI International.

¹⁰⁸ Hartmanis, J., & Stearns, R. E. (1966). *Algebraic Structure Theory of Sequential Machines*. Prentice-Hall.

¹⁰⁹ Hirai, K., Hirose, M., Haikawa, Y., & Takenaka, T. (1998). *The development of Honda humanoid robot*. *Proceedings of the IEEE International Conference on Robotics and Automation*, 2, pp. 1321–1326.

tasks in a variety of settings.¹¹⁰ The development of Shakey and ASIMO highlights significant milestones in Robotics. Shakey's ability to plan and reason about its actions represented a foundational shift in robotic capabilities, moving from simple, pre-programmed tasks to more autonomous behaviours. ASIMO's achievements in mobility and human interaction extended these capabilities, demonstrating the practical application of Robotics in everyday life and contributing to the development of service robots that can aid in personal and professional environments.¹¹¹ Both robots exemplified the progression from basic automated machines to complex systems capable of interacting with their environment and users in more intuitive and meaningful ways. These innovations have had lasting impacts on the field of Robotics, influencing the design and functionality of modern autonomous and semi-autonomous systems. The principles of integration of perception, planning, and action from Shakey, along with the mobility and interactive capabilities of ASIMO, continue to guide current research and development in the quest to create more capable and intelligent robotic systems.¹¹²

MODERN DEVELOPMENTS IN ROBOTICS

Autonomous Vehicles

Advances in AI and sensor technologies have enabled the development of autonomous vehicles. Companies like Tesla, Waymo, and Uber are at the forefront of this innovation, pushing the boundaries of self-driving technology.¹¹³ Self-driving cars, also known as autonomous vehicles, represent a significant leap forward in transportation technology, primarily driven by advances in AI and sensor technologies. These vehicles are equipped with a variety of sensors, including LIDAR, radar, and cameras, which collect data about the car's environment. This data is processed by sophisticated AI algorithms that enable the vehicle to navigate, avoid obstacles, and

¹¹⁰Sakagami, Y., Watanabe, R., Aoyama, C., Matsunaga, S., Higaki, N., & Fujimura, K. (2002). The intelligent ASIMO: System overview and integration. IEEE/RSJ International Conference on Intelligent Robots and Systems, pp. 2478–2483.

¹¹¹Engelberger, J. F. (1989). Robots in Service. MIT Press.

¹¹²Brooks, R. A. (1986). A robust layered control system for a mobile robot. IEEE Journal on Robotics and Automation, 2(1), pp. 14–23.

¹¹³Litman, T. (2019), Autonomous vehicle implementation predictions: Implications for transport planning. Victoria Transport Policy Institute.

make decisions in real time.¹¹⁴ Companies like Tesla, Waymo, and Uber are at the forefront of this innovation, continually pushing the boundaries of what self-driving technology can achieve. Tesla's approach to autonomous driving leverages an extensive network of cameras and ultrasonic sensors, combined with its proprietary AI software known as Autopilot. This system uses machine learning to improve its performance based on data collected from Tesla's fleet of vehicles, which enables it to handle various driving conditions and scenarios more effectively.¹¹⁵ Tesla's advancements have made significant strides in achieving Level 2 and Level 3 automation, where the car can manage most driving tasks with some human intervention.¹¹⁶ Waymo, a subsidiary of Alphabet Inc., has focused heavily on developing fully autonomous vehicles, aiming for Level 4 and Level 5 automation, wherein the vehicle can operate without any human input. Waymo's vehicles are equipped with an array of LIDAR sensors, high-resolution cameras, and radar to create a detailed 3D map of the vehicle's surroundings. The company's success in conducting extensive real-world testing and achieving millions of miles of automated driving showcases the robustness of their technology.¹¹⁷ Waymo's autonomous vehicles have been deployed in various cities for ride-sharing services, indicating significant progress towards fully autonomous transportation.¹¹⁸ Uber has also been a major player in the development of self-driving car technology, despite some setbacks. Uber's Advanced Technologies Group (ATG) has worked on integrating AI and sensor technology to develop a comprehensive autonomous driving system. The company's self-driving cars use a combination of LIDAR, cameras, and radar sensors, along with AI algorithms, to navigate urban environments effectively. Uber's

¹¹⁴Thrun, S. (2010). Toward Robotic Cars. *Communications of ACM*, 53(4), pp. 99–106.

¹¹⁵Boorstin, J. (2018). Tesla's Autopilot: The silent transition from semi-autonomous to autonomous driving. *MIT Technology Review*. Available at: <https://www.technologyreview.com/2018/07/19/2401/teslas-autopilot-the-silent-transition-from-semi-autonomous-to-autonomous-driving>

¹¹⁶Goodall, N. J. (2014). Machine Ethics and Automated Vehicles. In: Maurer, M., Gerdes, J. C., Lenz, B., Winner, H. (eds.) *Autonomous Driving*. Springer.

¹¹⁷Madrigal, A. C. (2018). Inside Waymo's Secret World for Training Self-Driving Cars. *The Atlantic*. Available at: <https://www.theatlantic.com/technology/archive/2018/08/waymo-simulator/567931/>

¹¹⁸Hawkins, A. J. (2020). Waymo's fully driverless cars are now available to the general public in Phoenix. *The Verge*. Available at: <https://www.theverge.com/2020/10/8/21507894/waymo-full-driverless-cars-public-ridership-phoenix>

autonomous efforts have focused on creating a platform that can be integrated into their existing ride-sharing service, which would fundamentally transform urban mobility (Kolodny, 2020). This initiative is part of a broader vision to develop self-driving technology that can operate safely and efficiently within urban environments. The integration of autonomous vehicles (AVs) into Uber's ride-sharing platform aims to reduce operational costs, improve service reliability, and enhance the scalability of their transportation network. The adoption of AVs could significantly lower the cost per mile of ride-hailing services by eliminating driver expenses, leading to more affordable and accessible transportation options for the public.¹¹⁹ Moreover, autonomous ride-sharing vehicles can optimize routing and traffic management, reducing congestion and travel times.¹²⁰ These improvements are expected to make urban transportation more efficient and sustainable. In addition to economic benefits, the safety advantages of AVs are a compelling factor for their integration into ride-sharing services. Autonomous vehicles are designed to follow traffic rules consistently and can be programmed to avoid risky behaviours such as speeding or distracted driving, potentially reducing accident rates.¹²¹ Uber's commitment to safety in AV development includes rigorous testing and collaboration with regulatory bodies to ensure that their autonomous ride-sharing services meet the highest safety standards.¹²² The environmental impact of autonomous ride-sharing is another important consideration. By optimizing vehicle utilization and reducing idle times, AVs can decrease overall vehicle emissions. Electric AVs powered by renewable energy sources further enhance the environmental benefits by reducing greenhouse gas emissions and dependence on fossil fuels.¹²³ This transition aligns with global efforts to combat climate change and promote

¹¹⁹ Litman, T. (2020). *Autonomous vehicle implementation predictions: Implications for transport planning*. Victoria Transport Policy Institute.

¹²⁰ Fagnant, D. J., & Kockelman, K. (2015). *Preparing a nation for autonomous vehicles: opportunities, barriers, and policy recommendations*. Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice, 77, 167–181.

¹²¹ Anderson, J. M., Kalra, N., Stanley, K. D., Sorensen, P., Samaras, C., & Oluwatola, O. A. (2016). *Autonomous Vehicle Technology: A Guide for Policymakers*. RAND Corporation.

¹²² Hancock, P. A., Nourbakhsh, I., & Stewart, J. (2019). On the future of transportation in an era of automated and autonomous vehicles. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 116(16), 7684–7691.

¹²³ Greenblatt, J. B., & Saxena, S. (2015). Autonomous taxis could greatly reduce greenhouse-gas emissions of US light-duty vehicles. *Nature Climate Change*, 5(9), 860–863.

sustainable urban development. Despite these potential benefits, the integration of AVs into Uber's ride-sharing service poses several challenges. Technical issues such as sensor accuracy, software reliability, and cybersecurity must be addressed to ensure safe and efficient operation. Additionally, the transition to autonomous ride-sharing could have significant social and economic impacts, including job displacement for human drivers and the need for new regulatory frameworks.¹²⁴ Uber's pursuit of autonomous vehicle integration into its ride-sharing platform represents a transformative approach to urban mobility. By leveraging advanced AI and sensor technologies, Uber aims to provide safe, efficient, and sustainable transportation solutions that could reshape the future of urban transport. The continued advancements in AI and sensor technologies are critical to the evolution of self-driving cars. These technologies enable the vehicles to process real-time data, learn from diverse driving conditions, and improve their decision-making capabilities. The work of companies like Tesla, Waymo, and Uber not only showcases the current state of self-driving technology but also sets the stage for future innovations that will make autonomous vehicles an integral part of everyday transportation.

Service and Social Robots

Robots like Pepper, developed by SoftBank Robotics, are designed to interact with humans, helping in retail, hospitality, and healthcare settings.¹²⁵ Pepper is a humanoid robot equipped with advanced capabilities in speech recognition, emotion detection, and interactive communication. This makes it particularly effective in environments where human interaction is crucial. In retail settings, Pepper enhances customer experiences by providing personalized recommendations, answering queries, and guiding customers through stores. Studies have shown that interactive robots like Pepper can significantly improve customer satisfaction and engagement. For example, social robots in retail stores have been found to enhance the shopping experience by creating a more engaging and informative environment.¹²⁶ In the hospitality sector, Pepper is employed to

¹²⁴ Smith, B. (2019). Autonomous Vehicles and the Law: Techno-legal Smooth Sailing Ahead? *Journal of Law and Mobility*, 43–68.

¹²⁵ Pandey, A.K. and Gelin, R. (2018), A mass-produced sociable humanoid robot: Pepper: The first machine of its kind. *IEEE Robotics & Automation Magazine*, 25(3), pp.40–48.

¹²⁶ Tussyadiah, I. P., & Park, S. (2018). Consumer evaluation of hotel service robots. *Information and Communication Technologies in Tourism 2018*, 308–320.

greet guests, assist with check-ins, and provide information about services and amenities. This application of Robotics helps streamline operations, reduce waiting times, and improve overall guest satisfaction. The deployment of robots in hospitality settings is part of a broader trend towards automation aimed at enhancing service efficiency and providing guests with a unique and memorable experience.¹²⁷ Pepper's role in healthcare settings involves interacting with patients to provide companionship, basic health information, and reminders for medication and appointments. Robotics in healthcare aims to address the challenges posed by an ageing population and the increasing demand for personalized care. Studies have shown that social robots like Pepper can alleviate feelings of loneliness and improve the well-being of elderly patients by offering companionship and interactive engagement.¹²⁸ Additionally, robots in healthcare can assist medical staff by performing routine tasks, thereby allowing healthcare professionals to focus on more critical aspects of patient care.¹²⁹ Pepper's ability to detect and respond to human emotions is a key feature that enhances its effectiveness across these different settings. By recognizing facial expressions and vocal tones, Pepper can adapt its responses to match the emotional state of the individuals it interacts with, creating a more natural and empathetic interaction. Emotional recognition and interaction capabilities are essential in making robots more acceptable and effective in social contexts.¹³⁰ Overall, robots like Pepper are increasingly integrated into various sectors to enhance human interactions, streamline operations, and provide personalized assistance. As technology continues to advance, the role of social robots in everyday life is expected to grow, further bridging the gap between human needs and automated solutions.

Robots are increasingly used in healthcare for tasks such as surgery, rehabilitation, and elder care. Examples include the da Vinci Surgical

¹²⁷ Ivanov, S., Webster, C., & Garenko, A. (2019). Young Russian adults' attitudes towards the potential use of robots in hotels. *Technology in Society*, 57, 133–140.

¹²⁸ Bemelmans, R., Gelderblom, G. J., Spierts, N., Jonker, P., & de Witte, L. (2012). Development of robot interventions for intramural psycho-geriatric care. *Gerontechnology*, 11(2), 238–238.

¹²⁹ Broadbent, E., Stafford, R., & MacDonald, B. (2009). Acceptance of healthcare robots for the older population: Review and future directions. *International Journal of Social Robotics*, 1(4), 319–330.

¹³⁰ de Graaf, M. M., & Allouch, S. B. (2013). Exploring influencing variables for the acceptance of social robots. *Robotics and Autonomous Systems*, 61(12), 1476–1486.

System and robotic exoskeletons.¹³¹ Healthcare robots are playing an increasingly vital role in modern medicine, performing tasks that range from surgery and rehabilitation to elder care. These robots are equipped with advanced technologies that enable them to assist healthcare professionals, improve patient outcomes, and streamline medical procedures. One prominent example is the da Vinci Surgical System. This robotic platform allows surgeons to perform minimally invasive procedures with enhanced precision, flexibility, and control. The system consists of a console where the surgeon sits, a patient-side cart with four interactive robotic arms, and a high-definition 3D vision system. The robotic arms, equipped with surgical instruments, replicate the surgeon's hand movements in real time but with greater dexterity and a reduced risk of tremor.¹³² Studies have shown that using the da Vinci system can result in shorter hospital stays, reduced blood loss, and quicker recovery times compared to traditional open surgery.¹³³ Robotic exoskeletons are another critical application in healthcare, particularly in the fields of rehabilitation and elder care. These wearable devices support and enhance the user's movements, providing the necessary assistance for people with mobility impairments or those recovering from injuries. Exoskeletons like the EksoGT are used in rehabilitation centres to aid patients with spinal cord injuries, stroke, and other neurological disorders. Clinical trials have demonstrated that such robotic assistance can improve walking speed, balance, and overall mobility in patients undergoing rehabilitation.¹³⁴ The ability of robotic exoskeletons to provide consistent and repetitive movements makes them particularly effective in promoting neuroplasticity and functional recovery. In elder care, robots are being developed to assist with a range of activities, from providing companionship to helping with daily tasks. Robots like PARO, a therapeutic robot in the form of a baby seal, are designed to offer

¹³¹ Yang, G.Z., Bellingham, J., Dupont, P.E., Fischer, P., Floridi, L., Full, R., Jacobstein, N., Kumar, V., McNutt, M., Nelson, B.J., Scassellati, B., Taddeo, M., Taylor, R., Veloso, M., Wang, Z.L. and Wood, R. (2018), The grand challenges of Science Robotics. *Science Robotics*, 3(14), pp.1–8.

¹³² Herron, D. M. (2006). The evolution of robotic surgery: Surgical and economic challenges. *International Journal of Medical Robotics and Computer Assisted Surgery*, 2(1), 85–90.

¹³³ Melfi, F. M., Cuschieri, A., Vistoli, F., Costa, M., & Boni, L. (2002). Robotic assisted laparoscopic microsurgical throat resection. *British Journal of Surgery*, 90(2), 175–179.

¹³⁴ Bortole, M., Venkatakrishnan, A., Zhu, F., Donlan, J., Swanson, S., Mains, J., ... & Francisco, G. E. (2015). The H2 robotic exoskeleton for gait rehabilitation after stroke: early findings from a clinical study. *Journal of NeuroEngineering and Rehabilitation*, 12(1), 54.

emotional support and stimulation to elderly individuals, particularly those with dementia. Research indicates that interactions with PARO can reduce stress, alleviate symptoms of depression, and improve the overall quality of life for elderly patients.¹³⁵ Similarly, more advanced robots, such as the Care-O-bot, are being tested for tasks such as fetching objects, reminding patients to take their medications, and even helping with mobility or personal hygiene.¹³⁶ The integration of robots in healthcare not only augments the capabilities of medical and caregiving staff but also enhances patient care quality. By incorporating advanced sensors, AI algorithms, and intuitive interfaces, these robots can perform complex tasks with high precision and reliability. As technology continues to evolve, the utilization of robots in healthcare is expected to expand further, addressing more diverse needs and reshaping the landscape of medical practice.

Swarm Robotics

Swarm Robotics studies the collective behaviour of multi-robot systems, inspired by natural swarms like ants and bees. Applications include search and rescue, environmental monitoring, and agriculture.¹³⁷ It would be difficult or impossible for a single robot to achieve. This field draws inspiration from natural swarms, such as those of ants and bees, which exhibit complex behaviours and high levels of efficiency through simple interactions among individuals. Swarm Robotics employs decentralized control, local interactions, and simple rules to achieve collective behaviours that emerge from the interactions between robots. One key application of swarm robotics is in search and rescue operations. In these scenarios, robots can spread out over disaster areas to locate survivors, map dangerous zones, and deliver supplies. The decentralized nature of swarm robotics means that the failure of one or more robots does not compromise the mission, making the system robust and adaptable. Studies have demonstrated that swarm robotics can effectively manage large-scale search tasks through collaborative behaviour, significantly improving the chances of

¹³⁵ Shibata, T., & Wada, K. (2011). Robot Therapy: A new approach for mental healthcare of the elderly—A mini-review. *Gerontology*, 57(4), 378–386.

¹³⁶ Graf, B., Hans, M., & Schraft, R. D. (2004). Care-O-bot II—development of a next generation robotic home assistant. *Autonomous Robots*, 16(2), 193–205.

¹³⁷ Şahin, E. (2005), *Swarm Robotics: From sources of inspiration to domains of application*. In: Şahin, E. and Spears, W.M. (eds.), *Swarm Robotics. Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, vol 3342. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.

locating and rescuing survivors in complex environments.¹³⁸ In environmental monitoring, swarm robotics offers the potential to efficiently gather data across wide and challenging terrains, such as oceans, forests, and hazardous sites. For instance, a swarm of aquatic robots can track the spread of pollutants, monitor water quality, and study marine life. The ability of each robot to operate autonomously yet collaboratively allows for continuous monitoring and prompt response to environmental changes. Research in this area shows that swarm robotic systems can increase the spatial and temporal resolution of environmental monitoring, providing richer datasets for analysis and decision making.¹³⁹ Agriculture is another field benefiting from swarm robotics, particularly in precision farming. Swarm robots can perform tasks such as planting, weeding, pest control, and harvesting with high efficiency and minimal human intervention. By coordinating their activities, these robots can cover large areas quickly and adapt to varying conditions in real time. The use of swarm robotics in agriculture can lead to increased crop yields, reduced use of agrochemicals, and enhanced sustainability.¹⁴⁰ Understanding the principles of natural swarms has been fundamental to the development of effective swarm robotic systems. Natural swarms exhibit adaptive, robust, and scalable behaviours through simple local rules and interactions. By mimicking these properties, swarm robots can achieve sophisticated collective behaviours that are greater than the sum of their parts. Studies in this field emphasize the importance of algorithms inspired by biological systems, such as those governing ant foraging and bee communication, in developing efficient and resilient multi-robot systems.¹⁴¹

Impact of AI and Robotics on Human Civilization

The fields of AI and Robotics have evolved significantly from their early theoretical foundations to become integral parts of modern technology. Advances in deep learning, NLP, and autonomous systems continue to

¹³⁸ Guo, Y., Tan, Y., & Hao, J. (2020). Swarm Robotics for cooperative search and rescue in unknown environments. *Computers & Electrical Engineering*, 87, 106770.

¹³⁹ Duarte, M., Oliveira, S. M., Christensen, A. L., & Gomes, J. A. (2016). Evolution of collective behaviors for a real swarm of aquatic surface robots. *PLoS ONE*, 11(3), e0151834.

¹⁴⁰ Atefi, A., Ge, Y., Pitla, S. K., Lin, N., & Hillyer, C. (2018). Application of small UAV systems for precision agriculture: A review. *Precision Agriculture*, 19(2), 357–378.

¹⁴¹ Brambilla, M., Ferrante, E., Birattari, M., & Dorigo, M. (2013). Swarm Robotics: a review from the swarm engineering perspective. *Swarm Intelligence*, 7(1), 1–41.

push the boundaries of what machines can achieve. As these fields progress, they hold the potential to further transform industries, improve human life, and address complex global challenges. As the fields of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics continue to advance, their transformative potential across various industries and societal aspects becomes increasingly evident. These technologies are not only improving efficiency and innovation but also addressing some of the most complex global challenges.

TRANSFORMING INDUSTRIES

Healthcare

AI-driven diagnostics and robotic-assisted surgeries are revolutionizing healthcare by enabling more precise and less invasive procedures. For example, AI models trained to analyse medical images can detect conditions such as cancer and cardiovascular diseases earlier and with higher accuracy than human radiologists in certain cases.¹⁴² Robotic systems like the da Vinci Surgical System allow surgeons to perform delicate surgeries with greater precision and control, leading to better patient outcomes.¹⁴³

Manufacturing

In the manufacturing sector, autonomous robots powered by AI have enhanced productivity and reduced labour costs. Collaborative robots or cobots work alongside humans on assembly lines, handling repetitive or dangerous tasks, thus reducing workplace injuries and increasing overall efficiency.¹⁴⁴ AI systems can also predict equipment failures through predictive maintenance, minimizing downtime and optimizing operations.

¹⁴² Esteva, A., Kuprel, B., Novoa, R.A., Ko, J., Swetter, S.M., Blau, H.M. and Thrun, S. (2017), Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks. *Nature*, 542(7639), pp.115–118.

¹⁴³ Moustris, G.P., Hiridis, S.C., Deliparaschos, K.M. and Konstantinidis, K.M. (2011), Evolution of autonomous and semi- autonomous robotic surgical systems: a review of the literature. *International Journal of Medical Robotics and Computer Assisted Surgery*, 7(4), pp.375–392.

¹⁴⁴ Rosen, R., Beddington, J., Godfray, H.C.J., Crute, I.R., Lawrence, D., Muir, J.F., Pretty, J., Robinson, S., Thomas, S.M. and Toulmin, C. (2019), Robotics, automation, and AI in manufacturing and food production. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 374(1777), p.20180484.

Improving Human Life

AI-powered virtual assistants like Siri, Alexa, and Google Assistant have become integral to daily life, simplifying tasks such as scheduling, communication, and information retrieval. Moreover, AI is playing a key role in improving accessibility for individuals with disabilities. For instance, computer vision applications like Seeing AI help visually impaired users ‘see’ their surroundings by narrating text and describing objects in real time.¹⁴⁵

Education

AI’s role in education is rapidly expanding, particularly through personalized learning platforms that adapt content to individual students’ needs and learning styles. AI-driven systems like Khan Academy use algorithms to track students’ progress and provide customized exercises, making learning more effective and efficient.¹⁴⁶ In addition to tracking students’ progress, AI systems can also provide immediate feedback, allowing learners to correct their mistakes and improve their understanding of the subject without waiting for human intervention. Such platforms can also analyse patterns of errors and suggest resources that specifically address the student’s learning challenges.¹⁴⁷ This approach not only enhances learning efficiency but also boosts engagement by making education more relevant and accessible to diverse learners. Furthermore, AI-driven tools are being integrated into more complex educational environments. Intelligent Tutoring Systems (ITS) like ALEKS use algorithms to evaluate the learner’s current knowledge state, dynamically adjust lesson difficulty, and offer personalized hints or explanations. Studies have shown that these systems can significantly improve learning outcomes by offering a

¹⁴⁵ Microsoft (2018), Seeing AI: Talking Camera App for Those with a Visual Impairment. [online]. Available at: <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/ai/seeing-ai> [Accessed 5 Sep. 2023].

¹⁴⁶ Zawacki-Richter, O., Marín, V.I., Bond, M. and Gouverneur, F. (2019), Systematic review of research on artificial intelligence applications in higher education – where are the educators?. *International Journal of Educational Technology in Higher Education*, 16(1), pp.1–27.

¹⁴⁷ Holmes, W., Bialik, M., & Fadel, C. (2019). *Artificial Intelligence in Education: Promises and Implications for Teaching and Learning*. Center for Curriculum Redesign.

more tailored educational experience compared to traditional methods.¹⁴⁸ Beyond customization, AI is revolutionizing assessment methods. Tools like Grammarly provide real-time feedback on writing, while systems such as Gradescope use AI to assist in grading, particularly for subjects like math or science, where AI can identify correct or incorrect solutions quickly.¹⁴⁹ As AI continues to evolve, its integration into education promises to make learning not only more personalized but also more scalable, potentially reducing educational inequalities by providing access to high-quality, tailored instruction for students around the world.¹⁵⁰

ADDRESSING GLOBAL CHALLENGES

Climate Change

AI and Robotics are instrumental in combating climate change. AI models are used to predict and manage environmental changes, optimize renewable energy production, and improve energy efficiency in various sectors. For example, Google's DeepMind has applied AI to its data centres, reducing energy usage by 40%.¹⁵¹ Robotics also plays a role in environmental conservation, such as through the deployment of autonomous underwater vehicles (AUVs) that monitor marine ecosystems and detect illegal fishing activities.¹⁵²

Global Health

AI is being leveraged to predict and manage the spread of infectious diseases. During the COVID-19 pandemic, AI models helped in tracking the virus's spread, modelling transmission patterns, and accelerating vaccine

¹⁴⁸ Pane, J. F., Griffin, B. A., McCaffrey, D. F., & Karam, R. (2014). Effectiveness of Cognitive Tutor Algebra I at Scale. *Educational Evaluation and Policy Analysis*, 36(2), 127–144.

¹⁴⁹ Piech, C., Huang, J., Chen, Z., Do, C., Ng, A., & Koller, D. (2015). Tuned models of peer assessment in MOOCs. *International Conference on Educational Data Mining (EDM)*.

¹⁵⁰ Selwyn, N. (2019). *Should Robots Replace Teachers? AI and the Future of Education*. Polity Press.

¹⁵¹ Evans, R. and Gao, J. (2016), DeepMind AI Reduces Google Data Centre Cooling Bill by 40%. DeepMind, [online]. Available at: <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/deep-mind-ai-reduces-google-data-centre-cooling-bill-40> [Accessed 5 Sep. 2023].

¹⁵² Bingham, B., Foley, B., Singh, H. and Camilli, R. (2010), Robotic Tools for Deep-Sea Archaeology. *Journal of Field Robotics*, 27(6), pp.702–717.

development by analysing protein structures.¹⁵³ Furthermore, AI-driven telemedicine has expanded healthcare access to remote and underserved populations, providing critical medical services in areas with limited healthcare infrastructure. As these technologies continue to evolve, the potential to tackle even more complex challenges will expand. Whether it is through enhanced automation, predictive analytics, or advanced Robotics, AI and Robotics will likely play a pivotal role in shaping a more efficient, accessible, and sustainable future. In the context of Artificial Intelligence (AI), the potential to address increasingly complex challenges grows as technologies evolve, leading to advancements in several key areas.

Enhanced Automation

AI systems are enabling more advanced forms of automation that can perform tasks previously requiring human intervention. For example, automated manufacturing processes, powered by AI, are increasing efficiency by streamlining production lines, reducing errors, and optimizing resource use. The integration of Robotics in sectors such as logistics, manufacturing, and healthcare highlights how automation can improve productivity and lower costs while ensuring precision.¹⁵⁴

Predictive Analytics

One of the most impactful applications of AI is in predictive analytics, where algorithms analyse vast amounts of data to predict future trends, behaviours, or events. For instance, in healthcare, predictive analytics is being used to anticipate disease outbreaks and optimize treatment plans. During the COVID-19 pandemic, AI-based predictive models were crucial in tracking the virus's spread, helping governments allocate resources effectively.¹⁵⁵ In agriculture, predictive analytics allows farmers to forecast

¹⁵³ Shinde, T., Kalinin, S.V., Santra, S. and Kolmakov, A. (2020), Rapid Vaccine Development for COVID-19 Using Artificial Intelligence and Big Data Tools. *ACS Nano*, 14(9), pp.12112–12116.

¹⁵⁴ Rosen, R., Beddington, J., Godfray, H.C.J., Crute, I.R., Lawrence, D., Muir, J.F., Pretty, J., Robinson, S., Thomas, S.M. and Toulmin, C. (2019), Robotics, automation, and AI in manufacturing and food production. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 374(1777), p.20180484.

¹⁵⁵ Shinde, T., Kalinin, S.V., Santra, S. and Kolmakov, A. (2020), Rapid Vaccine Development for COVID-19 Using Artificial Intelligence and Big Data Tools. *ACS Nano*, 14(9), pp.12112–12116.

weather patterns, optimize crop yields, and manage resources like water and fertilizer more sustainably.¹⁵⁶ This technological advancement is transforming traditional practices, allowing farmers to make more informed decisions.

Predictive analytics utilizes historical weather data, satellite imagery, and real-time climate information to forecast weather patterns. Accurate weather predictions allow farmers to plan their planting and harvesting schedules effectively. For instance, models integrating machine learning can predict precipitation, temperature fluctuations, and extreme weather events with remarkable accuracy, helping farmers mitigate risks related to weather variability.¹⁵⁷ Access to precise weather forecasts enables farmers to protect their crops and optimize field operations. Another significant application of predictive analytics in agriculture is optimizing crop yields. By analysing data on soil quality, crop health, and historical yield patterns, predictive models can suggest the best times for planting, watering, and harvesting. Additionally, these models help in selecting the most suitable crop varieties for specific soil types and climates. For example, a study demonstrated that machine learning techniques could predict crop yields based on environmental and genetic data with high accuracy, guiding farmers in crop management decisions.¹⁵⁸

Predictive analytics also plays a crucial role in managing agricultural resources such as water and fertilizers more sustainably. By analysing data from sensors in the soil and environmental conditions, predictive models can recommend optimal irrigation schedules, ensuring that crops receive the right amount of water without wastage. For instance, precision agriculture technologies that use predictive analytics can reduce water usage by up to 30% without compromising crop yields.¹⁵⁹ Similarly, predictive

¹⁵⁶ Kamilaris, A. and Prenafeta-Boldú, F.X. (2018), A review of the use of convolutional neural networks in agriculture. *The Journal of Agricultural Science*, 156(3), pp.312–322.

¹⁵⁷ Jones, J. W., Antle, J. M., Basso, B., Boote, K. J., Conant, R. T., Foster, I., Godfray, H. C. J., Herrero, M., Howitt, R. E., Janssen, S., Keating, B. A., Munoz-Carpena, R., Porter, C. H., Rosenzweig, C., & Wheeler, T. R. (2017). Toward a New Generation of Agricultural System Models, Data, and Knowledge Products: State of Agricultural Systems Science. *Agricultural Systems*, 155, 269–288.

¹⁵⁸ Shakoar, N., Northrup, D., Murray, S. C., Mockler, T. C., & Walia, H. (2017). Big Data Driven Agriculture: Big Data Analytics in Plant Sciences. *Current Plant Biology*, 6, 15–23.

¹⁵⁹ Evans, R. G., LaRue, J. H., Stone, K. C., & King, B. A. (2013). Adoption of Site-Specific Irrigation Management in the Western United States. *Irrigation Science*, 31(4), 871–887.

models can indicate the precise amount and type of fertilizer needed, reducing excessive use that can harm the environment.¹⁶⁰ Companies and research institutions worldwide are actively implementing predictive analytics in agriculture. For instance, Climate Corporation, an enterprise that offers weather precision agricultural services, uses predictive analytics to provide farmers with actionable insights to enhance their operational efficiency.¹⁶¹ This approach helps in making agriculture more sustainable by optimizing input usage, improving crop productivity, and reducing the environmental footprint.

Advanced Robotics

AI-powered robots can perform increasingly complex tasks with greater autonomy. These robots are used in a variety of fields, from surgical robots that assist in precise medical procedures to autonomous vehicles that promise to revolutionize transportation by reducing accidents and improving fuel efficiency.¹⁶² In the environmental sector, autonomous drones and underwater robots are being deployed for tasks such as monitoring marine ecosystems and tracking deforestation, thereby contributing to more sustainable practices.¹⁶³ Autonomous drones and underwater robots are revolutionizing the environmental sector by enhancing the efficiency and effectiveness of ecosystem monitoring and conservation efforts. Their deployment in tasks such as monitoring marine ecosystems and tracking deforestation exemplifies their contribution to sustainable practices. Autonomous underwater robots, also known as Autonomous Underwater Vehicles (AUVs), are increasingly used to gather data on marine ecosystems. These robots can operate at various depths, collect high-resolution data, and cover large areas without the constant need for human intervention. For instance, AUVs have been utilized in the monitoring of coral

¹⁶⁰ Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty-Five Years of Remote Sensing in Precision Agriculture: Key Advances and Remaining Knowledge Gaps. *Biosystems Engineering*, 114(4), 358–371.

¹⁶¹ Basso, B., & Liu, L. (2019). Seasonal Crop Yield Forecasting for Sustainable Agriculture. *Nature Sustainability*, 2, 70–71.

¹⁶² Moustris, G.P., Hiridis, S.C., Deliparaschos, K.M. and Konstantinidis, K.M. (2011), Evolution of autonomous and semi- autonomous robotic surgical systems: a review of the literature. *International Journal of Medical Robotics and Computer Assisted Surgery*, 7(4), pp.375–392.

¹⁶³ Bingham, B., Foley, B., Singh, H. and Camilli, R. (2010), Robotic Tools for Deep-Sea Archaeology. *Journal of Field Robotics*, 27(6), pp.702–717.

reefs, providing detailed imagery and environmental data that help researchers understand the health and dynamics of these vital ecosystems.¹⁶⁴ This automated data collection is crucial for assessing the impacts of climate change, overfishing, and pollution on marine biodiversity and supports the development of strategies to mitigate these threats.¹⁶⁵ In terrestrial ecosystems, autonomous drones equipped with advanced imaging technologies such as LiDAR and multispectral cameras are used to track deforestation and forest degradation. These drones can quickly survey vast forested areas, providing real-time data on tree cover loss, forest health, and changes in landscape patterns.¹⁶⁶ This information is invaluable for policymakers and conservationists working to combat illegal logging, plan reforestation projects, and monitor the effectiveness of conservation initiatives. By delivering accurate and timely data, drones contribute to better forest management and the preservation of carbon sinks, which are essential for mitigating climate change.¹⁶⁷

The integration of autonomous drones and underwater robots into environmental monitoring practices has several sustainability benefits. Firstly, these technologies reduce the need for human presence in remote and often hazardous environments, lowering the risks associated with traditional monitoring methods.¹⁶⁸ Additionally, the continuous and precise data they provide enables more informed decision making, leading to targeted and effective conservation actions. For instance, identifying areas of high biodiversity or regions under immediate threat allows for the prioritization of resources and efforts where they are most needed.¹⁶⁹ Moreover,

¹⁶⁴ Garcia, R. A., Best, B. D., Schill, S. R., Requena, N., & Lombana, A. V. (2020). Using Passive and Active Acoustic Technology to Survey the Coral Reefs of the Western Caribbean. *Coral Reefs*, 39(1), 143–148.

¹⁶⁵ Bellingham, J. G., & Rajan, K. (2007). Robotics in Remote and Hostile Environments. *Science*, 318(5853), 1098–1102.

¹⁶⁶ Paneque-Gálvez, J., McCall, M. K., Napoletano, B. M., Wich, S. A., & Koh, L. P. (2014). Small Drones for Community- Based Forest Monitoring: An Assessment of Their Feasibility and Potential in Tropical Areas. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 340, 6–15.

¹⁶⁷ Rodríguez Trejo, D. A., Figueroa Varela, C., & Figueroa Rangel, B. L. (2017). Drones for the Management of Forest Resources in Latin America. *Journal of Forestry Research*, 28(2), 236–248.

¹⁶⁸ Vincent, J., Halliday, J., Hall, E., & Pohlod, D. (2019). Reducing Risk in Environmental Monitoring: The Role of Autonomous Systems. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*, 191(3), 164.

¹⁶⁹ Koh, L. P., & Wich, S. A. (2012). Dawn of Drone Ecology: Low-Cost Autonomous Aerial Vehicles for Conservation. *Tropical Conservation Science*, 5(2), 121–132.

the ability of these autonomous systems to perform repetitive and extensive data collection tasks efficiently helps reduce operational costs and minimizes the environmental footprint of monitoring activities. By streamlining data acquisition and analysis, these technologies support the development and implementation of sustainable management practices that are adaptive and resilient to changing environmental conditions.¹⁷⁰ The deployment of autonomous drones and underwater robots significantly enhances the capacity to monitor and protect ecosystems, contributing to sustainability by providing essential data for conservation and resource management while reducing human impact on natural environments.

Efficiency, Accessibility, and Sustainability

As AI and Robotics advance, they are creating opportunities for greater efficiency across industries. In energy management, for example, AI optimizes energy grids by predicting demand and improving the integration of renewable energy sources, reducing costs and lowering carbon emissions.¹⁷¹ Accessibility is also improving through AI-driven technologies such as speech recognition and assistive devices for individuals with disabilities, offering them greater independence and enhancing quality of life.¹⁷² Furthermore, AI plays a pivotal role in developing sustainable solutions to global challenges like climate change, food security, and public health. By optimizing processes, improving resource management, and enabling precise interventions, AI contributes to sustainable practices that benefit both businesses and the environment.¹⁷³ The continued evolution of AI and Robotics holds immense potential for addressing increasingly

¹⁷⁰ Moloney, J. D., Ben-Haim, M., Hebert-Plumley, C., & Brierley, A. S. (2021). Monitoring of Coral Reefs Using Underwater Vehicles with Computer Vision. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*, 42(9), 3640–3655.

¹⁷¹ Evans, R. and Gao, J. (2016), DeepMind AI Reduces Google Data Centre Cooling Bill by 40%. DeepMind, [online]. Available at: <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/deep-mind-ai-reduces-google-data-centre-cooling-bill-40> [Accessed 5 Sep. 2023].

¹⁷² Microsoft (2018), Seeing AI: Talking Camera App for Those with a Visual Impairment. [online]. Available at: <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/ai/seeing-ai> [Accessed 5 Sep. 2023].

¹⁷³ Kamilaris, A. and Prenafeta-Boldú, F.X. (2018), A review of the use of convolutional neural networks in agriculture. *The Journal of Agricultural Science*, 156(3), pp.312–322.

complex challenges across industries and society. These technologies not only promise to enhance efficiency and accessibility but also offer innovative approaches to achieving sustainability in various fields.

CONCLUSION

The chapter comprehensively illustrates the transformative impact of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics across diverse sectors, underscoring their potential to revolutionize industries, enhance human life, and address global challenges. AI-driven diagnostics and robotic-assisted surgeries exemplify the remarkable advancements in healthcare, enabling precise and less invasive procedures. For instance, AI models are trained to analyse medical images and detect conditions like cancer and cardiovascular diseases earlier and more accurately than human radiologists in certain cases. Robotic systems like the da Vinci Surgical System allow surgeons to perform delicate surgeries with greater precision, leading to improved patient outcomes.^{174,175} In manufacturing, AI-powered autonomous robots have significantly enhanced productivity and reduced labour costs. Collaborative robots, or cobots, work alongside humans on assembly lines, handling repetitive or dangerous tasks, thereby reducing workplace injuries and increasing overall efficiency. AI systems also predict equipment failures through predictive maintenance, minimizing downtime and optimizing operations.^{176,177} Personal assistants like Siri, Alexa, and Google Assistant have become integral to daily life, facilitating tasks such as scheduling, communication, and information retrieval. AI also plays a vital role in improving accessibility for individuals with disabilities. Computer vision applications like Seeing AI help visually impaired users navigate their surroundings by narrating text and describing objects in real time.¹⁷⁸

¹⁷⁴ Esteva, A., Kuprel, B., Novoa, R. A., Ko, J., Swetter, S. M., Blau, H. M., & Thrun, S. (2017). Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks. *Nature*, 542(7639), 115–118.

¹⁷⁵ Melfi, F. M., Cuschieri, A., Vistoli, F., Costa, M., & Boni, L. (2002). Robotic-assisted laparoscopic microsurgical throat resection. *British Journal of Surgery*, 90(2), 175–179.

¹⁷⁶ Groover, M. P. (2018). *Automation, Production Systems, and Computer-Integrated Manufacturing*. Prentice Hall.

¹⁷⁷ Gupta, A., & Arora, R. (2015). *Industrial automation and robotics: Theory, systems, and applications*. *International Journal of Robotics Research*, 12(3), 210–223.

¹⁷⁸ Microsoft (2018). Seeing AI: Talking Camera App for Those with a Visual Impairment. Retrieved from <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/ai/seeing-ai> [Accessed 5 Sep. 2023].

The role of AI in education is rapidly expanding, particularly through personalized learning platforms that adapt content to individual students' needs. AI-driven systems like Khan Academy use algorithms to track students' progress and provide customized exercises, enhancing learning efficiency.¹⁷⁹ On a broader scale, AI and Robotics are instrumental in addressing global challenges such as climate change and global health. AI models predict and manage environmental changes, optimize renewable energy production, and improve energy efficiency. Google's DeepMind has applied AI to its data centres, reducing energy usage by 40%.¹⁸⁰ In global health, AI was pivotal during the COVID-19 pandemic in tracking the virus's spread, modelling transmission patterns, and accelerating vaccine development.¹⁸¹ Artificial Intelligence and Robotics have significantly evolved from theoretical foundations to integral components of modern society. The potential of these technologies to transform industries and address complex global challenges is immense. While promising, the integration of AI and Robotics necessitates careful consideration of ethical implications, regulatory frameworks, and social impacts. As these technologies continue to advance, they offer innovative approaches to achieving sustainability, improving efficiency, and enhancing the quality of life across various fields.^{182,183}

The deployment of AI-driven diagnostics and robotic-assisted surgeries in healthcare has led to more precise, less invasive procedures, thereby improving patient outcomes. For example, AI models analysing medical images can detect conditions such as cancer earlier and with higher accuracy, while robotic systems like the da Vinci Surgical System enhance

¹⁷⁹ Zawacki-Richter, O., Marín, V. I., Bond, M., & Gouverneur, F. (2019). Systematic review of research on artificial intelligence in higher education – where are the educators?. *International Journal of Educational Technology in Higher Education*, 16(1), pp.1–27.

¹⁸⁰ Evans, R., & Gao, J. (2016). DeepMind AI reduces Google data centre cooling bill by 40%. DeepMind. Retrieved from <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/deepmind-ai-reduces-google-data-centre-cooling-bill-40>

¹⁸¹ Shinde, T., Kalinin, S. V., Santra, S., & Kolmakov, A. (2020). Rapid vaccine development for COVID-19 using artificial intelligence and big data tools. *ACS Nano*, 14(9), 12112–12116.

¹⁸² Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

¹⁸³ Topol, E. J. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

precision in surgeries.¹⁸⁴ In manufacturing, autonomous robots and AI systems enhance productivity, reduce labour costs, and prevent workplace injuries through predictive maintenance and optimization of operations.¹⁸⁵ AI-powered virtual assistants such as Siri, Alexa, and Google Assistant have become integral to daily life, aiding in tasks like communication and scheduling.¹⁸⁶ Furthermore, AI applications are significantly enhancing accessibility for individuals with disabilities. For instance, computer vision applications like Seeing AI help visually impaired users understand their immediate environment through real-time narration.¹⁸⁷ Moreover, AI tools and mechanisms are addressing global challenges. AI and Robotics play a pivotal role in addressing global challenges such as climate change and global health crises. AI models are used in environmental conservation to predict and manage environmental changes, optimize renewable energy production, and improve energy efficiency.¹⁸⁸ Robotic technologies, including autonomous underwater vehicles, monitor marine ecosystems and detect illegal fishing activities, contributing to the protection of biodiversity.¹⁸⁹ During the COVID-19 pandemic, AI models were crucial in tracking the virus's spread and aiding in vaccine development, highlighting their potential in managing health crises.¹⁹⁰

¹⁸⁴ Esteva, A., Kuprel, B., Novoa, R. A., Ko, J., Swetter, S. M., Blau, H. M. and Thrun, S. (2017). Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks. *Nature*, 542(7639), pp.115–118.

¹⁸⁵ Groover, M. P. (2018). *Automation, Production Systems, and Computer-Integrated Manufacturing*. Prent

¹⁸⁶ Dale, R. (2020). *The Conversation: Bringing Machine Learning to Natural Language Processing*. Wiley.

¹⁸⁷ Microsoft (2018). Seeing AI: Talking Camera App for Those with a Visual Impairment. [online]. Available at: <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/ai/seeing-ai> [Accessed 5 Sep. 2023].

¹⁸⁸ Evans, R. and Gao, J. (2016). DeepMind AI Reduces Google Data Centre Cooling Bill by 40%. DeepMind. Available at: <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/deepmind-ai-reduces-google-data-centre-cooling-bill-40>

¹⁸⁹ Garcia, R. A., Best, B. D., Schill, S. R., Requena, N., & Lombana, A. V. (2020). Using Passive and Active Acoustic Technology to Survey the Coral Reefs of the Western Caribbean. *Coral Reefs*, 39(1), 143–148.

¹⁹⁰ Shinde, T., Kalinin, S. V., Santra, S. & Kolmakov, A. (2020). Rapid Vaccine Development for COVID-19 Using Artificial Intelligence and Big Data Tools. *ACS Nano*, 14(9), pp.12112–12116.

The chapter also traced the historical development and modern advances in AI and Robotics. The conceptual foundations laid by pioneers such as Alan Turing and Norbert Wiener established a framework for understanding and developing intelligent systems capable of learning, adaptation, and problem solving.¹⁹¹ Modern advancements in machine learning, deep learning, and natural language processing, as exemplified by breakthroughs like Google's AlphaGo and OpenAI's GPT-3, have redefined the capabilities of AI.^{192,193} Sustainability and efficiency can also be addressed using AI technology. The integration of AI and Robotics into various sectors is not only enhancing efficiency but also promoting sustainability. Predictive analytics in agriculture allow for optimized resource management, improving crop yields and reducing the environmental footprint.¹⁹⁴ AI systems optimize energy grids, lower carbon emissions, and support the development of sustainable practices across industries.¹⁹⁵ The transformative potential of AI and Robotics highlights both the opportunities and challenges ahead. The advancements are promising, yet the ethical implications, such as data privacy, autonomous decision making, and the potential for job displacement, require careful consideration and regulation. As these technologies continue to evolve, the focus must remain on ensuring advancements benefit all facets of society, while addressing the ethical and societal implications. In conclusion, the chapter effectively illustrates how AI and Robotics have evolved from theoretical constructs to integral components of modern industry and daily life, driving innovation and fostering sustainable practices. The continued evolution of these fields holds immense potential for addressing increasingly complex global challenges, promoting a future where technology seamlessly integrates into and enhances human life.

¹⁹¹ Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd ed. Pearson.

¹⁹² LeCun, Y., Bengio, Y., & Hinton, G. (2015). Deep learning. *Nature*, 521(7553), pp.436–444.

¹⁹³ Brown, T. B., et al. (2020). Language Models are Few-Shot Learners. *arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.14165*.

¹⁹⁴ Jones, J. W. et al. (2017). Toward a New Generation of Agricultural System Models, Data, and Knowledge Products: State of Agricultural Systems Science. *Agricultural Systems*, 155, pp.269–288.

¹⁹⁵ Topol, E.J. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. New York: Basic Books.

REFERENCES

- Atefi, A., Ge, Y., Pitla, S. K., Lin, N., & Hillyer, C. (2018). Application of small UAV systems for precision agriculture: A review. *Precision Agriculture*, 19(2), 357–378.
- Basso, B., & Liu, L. (2019). Seasonal crop yield forecasting for sustainable agriculture. *Nature Sustainability*, 2, 70–71.
- Bedini, S. A. (1964). The role of automata in the history of technology. *Technology and Culture*, 5(1), 24–42.
- Bellingham, J. G., & Rajan, K. (2007). Robotics in remote and Hostile environments. *Science*, 318(5853), 1098–1102.
- Besold, T. R., Garcez, A., & Lamb, L. (2017). Neural-symbolic learning and reasoning: A survey and interpretation. *Frontiers in Artificial Intelligence and Applications*, 300, 1–20.
- Bingham, B., Foley, B., Singh, H., & Camilli, R. (2010). Robotic tools for deep-sea archaeology. *Journal of Field Robotics*, 27(6), 702–717.
- Boden, M. A. (2006). *Mind as machine: A history of cognitive science*. Oxford University Press.
- Bortole, M., Venkatakrishnan, A., Zhu, F., Donlan, J., Swanson, S., Mains, J., Tripoli, S., Cruz, G., Contreras-Vidal, J. L., & Francisco, G. E. (2015). The H2 robotic exoskeleton for gait rehabilitation after stroke: early findings from a clinical study. *Journal of NeuroEngineering and Rehabilitation*, 12(1), 54. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12984-015-0048-y>
- Brambilla, M., Ferrante, E., Birattari, M., & Dorigo, M. (2013). Swarm Robotics: a review from the swarm engineering perspective. *Swarm Intelligence*, 7(1), 1–41.
- Breiman, L. (2001). Statistical modeling: The two cultures. *Statistical Science*, 16(3), 199–231.
- Brooks, R. A. (1986). A robust layered control system for a mobile robot. *IEEE Journal on Robotics and Automation*, 2(1), 14–23.
- Brooks, R. A. (1999). *Cambrian intelligence: The early history of the new AI*. The MIT Press.
- Brown, T. B., Mann, B., Ryder, N., Subbiah, M., Kaplan, J., Dhariwal, P., Neelakantan, A., Shyam, P., Sastry, G., Askell, A., Agarwal, S., Herbert-Voss, A., Krueger, G., Henighan, T., Child, R., Ramesh, A., Ziegler, D. M., Wu, J., Winter, C., ... Amodi, D. (2020). Language models are few-shot learners. arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.14165.
- Buchanan, B. G., & Feigenbaum, E. A. (1982). Dendral and meta-dendral: Their applications dimension. *Artificial Intelligence*, 11(1–2), 5–24.
- Ceccarelli, M. (2000). The heritage of Leonardo da Vinci in machine design. *Journal of Mechanical Design*, 122(4), 543–549.

- Cortes, C., & Vapnik, V. (1995). Support-vector networks. *Machine Learning*, 20(3), 273–297.
- Craig, J. J. (2005). *Introduction to robotics: Mechanics and control* (3rd ed.). Pearson.
- Crevier, D. (1993). *AI: The tumultuous history of the search for artificial intelligence*. Basic Books.
- Dale, R. (2020). *The conversation: Bringing machine learning to natural language processing*. Wiley.
- De Fauw, J., Ledsam, J. R., Romera-Paredes, B., Nikolov, S., Tomasev, N., Blackwell, S., et al. (2018). Clinically applicable deep learning for diagnosis and referral in retinal disease. *Nature Medicine*, 24(9), 1342–1350.
- Devlin, J., Chang, M. W., Lee, K., & Toutanova, K. (2019). BERT: Pre-training of deep bidirectional transformers for language understanding. In *Proceedings of the 2019 Conference of the North American Chapter of the Association for Computational Linguistics: Human Language Technologies, Volume 1 (Long and Short Papers)* (pp. 4171–4186). Association for Computational Linguistics.
- Devlin, J., Chang, M. W., Lee, K., & Toutanova, K. (2019). *BERT: Pre-training of deep bidirectional transformers for language understanding*. NAACL-HLT.
- Devol, G. C. (1982). *Inventor of the first industrial robot*. Robotic Industries Association.
- Dreyfus, H. L. (1992). *What computers can't do: A critique of artificial reason*. Harper & Row.
- Duarte, M., Oliveira, S. M., Christensen, A. L., & Gomes, J. A. (2016). Evolution of collective behaviours for a real swarm of aquatic surface robots. *PLoS ONE*, 11(3), e0151834.
- Engelberger, J. F. (1981). *Robotics in practice: Management and applications of industrial robots*. Springer.
- Engelberger, J. F. (1982). *Robotics in practice: Management and applications of industrial robots*. Springer.
- Engelberger, J. F. (1989). *Robots in service*. MIT Press.
- Esteva, A., Kuprel, B., Novoa, R. A., Ko, J., Swetter, S. M., Blau, H. M., & Thrun, S. (2017). Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks. *Nature*, 542(7639), 115–118.
- Evans, R., & Gao, J. (2016). DeepMind AI reduces Google Data Centre cooling bill by 40%. DeepMind [online]. Retrieved September 5, 2023, from <https://deepmind.com/blog/article/deepmind-ai-reduces-google-data-centre-cooling-bill-40>.
- Evans, R. G., LaRue, J. H., Stone, K. C., & King, B. A. (2013). Adoption of Site-specific irrigation management in the Western United States. *Irrigation Science*, 31(4), 871–887.
- Feigenbaum, E. A. (1984). Knowledge engineering: The applied side of artificial intelligence. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 426(1), 91–107.

- Ferrucci, D., Brown, E., Chu-Carroll, J., Fan, J., Gondek, D., Kalyanpur, A., Adam Lally, J., Murdock, W., Nyberg, E., Prager, J., Schlaefter, N., & Welty, C. (2010). Building Watson: An overview of the DeepQA project. *AI Magazine*, 31(3), 59–79.
- Garcia, R. A., Best, B. D., Schill, S. R., Requena, N., & Lombana, A. V. (2020). Using passive and active acoustic technology to survey the coral reefs of the Western Caribbean. *Coral Reefs*, 39(1), 143–148.
- Goodfellow, I., Bengio, Y., & Courville, A. (2016). *Deep learning*. MIT Press.
- Graf, B., Hans, M., & Schraft, R. D. (2004). Care-O-bot II—development of a next generation robotic home assistant. *Autonomous Robots*, 16(2), 193–205.
- Groover, M. P. (2018). *Automation, production systems, and computer-integrated manufacturing*. Prentice Hall.
- Guo, Y., Tan, Y., & Hao, J. (2020). Swarm Robotics for cooperative search and rescue in unknown environments. *Computers & Electrical Engineering*, 87, 106770.
- Gupta, A., & Arora, R. (2015). Industrial automation and robotics: Theory, systems, and applications. *International Journal of Robotics Research*, 12(3), 210–223.
- Harris, J. R., & Todaro, M. P. (1970). Migration, unemployment and development: A two-sector analysis. *American Economic Review*, 60(1), 126–142.
- Hartmanis, J., & Stearns, R. E. (1966). *Algebraic structure theory of sequential machines*. Prentice-Hall.
- Hendler, J. (2008). Avoiding another AI Winter. *IEEE Intelligent Systems*, 23(2), 2–4.
- Heron of Alexandria. (1851). *Pneumatics of Hero of Alexandria* (B. Woodcroft, Trans.). Taylor Walton and Maberly.
- Herron, D. M. (2006). The evolution of robotic surgery: Surgical and economic challenges. *International Journal of Medical Robotics and Computer Assisted Surgery*, 2(1), 85–90.
- Hill, D. R. (1974). *The book of knowledge of ingenious mechanical devices: Kitāb fi ma'rifat al-hiyal al-bandasiyya*. Springer.
- Hirai, K., Hirose, M., Haikawa, Y., & Takenaka, T. (1998). The development of Honda humanoid robot. *Proceedings of the IEEE International Conference on Robotics and Automation*, 2, 1321–1326.
- Hochreiter, S., & Schmidhuber, J. (1997). Long short-term memory. *Neural Computation*, 9(8), 1735–1780.
- Holmes, W., Bialik, M., & Fadel, C. (2019). *Artificial intelligence in education: Promises and implications for teaching and learning*. Center for Curriculum Redesign.
- Hsu, P. D., Lander, E. S., & Zhang, F. (2014). Development and applications of CRISPR-Cas9 for genome engineering. *Cell*, 157(6), 1262–1278.

- Hublin, J. J., Ben-Ncer, A., Bailey, S. E., Freidline, S. E., Neubauer, S., Skinner, M. M., Bergmann, I., Le Cabec, A., Benazzi, S., Harvati, K., & Gunz, P. (2017). New fossils from Jebel Irhoud, Morocco and the pan-African origin of *Homo sapiens*. *Nature*, 546(7657), 289–292.
- Jinek, M., Chylinski, K., Fonfara, I., Hauer, M., Doudna, J. A., & Charpentier, E. (2012). A programmable dual-RNA-guided DNA endonuclease in adaptive bacterial immunity. *Science*, 337(6096), 816–821.
- Jones, J. W., Antle, J. M., Basso, B., Boote, K. J., Conant, R. T., Foster, I., Godfray, H. C. J., Herrero, M., Howitt, R. E., Janssen, S., Keating, B. A., Munoz-Carpena, R., Porter, C. H., Rosenzweig, C., & Wheeler, T. R. (2017). Toward a new generation of agricultural system models, data, and knowledge products: State of agricultural systems science. *Agricultural Systems*, 155, 269–288.
- Kamilaris, A., & Prenafeta-Boldú, F. X. (2018). A review of the use of convolutional neural networks in agriculture. *The Journal of Agricultural Science*, 156(3), 312–322.
- Kirch, P. V. (2010). *On the road of the winds: An archaeological history of the Pacific Islands before European Contact*. University of California Press.
- Koh, L. P., & Wich, S. A. (2012). Dawn of drone ecology: Low-Cost autonomous aerial vehicles for conservation. *Tropical Conservation Science*, 5(2), 121–132.
- Krittanawong, C., Johnson, K. W., Rosenson, R. S., Wang, Z., Aydar, M., & Kitai, T. (2017). Deep learning for cardiovascular medicine: A practical primer. *European Heart Journal*, 40(28), 2140–2150.
- Krizhevsky, A., Sutskever, I., & Hinton, G. E. (2012). ImageNet classification with deep convolutional neural networks. *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, 25, 1097–1105.
- Lancaster, M. A., & Knoblich, J. A. (2014). Generation of cerebral organoids from human pluripotent stem cells. *Nature Protocols*, 9(10), 2329–2340.
- LeCun, Y., Bengio, Y., & Hinton, G. (2015). Deep learning. *Nature*, 521(7553), 436–444.
- LeCun, Y., Bottou, L., Bengio, Y., & Haffner, P. (1998). Gradient-based learning applied to document recognition. *Proceedings of the IEEE*, 86(11), 2278–2324.
- Ledford, H. (2015). CRISPR, the disruptor. *Nature*, 522(7554), 20–24.
- Lee, E. S. (1966). A theory of migration. *Demography*, 3(1), 47–57.
- Lewis, M., Liu, Y., Goyal, N., Ghazvininejad, M., Mohamed, A., Levy, O., et al. (2020). *BART: Denoising sequence-to-sequence pre-training for natural language generation, translation, and comprehension*. ACL.
- Lewis, W. A. (1954). Economic development with unlimited supplies of labour. *The Manchester School*, 22(2), 139–191.
- Libbrecht, M. W., & Noble, W. S. (2015). Machine learning applications in genetics and genomics. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 16(6), 321–332.
- Lighthill, J. (1973). Artificial intelligence: A general survey. In *Artificial intelligence: A Paper Symposium*. Science Research Council.

- Litman, T. (2019). *Autonomous vehicle implementation predictions: Implications for transport planning*. Victoria Transport Policy Institute.
- Luger, G. F. (2009). *Artificial intelligence: Structures and strategies for complex problem solving* (6th ed.). Addison-Wesley.
- Maude, S. L., Frey, N., Shaw, P. A., Aplenc, R., Barrett, D. M., Bunin, N. J., Chew, A., Gonzalez, V. E., Zheng, Z., Lacey, S. F., Mahnke, Y. D., Melenhorst, J. J., Rheingold, S. R., Shen, A., Teachey, D. T., Levine, B. L., June, C. H., Porter, D. L., & Grupp, S. A. (2014). Chimeric antigen receptor T cells for sustained remissions in leukaemia. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 371(16), 1507–1517.
- McCarthy, J., Minsky, M. L., Rochester, N., & Shannon, C. E. (2006). A proposal for the Dartmouth Summer Research Project on artificial intelligence, August 31, 1955. *AI Magazine*, 27(4), 12–14.
- McDermott, J. (1982). R1: A rule-based configurer of computer systems. *Artificial Intelligence*, 19(1), 39–88.
- Melfi, F. M., Cuschieri, A., Vistoli, F., Costa, M., & Boni, L. (2002). Robotic assisted laparoscopic microsurgical throat resection. *British Journal of Surgery*, 90(2), 175–179.
- Mellars, P., Gori, K. C., Carr, M., Soares, P. A., & Richards, M. B. (2013). Genetic and archaeological perspectives on the initial modern human colonization of southern Asia. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 110(26), 10699–10704.
- Microsoft. (2018). Seeing AI: Talking camera app for those with a visual impairment [online]. Retrieved September 5, 2023, from <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/ai/seeing-ai>.
- Minsky, M. (1985). *The society of mind*. Simon and Schuster.
- Minsky, M., & Papert, S. (1969). *Perceptrons: An introduction to computational geometry*. MIT Press.
- Mitchell, T. M. (1997). *Machine learning*. McGraw-Hill.
- Moloney, J. D., Ben-Haim, M., Hebert-Plumley, C., & Brierley, A. S. (2021). Monitoring of Coral Reefs Using Underwater Vehicles with Computer Vision. *International Journal of Remote Sensing*, 42(9), 3640–3655.
- Moustris, G. P., Hiridis, S. C., Deliparaschos, K. M., & Konstantinidis, K. M. (2011). Evolution of autonomous and semi-autonomous robotic surgical systems: a review of the literature. *International Journal of Medical Robotics and Computer Assisted Surgery*, 7(4), 375–392.
- Mulla, D. J. (2013). Twenty-Five years of remote sensing in precision agriculture: Key advances and remaining knowledge gaps. *Biosystems Engineering*, 114(4), 358–371.
- Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1956). The logic theory machine: A complex information processing system. *IRE Transactions on Information Theory*, 2(3), 61–79.

- Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1961). GPS, a program that simulates human thought. In E. A. Feigenbaum & J. Feldman (Eds.), *Computers and thought* (pp. 279–293). McGraw-Hill.
- Newell, A., & Simon, H. A. (1972). *Human problem solving*. Prentice-Hall.
- Nilsson, N. J. (1984). Shakey the Robot. Technical Note 323, SRI International.
- Nilsson, N. J. (2009). *The quest for artificial intelligence: A history of ideas and achievements*. Cambridge University Press.
- Nilsson, N. J. (2010). *The quest for artificial intelligence*. Cambridge University Press.
- Nof, S. Y. (1999). *Handbook of industrial robotics* (2nd ed.). Wiley.
- Pandey, A. K., & Gelin, R. (2018). A mass-produced sociable humanoid robot: Pepper: The first machine of its kind. *IEEE Robotics & Automation Magazine*, 25(3), 40–48.
- Pane, J. F., Griffin, B. A., McCaffrey, D. F., & Karam, R. (2014). Effectiveness of cognitive tutor Algebra I at Scale. *Educational Evaluation and Policy Analysis*, 36(2), 127–144.
- Paneque-Gálvez, J., McCall, M. K., Napoletano, B. M., Wich, S. A., & Koh, L. P. (2014). Small drones for community-based forest monitoring: An assessment of their feasibility and potential in tropical areas. *Forest Ecology and Management*, 340, 6–15.
- Pearl, J. (1988). *Probabilistic reasoning in intelligent systems: Networks of plausible inference*. Morgan Kaufmann.
- Piech, C., Huang, J., Chen, Z., Do, C., Ng, A., & Koller, D. (2015). Tuned models of peer assessment in MOOCs. In *International Conference on Educational Data Mining (EDM)*.
- Radford, A., Wu, J., Child, R., Luan, D., Amodei, D., & Sutskever, I. (2019). Language models are unsupervised multitask learners. *OpenAI*.
- Rochester, N., Holland, J. H., Haibt, L. H., & Duda, W. I. (1956). Tests on a cell assembly theory of the action of the brain, using a large digital computer. *IRE Transactions on Information Theory*, 2(3), 80–93.
- Rodriguez Trejo, D. A., Figueroa Varela, C., & Figueroa Rangel, B. L. (2017). Drones for the management of forest resources in Latin America. *Journal of Forestry Research*, 28(2), 236–248.
- Rosen, R., Beddington, J., Godfray, H. C. J., Crute, I. R., Lawrence, D., Muir, J. F., Pretty, J., Robinson, S., Thomas, S. M., & Toulmin, C. (2019). Robotics, automation, and AI in manufacturing and food production. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 374(1777), 20180484.
- Rumelhart, D. E., Hinton, G. E., & Williams, R. J. (1986). Learning representations by back-propagating errors. *Nature*, 323(6088), 533–536.
- Russell, S., & Norvig, P. (2016). *Artificial intelligence: A modern approach* (3rd ed.). Pearson.

- Şahin, E. (2005). Swarm Robotics: From sources of inspiration to domains of application. In E. Şahin & W. M. Spears (Eds.), *Swarm robotics* (Lecture Notes in Computer Science) (Vol. 3342). Springer.
- Sakagami, Y., Watanabe, R., Aoyama, C., Matsunaga, S., Higaki, N., & Fujimura, K. (2002). The intelligent ASIMO: System overview and integration. In *Proceedings of the 2002 IEEE/RSJ International Conference on Intelligent Robots and Systems, Lausanne, Switzerland* (pp. 2478–2483).
- Saygin, A. P., Cicekli, I., & Akman, V. (2000). Turing test: 50 years later. *Minds and Machines*, 10(4), 463–518.
- Searle, J. R. (1980). Minds, brains, and programs. *Behavioural and Brain Sciences*, 3(3), 417–424.
- Selwyn, N. (2019). *Should robots replace teachers? AI and the future of education*. Polity Press.
- Shakoor, N., Northrup, D., Murray, S. C., Mockler, T. C., & Walia, H. (2017). Big Data driven agriculture: Big Data analytics in plant sciences. *Current Plant Biology*, 6, 15–23.
- Shannon, C. E. (1950). *Programming a computer for playing chess*. Philosophical Library.
- Shibata, T., & Wada, K. (2011). Robot therapy: A new approach for mental healthcare of the elderly—A mini-review. *Gerontology*, 57(4), 378–386.
- Shinde, T., Kalinin, S. V., Santra, S., & Kolmakov, A. (2020). Rapid vaccine development for COVID-19 using artificial intelligence and Big Data Tools. *ACS Nano*, 14(9), 12112–12116.
- Shoeybi, M., Patwary, M., Puri, R., Casper, J., & Catanzaro, B. (2019). Megatron-LM: Training multi-billion parameter language models using model parallelism. arXiv preprint arXiv:1909.08053.
- Shortliffe, E. H. (1976). *MYCIN: Computer-based medical consultations*. Elsevier.
- Siciliano, B., & Khatib, O. (2016). *Springer handbook of robotics* (2nd ed.). Springer.
- Silver, D., Huang, A., Maddison, C. J., Guez, A., Sifre, L., Van Den Driessche, G., Schrittwieser, J., Antonoglou, I., Panneershelvam, V., Lanctot, M., & Dieleman, S. (2016). Mastering the game of Go with deep neural networks and tree search. *Nature*, 529(7587), 484–489.
- Simon, H. A. (1972). *The sciences of the artificial*. MIT Press.
- Topol, E. J. (2019). *Deep medicine: How artificial intelligence Can make health-care human again*. Basic Books.
- Treleaven, P., Galas, M., & Lalchand, V. (2013). Algorithmic trading review. *Communications of the ACM*, 56(11), 76–85.
- Turing, A. M. (1950). Computing machinery and intelligence. *Mind*, 59(236), 433–460.
- Vaswani, A., Shazeer, N., Parmar, N., Uszkoreit, J., Jones, L., Gomez, A. N., Kaiser, Ł., & Polosukhin, I. (2017). Attention is all you need. *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*, 30, 5998–6008.

- Vincent, J., Halliday, J., Hall, E., & Pohlod, D. (2019). Reducing risk in environmental monitoring: The role of autonomous systems. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment*, 191(3), 164.
- Wenzel, M., Paulson, L. C., & Nipkow, T. (2013). The Isabelle framework. In S. Blazy & C. Paulin-Mohring (Eds.), *Interactive theorem proving* (pp. 399–404). Springer.
- Wiener, N. (1948). *Cybernetics: Or Control and communication in the animal and the machine*. MIT Press.
- Yang, G. Z., Bellingham, J., Dupont, P. E., Fischer, P., Floridi, L., Full, R., Jacobstein, N., Kumar, V., McNutt, M., Nelson, B. J., Scassellati, B., Taddeo, M., Taylor, R., Veloso, M., Wang, Z. L., & Wood, R. (2018). The grand challenges of Science Robotics. *Science Robotics*, 3(14), 1–8.
- Zawacki-Richter, O., Marín, V. I., Bond, M., & Gouverneur, F. (2019). Systematic review of research on artificial intelligence applications in higher education – where are the educators? *International Journal of Educational Technology in Higher Education*, 16(1), 1–27.



Conclusion

This chapter reflects on humanity's evolution, from early cognitive and physical developments to modern technological advancements, emphasizing the dual-edged nature of innovation. It examines how bipedalism and manual dexterity laid the foundation for tool use and brain expansion, ultimately enabling the cognitive revolution that spurred the growth of complex societies. Human ingenuity has driven monumental progress, such as agriculture and industrialization, but also introduced significant challenges, including social stratification, environmental degradation, and global inequalities. The chapter underscores the transformative impact of contemporary technologies like Artificial Intelligence and Robotics, which offer solutions to global challenges while posing risks of job displacement, ethical dilemmas, and widening inequalities. It highlights the Anthropocene's defining feature: humanity's unprecedented influence on Earth's systems. As frontier technologies, including Quantum Computing and nuclear fusion, emerge, their governance will shape the future. The chapter concludes by advocating for equitable innovation and global cooperation to harness technology responsibly while mitigating its societal and environmental risks.

The story of human civilization is, at its core, a narrative of innovation and adaptation. The cognitive revolution, which occurred around 70,000 years ago, provided *Homo sapiens* with the unprecedented ability to think

abstractly, communicate complex ideas, and collaborate at large scales. However, this revolution was built upon earlier evolutionary developments, particularly bipedalism and enhanced manual dexterity, which laid the foundation for cognitive advancement. Bipedalism, which likely emerged over four million years ago, played a crucial role in shaping human evolution. By freeing the hands for tasks other than locomotion, bipedalism allowed early hominins to manipulate objects, develop tools, and engage in complex foraging behaviours.¹ This shift also had significant implications for brain development. The ability to carry tools, food, and infants while walking likely influenced social organization, enhancing cooperation and social bonds among early humans.² These social interactions, in turn, demanded more sophisticated communication and problem-solving abilities, setting the stage for the later cognitive revolution. Manual dexterity also played a central role in human evolution. The evolution of the opposable thumb, for instance, enabled early *Homo* species to create and use increasingly complex tools, a factor that archaeologists link to the expansion of the brain.³ This anatomical feature, which distinguishes humans and other primates from most other animals, provided a crucial advantage in toolmaking and fine motor skills. The precision grip, made possible by the opposable thumb, enabled early hominins to grasp and manipulate objects with greater dexterity, facilitating the production of more sophisticated tools.⁴ These tools, in turn, contributed to survival by improving hunting, foraging, and other essential activities. This tool use is closely linked to the expansion of the brain.⁵ The cognitive demands of creating and using tools required early humans to develop more advanced problem-solving abilities, which likely drove the growth of brain size. As humans became more reliant on tools for survival, the neural circuits associated with motor control, planning, and spatial reasoning expanded, further enhancing cognitive capabilities. There is also a direct connection

¹ Lovejoy, C.O. (1981), 'The Origin of Man', *Science*, 211(4480), pp.341–350.

² Dunbar, R., 2014. *Human Evolution: Our Brains and Behavior*. Oxford University Press, p.109

³ Marzke, M.W. (1997), 'Precision grips, hand morphology, and tools', *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(1), pp.91–110.

⁴ Marzke, M.W., 1997. 'Precision grips, hand morphology, and tools', *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(1), pp.91–110.

⁵ Wynn, T., 2002. 'Archaeology and cognitive evolution', *Behavioral and Brain Sciences*, 25(3), pp.389–402.

between toolmaking and the development of neural networks involved in language processing, suggesting that the motor skills required for tool use may have also contributed to the evolution of language.⁶ Moreover, the feedback loop between manual dexterity and brain development meant that as tool use became more sophisticated, it placed further demands on cognitive abilities, pushing brain expansion. The correlation between hand usage and brain growth in early humans suggests that the requirements of tool use and creation may have been a significant factor in encephalization, the evolutionary increase in brain size.⁷ This process was fundamental to the emergence of modern humans and their ability to manipulate the environment in increasingly complex ways. The neural circuitry involved in tool use overlaps with that used for language, suggesting that the evolution of manual dexterity and the use of tools may have been directly linked to cognitive development and the capacity for abstract thinking.⁸

As toolmaking and use became more sophisticated, the demands on cognitive processing increased. This is particularly evident in the archaeological record of *Homo erectus* and later *Homo sapiens*, where the complexity of tools and the planning involved in hunting and gathering reflect higher-order cognitive abilities.⁹ Thus, the combination of bipedalism, which facilitated tool use, and manual dexterity, which allowed for precise manipulation, was a key factor in driving the expansion of the human brain and the cognitive capacities that would later define the cognitive revolution. These physical and neurological adaptations allowed *Homo sapiens* to innovate in ways that no other species had before. The ability to walk

⁶Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K. and Chaminade, T., 2008. 'Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: technology, language and cognition in human evolution', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), pp.1939–1949.

⁷Holloway, R.L., 1967. 'The Evolution of the Human Brain: Some Notes Toward a Synthesis Between Neural Structure and the Evolution of Complex Behavior', *General Systems*, 12, pp. 3–19.

⁸Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K. and Chaminade, T., 2008. 'Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: technology, language and cognition in human evolution', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), pp.1939–1949.

⁹Wynn, T. (2002), 'Archaeology and cognitive evolution', *Behavioral and Brain Sciences*, 25(3), pp.389–402.

upright, use tools, and communicate through increasingly complex language systems ultimately enabled humans to collaborate on unprecedented scales, leading to the development of agriculture, cities, and the complex societies that followed.

Development in cognitive capacity led to this intellectual leap laying the groundwork for all future human advancements. The evolution of language and communication enabled early humans to build complex social networks, facilitating cooperation in larger groups than previously possible.¹⁰ This social capacity was a key factor in humans' survival and eventual domination over other species, such as Neanderthals, who lacked such advanced social coordination. The capacity for abstract thought and communication allowed humans to innovate in ways that transformed their environment. The development of early tools and the domestication of fire were among the first significant technological advancements, providing the foundation for later innovations like agriculture. The ability to control fire not only offered protection and warmth but also revolutionized the human diet, enabling the consumption of cooked foods that were easier to digest and more energy rich.¹¹ This innovation, in turn, supported the development of larger brains, further enhancing cognitive abilities. Cooked foods are easier to digest and allow for more efficient caloric extraction than raw foods, which tend to require more energy to chew and digest.¹² The increased caloric intake provided by cooking allowed early humans to access more energy-dense nutrients, such as carbohydrates and proteins from tubers and meat, which were otherwise difficult to consume in their raw form. This dietary shift had a significant impact on human evolution. Cooked foods not only provided higher caloric value but also reduced the time and effort spent chewing. The reduced need for large jaws and teeth allowed for changes in human facial structure, while the increased energy availability is believed to have supported the development of larger brains.¹³ The 'expensive tissue hypothesis' suggests

¹⁰ Dunbar, R. I. M. (1998). The Social Brain Hypothesis. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 6(5), 178–190.

¹¹ Leakey, R., & Lewin, R. (1992). *Origins Reconsidered: In Search of What Makes Us Human*. Little, Brown & Co.

¹² Wrangham, R.W. (2009), *Catching Fire: How Cooking Made Us Human*. Basic Books. P.45

¹³ Carmody, R.N. and Wrangham, R.W. (2009), 'The Energetic Significance of Cooking', *Journal of Human Evolution*, 57(4), pp.379–391.

that as the human brain expanded, there was a corresponding reduction in the size of the gut, made possible by the more energy-efficient process of digesting cooked food.¹⁴ This increase in brain size, combined with the improved nutrition from cooked food, enhanced cognitive abilities, enabling early humans to develop more complex social structures and tool use. The control of fire also had social implications, as it encouraged group gatherings around campfires, fostering social cohesion and communication¹⁵ (Gowlett, 2016, p. 115). This shared use of fire may have contributed to the development of language and cooperative behaviour, further enhancing human cognitive and cultural evolution.

The Agricultural Revolution, which began around 10,000 BC, marked another critical turning point in human history. It enabled the transition from nomadic hunter-gatherer societies to settled agricultural communities. The shift to agriculture brought about the formation of the first urban settlements, surplus food production, and the division of labour—key components in the development of complex civilizations.¹⁶ However, this transition also introduced new forms of social stratification, inequality, and environmental manipulation, laying the groundwork for both progress and exploitation.¹⁷ As societies became more organized and resource production intensified, human innovation continued to advance. The Industrial Revolution in the eighteenth century, fuelled by the invention of the steam engine, significantly accelerated the pace of technological and economic development. This period represented a pivotal moment in the history of human innovation, as it not only increased productivity but also drastically altered human relationships with nature, leading to the mass extraction of natural resources and widespread environmental degradation.¹⁸

The narrative of human civilization is one marked by a dual-edged relationship with technological innovation. Historically, breakthroughs that

¹⁴ Aiello, L.C. and Wheeler, P. (1995), 'The Expensive Tissue Hypothesis: The Brain and the Digestive System in Human and Primate Evolution', *Current Anthropology*, 36(2), pp.199–221.

¹⁵ Gowlett, J.A.J. (2016), 'The Discovery of Fire by Humans: A Long and Convoluted Process', *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 371(1696)

¹⁶ Childe, V. G. (1936). *Man Makes Himself*. Watts & Co.

¹⁷ Scott, J. C. (2017). *Against the Grain: A Deep History of the Earliest States*. Yale University Press.

¹⁸ Mokyr, J. (1990). *The Lever of Riches: Technological Creativity and Economic Progress*. Oxford University Press.

have propelled societies forward also introduced new risks and challenges. For instance, the Industrial Revolution dramatically transformed economies through mechanization, creating unprecedented productivity and wealth. However, this economic growth was accompanied by significant environmental degradation and the exploitation of labour. Technological creativity has been the engine of economic progress, yet it has often exacerbated inequalities and social tensions.¹⁹ The rise of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics in contemporary society continues this pattern. These technologies promise to revolutionize industries, improve healthcare, and enhance productivity, but they also threaten to displace millions of workers, potentially increasing income inequality and social unrest. While automation can boost productivity, it can also lead to job polarization, disproportionately affecting low- and middle-skilled workers.²⁰ This mirrors the disruptive effects of past technological advances, such as the mechanization of agriculture, which dramatically reduced the need for human labour in farming. In healthcare, AI offers transformative potential. AI-driven diagnostic tools have already shown superiority in certain medical fields, such as detecting skin cancer with greater accuracy than human clinicians.²¹ Yet, this raises ethical questions about access to advanced healthcare technologies. While AI could democratize healthcare by making diagnostic tools widely accessible, it also risks creating a two-tiered system where only the wealthy benefit from cutting-edge medical treatments.²²

In the realm of genetics, CRISPR and other gene-editing technologies hold the promise of eradicating genetic diseases, yet they also pose significant ethical dilemmas about the potential for ‘designer babies’ and the exacerbation of social inequality.²³ Human enhancement through genetic engineering challenges fundamental notions of fairness and equity, potentially leading to a future where genetic modifications become a luxury

¹⁹ Mokyr, J. (1990). *The Lever of Riches: Technological Creativity and Economic Progress*. Oxford University Press.

²⁰ Acemoglu, D., & Restrepo, P. (2018). “Artificial Intelligence, Automation, and Work.” NBER Working Paper Series, 24196.

²¹ Esteva, A., et al. (2017). “Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks.” *Nature*, 542, 115–118.

²² Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

²³ Doudna, J. A., & Sternberg, S. H. (2017). *A Crack in Creation: Gene Editing and the Unthinkable Power to Control Evolution*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

available only to the elite.²⁴ Similarly, space exploration, a symbol of human ingenuity, represents both opportunity and risk. Some see space colonization to safeguard humanity from existential threats like climate collapse.²⁵ However, these ambitious endeavours often reflect broader geopolitical struggles for control over resources and technological dominance.²⁶ The commercial space race, spearheaded by companies like SpaceX, risks exacerbating inequalities between nations and creating new forms of resource exploitation in space. Ultimately, the dual-edged nature of innovation remains central to the narrative of human progress. As technologies like AI, Robotics, genetic engineering, and space exploration continue to advance, they offer the potential to solve pressing global challenges such as climate change, disease, and resource scarcity. However, these innovations also pose significant risks if they are not managed equitably and responsibly.²⁷ The challenge of the twenty-first century is not only to harness the power of these technologies for the common good but also to mitigate their potential to deepen existing inequalities and create new forms of conflict.

The ability of humans to innovate and adapt has been the driving force behind the development of civilization. From the earliest tools to modern-day technologies, the story of humanity is one of constant transformation, driven by our capacity to solve problems, create new tools, and organize societies. However, this same capacity for innovation has also generated new risks and challenges, which future generations will need to navigate with care. The ability to share and process abstract knowledge created an unprecedented capacity for cultural and technological development.²⁸ This cognitive leap set the trajectory for humanity to become the most dominant species on Earth. Yet, as explored throughout Volume 1 of *The Political Economy of Contemporary Human Civilisation*, this capacity for innovation is not without consequences. Human ingenuity, while

²⁴ Sandel, M. J. (2007). *The Case Against Perfection: Ethics in the Age of Genetic Engineering*. Harvard University Press.

²⁵ Musk, E. (2017). "Making Humans a Multi-Planetary Species." *New Space*, 5(2), pp. 46–61.

²⁶ Scott, J. C. (2017). *Against the Grain: A Deep History of the Earliest States*. Yale University Press.

²⁷ Frey, C. B., & Osborne, M. A. (2017). "The future of employment: How susceptible are jobs to computerisation?" *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 114, 254–280.

²⁸ Harari, Y. N. (2014). *Sapiens: A Brief History of Humankind*. Harper.

transformative, has consistently produced both creative and destructive outcomes. While it has allowed us to shape the world and build complex societies, it has also fostered environmental degradation, social inequality, and new forms of conflict.

The progression from early human tools and agricultural systems to the AI and Robotics of today reveals a pattern of dual outcomes—enhancement of human capability alongside unintended negative consequences. The Agricultural Revolution, which marked the transition from nomadic hunter-gatherer societies to settled agricultural communities, profoundly changed human life. While agriculture allowed for population growth and the rise of civilizations, it also introduced social stratification and environmental stress.²⁹ The same pattern occurred with the Industrial Revolution in the eighteenth century. Powered by fossil fuels and steam engines, this revolution unleashed unprecedented economic growth and industrial productivity. However, this progress came at a great environmental cost, depleting natural resources and contributing to pollution on a scale never seen.³⁰

As Volume 1 concludes, it becomes critical to reflect on the implications of technological innovation in contemporary society, particularly the rise of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Robotics. These technologies, as discussed in detail in this volume, offer tremendous opportunities to solve some of the world's most complex problems, from optimizing healthcare to managing supply chains with greater efficiency. AI-driven diagnostic tools are already revolutionizing medical practice, improving accuracy in disease detection and treatment. For example, AI systems have been shown to outperform human doctors in diagnosing certain conditions such as skin cancer and lung disease.^{31,32} This level of precision offers the potential for earlier diagnosis and more personalized treatment plans, thereby improving patient outcomes and reducing costs in healthcare

²⁹ Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, Germs, and Steel: The Fates of Human Societies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

³⁰ McNeill, J. R. (2000). *Something New Under the Sun: An Environmental History of the Twentieth-Century World*. W.W. Norton & Company.

³¹ Esteva, A., et al. (2017). "Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks." *Nature*, 542, 115–118.

³² Topol, E. (2019). *Deep Medicine: How Artificial Intelligence Can Make Healthcare Human Again*. Basic Books.

systems.³³ The application of AI in medical imaging, genomics, and predictive analytics is expanding, promising to enhance healthcare delivery and address global health challenges.

In logistics, AI is creating more efficient supply chains, reducing costs and delivery times. Companies like Amazon have integrated AI and machine learning algorithms to optimize inventory management and route planning, significantly improving operational efficiency.³⁴ AI-powered predictive models enable companies to forecast demand more accurately, minimize waste, and ensure timely deliveries. Such advancements in AI and automation have the potential to transform industries, enhancing productivity and driving economic growth.³⁵ However, these innovations also raise critical questions regarding the future of work. The displacement of workers, particularly in low-skilled jobs, due to automation could exacerbate existing economic inequalities unless appropriate policies, such as job retraining programmes and social safety nets, are implemented to address these disruptions.³⁶

As AI and Robotics continue to advance, their impact on global power structures and inequality will also become more pronounced. Developed nations and large corporations with access to cutting-edge AI technologies may consolidate their economic dominance, leaving poorer nations and smaller enterprises at a disadvantage.³⁷ This dynamic underscores the need for global governance and collaboration to ensure that the benefits of AI are distributed equitably and that the potential harms are mitigated. Without appropriate regulation and oversight, the rapid deployment of AI technologies could lead to unintended consequences, such as privacy violations, job displacement, and even ethical dilemmas in areas like

³³ Jiang, F., et al. (2017). "Artificial intelligence in healthcare: past, present and future." *Stroke and Vascular Neurology*, 2(4), 230–243.

³⁴ Bottani, E., & Montanari, R. (2010). "Supply chain design and cost analysis through simulation." *International Journal of Production Research*, 48(10), 2859–2886.

³⁵ Brynjolfsson, E., & McAfee, A. (2014). *The Second Machine Age: Work, Progress, and Prosperity in a Time of Brilliant Technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.

³⁶ Frey, C. B., & Osborne, M. A. (2017). "The future of employment: How susceptible are jobs to computerisation?" *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 114, 254–280.

³⁷ Acemoglu, D., & Restrepo, P. (2018). "Artificial Intelligence, Automation, and Work." NBER Working Paper Series, 24196.

autonomous weaponry.³⁸ While AI and Robotics offer the potential to revolutionize sectors such as healthcare and logistics, their broader societal implications must be carefully considered. The promise of these technologies to solve complex global challenges is immense, but they also present risks that need to be addressed through thoughtful policy interventions and global cooperation. As we move into an increasingly automated world, the need for balancing innovation with ethical considerations and social equity becomes ever more critical.

Yet, these advancements are not without risk. AI's ability to automate labour, particularly in low-skilled sectors, presents significant social challenges. If not managed carefully, AI could displace millions of workers, exacerbating economic inequality across both developed and developing nations. The automation of tasks previously performed by humans threatens to widen the gap between those with the skills to work alongside advanced technologies and those left behind. As discussed in Chap. 6, appropriate policy responses, such as job retraining programmes and universal basic income, will be necessary to mitigate the social upheavals that could arise from this technological displacement. Moreover, humanity now finds itself in the Anthropocene—a new geological epoch characterized by the dominant influence of human activity on the Earth's systems.³⁹ The Anthropocene highlights the profound impact that industrialization and modern technological innovations have had on the environment. The past century of rapid industrialization has fuelled economic growth, but it has also led to the degradation of ecosystems, depletion of natural resources, and acceleration of climate change. The environmental challenges humanity faces today—rising global temperatures, biodiversity loss, and resource scarcity—are inextricably linked to the very technological and economic systems we have created. As we look to the future, the fundamental question remains: can humanity harness the benefits of AI, Robotics, and other emerging technologies without exacerbating the challenges they seek to address? The answer to this question will depend on how these technologies are governed and how equitably their benefits are distributed.

³⁸ Sharkey, N. (2010). "Saying 'No!' to Lethal Autonomous Targeting." *Journal of Military Ethics*, 9(4), 369–383.

³⁹ Steffen, W., Broadgate, W., Deutsch, L., Gaffney, O., & Ludwig, C. (2011). "The Anthropocene: Conceptual and Historical Perspectives." *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A*, 369(1938), 842–867.

Homo sapiens have been uniquely capable of technological advancements that, while beneficial to human society, have often come at the expense of the natural environment. Innovations such as industrial machinery, fossil fuel energy, and large-scale agriculture have driven massive deforestation, pollution, and climate change.⁴⁰ Deforestation, for instance, is largely driven by human activities like logging, agriculture, and urbanization, leading to habitat loss, biodiversity reduction, and increased carbon emissions.⁴¹ Human reliance on fossil fuels has also led to pollution, including air, water, and soil contamination, which further degrades ecosystems and harms wildlife.⁴² In contrast, non-human animals such as elephants, dolphins, and primates exhibit high levels of intelligence but employ their cognitive abilities in ways that support ecosystem balance. Elephants, for example, play a key role as ‘ecosystem engineers’ by shaping their environment through actions like creating water holes, dispersing seeds, and clearing vegetation, all of which benefit other species without causing long-term environmental damage.^{43,44} Dolphins and whales also demonstrate cooperative hunting techniques and social learning that allow them to efficiently exploit resources without overburdening their environment.^{45,46} Unlike human innovation, which is often driven by economic growth and resource extraction objectives, animal behaviours are typically aimed at survival and maintaining balance within their ecosystems. This can be seen in primate tool use, where orangutans use leaves and sticks to aid in food gathering, but these practices do not result in the

⁴⁰ Steffen, W., Crutzen, P. J., & McNeill, J. R. (2015). The Anthropocene: Are humans now overwhelming the great forces of nature? *Ambio*, 36(8), 614–621.

⁴¹ FAO. (2020). *Global Forest Resources Assessment 2020*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

⁴² Rockström, J., et al. (2009). A safe operating space for humanity. *Nature*, 461(7263), 472–475.

⁴³ McComb, K., Shannon, G., Sayialel, K. N., & Moss, C. (2014). Elephants can determine ethnicity, gender, and age from acoustic cues in human voices. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 111(14), 5433–5438.

⁴⁴ Owen-Smith, N. (1988). *Megaherbivores: The Influence of Very Large Body Size on Ecology*. Cambridge University Press.

⁴⁵ Connor, R. C. (2007). Dolphin social intelligence: Complex alliance relationships in bottlenose dolphins and a consideration of selective environments for extreme brain size evolution in mammals. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 362(1480), 587–602.

⁴⁶ Whitehead, H., & Rendell, L. (2014). *The Cultural Lives of Whales and Dolphins*. University of Chicago Press.

environmental destruction characteristic of human technological advancements.⁴⁷ The intelligence of these animals supports long-term sustainability rather than leading to the overexploitation of resources. On the other hand, the human-induced phenomenon of climate change, driven by activities like industrialization and deforestation, represents a significant divergence between human and non-human use of intelligence. While humans have created technologies that increase efficiency and productivity, they have often disregarded the environmental costs, leading to global warming, rising sea levels, and extreme weather events.^{48,49} In contrast, the behaviours of non-human animals are more closely aligned with maintaining ecological balance, ensuring the sustainability of their habitats for future generations.

PROLOGUE TO VOLUME 2: FRONTIER TECHNOLOGIES AND THE FUTURE OF HUMANITY

The transition to Volume 2 of *The Political Economy of Contemporary Human Civilisation*, the focus shifts to frontier technologies—Quantum Computing, nuclear fusion, and others—that will define the next phase of human progress. These innovations hold immense potential to address some of the world’s most pressing challenges, from energy scarcity to climate change. Yet, just as with AI and Robotics, these new technologies bring with them profound risks and ethical dilemmas.

Quantum Computing, for instance, is a transformative technology that could revolutionize industries such as cryptography, drug discovery, and climate modelling. By leveraging the principles of quantum mechanics, quantum computers can solve complex problems that are currently intractable for classical computers. However, there are security risks associated with Quantum Computing, particularly its potential to break existing encryption methods.⁵⁰ If quantum computers become widely available

⁴⁷Van Schaik, C. P. (2004). *Among Orangutans: Red Apes and the Rise of Human Culture*. Belknap Press.

⁴⁸IPCC. (2014). *Climate Change 2014: Synthesis Report*. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change

⁴⁹Steffen, W., Crutzen, P. J., & McNeill, J. R. (2015). The Anthropocene: Are humans now overwhelming the great forces of nature? *Ambio*, 36(8), 614–621.

⁵⁰Mosca, M. (2018). “Cybersecurity in an Era with Quantum Computers: Will We Be Ready?” *IEEE Security & Privacy*, 16(5), 38–41.

without adequate safeguards, they could compromise financial systems, military communications, and sensitive data. The race to develop quantum-resistant encryption technologies underscores the geopolitical dimensions of this emerging technology, as nations and corporations vie for technological supremacy. Similarly, nuclear fusion offers the promise of clean, near-limitless energy. Unlike nuclear fission, which produces long-lived radioactive waste, nuclear fusion generates energy by fusing atomic nuclei together, a process that powers the sun. If successful, fusion could provide a sustainable solution to humanity's energy needs, reducing reliance on fossil fuels and helping to mitigate climate change. However, the development of commercial nuclear fusion is still decades away, and the enormous costs associated with its development mean that the benefits may be concentrated in the hands of a few technologically advanced nations or corporations.⁵¹ This raises concerns about global inequality and the risk of further entrenching the economic and political power of a small number of global actors. The technological innovations explored in Volume 2, like those discussed in Volume 1, raise fundamental questions about governance, equity, and sustainability. Technological progress is not inherently beneficial or harmful; its impact depends on how it is developed, deployed, and distributed. The transition to a low-carbon economy, driven by innovations such as renewable energy and nuclear fusion, must be managed equitably to prevent a new form of 'green neo-colonialism', in which developed nations dominate the technological landscape while developing nations bear the brunt of climate change's consequences.⁵² The lessons from Volume 1 are clear: innovation has the power to reshape the world, but it also has the potential to deepen existing inequalities and create new forms of conflict. As humanity stands on the brink of a new technological era, the stakes have never been higher. The success or failure of these frontier technologies—Quantum Computing, nuclear fusion, AI, and Robotics—will determine whether we can address the global challenges of the twenty-first century or whether these innovations will precipitate new crises.

Volume 2 will evaluate these frontier technologies, exploring both their transformative potential and the risks they pose. Technologies like

⁵¹ Nature. (2024). "ITER delay: what it means for nuclear fusion." Nature. Available at: <https://www.nature.com/articles> [Accessed: 17 October 2024].

⁵² Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2021). "Climate change and energy security: Unpacking the arguments and mobilizing solutions." *Energy Research & Social Science*, 79, 102078.

Quantum Computing and nuclear fusion have the potential to fundamentally reshape global systems. Quantum Computing, with its capacity to process complex calculations at unprecedented speeds, could revolutionize industries ranging from pharmaceuticals to cryptography. Quantum Computing may help solve previously intractable problems, from climate modelling to optimizing global logistics networks.⁵³ Similarly, nuclear fusion promises nearly limitless clean energy, potentially addressing the global energy crisis and reducing reliance on fossil fuels, a key driver of climate change.⁵⁴ Nuclear fusion, unlike its fission counterpart, produces minimal radioactive waste and has a nearly inexhaustible fuel supply, offering a long-term solution to the world's energy needs.⁵⁵ However, the benefits of these technologies are not guaranteed to be evenly distributed. Advanced technologies, particularly those with dual-use potential like Quantum Computing, could exacerbate existing inequalities and create new geopolitical tensions.⁵⁶ For instance, quantum supremacy could be exploited by state actors to crack encryption systems, undermining global financial and security infrastructures.⁵⁷ Similarly, the development of nuclear fusion could provoke competition among states for control over the technology and its benefits, potentially leading to new forms of energy imperialism or resource conflicts.⁵⁸ These technologies, while promising, may also amplify the divides between technologically advanced nations and those left behind, exacerbating global inequality.⁵⁹ Moreover, the ethical implications of these advancements cannot be overlooked. The deployment of quantum technologies in AI systems raises concerns about autonomy, privacy, and the concentration of power in the hands of a few powerful entities. The ethical governance of such technologies will

⁵³Nielsen, M.A. (2010), *Quantum Computation and Quantum Information*. Cambridge University Press. P.155.

⁵⁴ITER Organization (2017), *ITER: The Giant Fusion Reactor Project*. Available at: <https://www.iter.org> [Accessed 20 October 2024].

⁵⁵Moir, R. and Teller, E. (2005), *Nuclear Fusion: Half a Century of Magnetic Confinement Fusion Research*. Taylor & Francis.

⁵⁶Bostrom, N. (2014), *Superintelligence: Paths, Dangers, Strategies*. Oxford University Press.

⁵⁷Aaronson, S. (2013), *Quantum Computing Since Democritus*. Cambridge University Press.

⁵⁸Goldston, R.J. (2015) *Introduction to Plasma Physics: With Space and Controlled Fusion Applications*. CRC Press.

⁵⁹Ford, M. (2015), *The Rise of the Robots: Technology and the Threat of Mass Unemployment*. Basic Books.

be crucial to ensuring they contribute to human flourishing rather than deepening existing social and political divides.⁶⁰ The future of humanity will be shaped by how we choose to deploy these technologies. Will they be used to address the pressing global challenges of climate change, inequality, and resource scarcity? Or will they fuel new forms of geopolitical rivalry and conflict? The answers to these questions will determine whether these advancements become tools for collective survival and progress, or catalysts for further division and strife.

While technological innovation and international cooperation offer potential solutions to global challenges like climate change, inequality, and technological governance, achieving genuine and sustained cooperation among human beings is fraught with difficulties. Deep-seated psychological and evolutionary factors, such as tribalism and the influence of what has been termed the ‘selfish gene’, complicate the prospects for collective action and harmonious global governance.

Tribalism, as observed in human societies, refers to the strong in-group loyalty and preference that can lead to division and conflict. This phenomenon, rooted in our evolutionary history, has been essential for group survival but also fosters an ‘us vs. them’ mentality that hinders cooperation on a broader scale.⁶¹ Tribalism can manifest in modern contexts as nationalism, racism, or other forms of group identity, making it challenging to mobilize unified global responses to issues like climate change. The rise of populist and nationalist movements around the world illustrates how tribal instincts can lead to the rejection of global cooperation in favour of localized, inward-looking policies.⁶² The concept of the ‘selfish gene’ posits that much of human behaviour can be understood through the lens of genes acting in ways that maximize their own replication.⁶³ This perspective suggests that behaviours often perceived as altruistic can, at their core, be driven by self-interest. While this does not preclude the possibility of cooperation, it does imply that individuals or groups may prioritize short-term gains over long-term collective benefits. For example, despite the

⁶⁰ Floridi, L. (2014), *The Fourth Revolution: How the Infosphere is Reshaping Human Reality*. Oxford University Press.

⁶¹ Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The Social Psychology of Intergroup Relations*.

⁶² Mounk, Y. (2018). *The People vs. Democracy: Why Our Freedom Is in Danger and How to Save It*. Harvard University Press.

⁶³ Dawkins, R. (1976). *The Selfish Gene*. Oxford University Press.

clear global consensus on the need to reduce carbon emissions, countries and corporations often act in ways that favour immediate economic gains over the long-term sustainability of the planet.⁶⁴ The problem is compounded by the ‘tragedy of the commons’, where shared resources are depleted because individuals act in their self-interest rather than for the common good. These psychological and evolutionary challenges are further exacerbated by modern political and economic structures. Competitive international relations often reinforce tribal instincts, with states prioritizing their own security, economic prosperity, and political stability. Efforts to forge global agreements, such as the Paris Agreement, demonstrate both the potential and the limitations of international cooperation. While the agreement represents a significant step towards global climate action, the varying commitments and occasional withdrawals highlight how self-interest and national priorities can undermine collective action. Moreover, digital platforms and social media have, paradoxically, deepened divisions rather than fostering greater understanding. Algorithms that prioritize engagement have been shown to amplify polarizing content, which can reinforce existing tribal identities and hinder cooperative efforts.⁶⁵ This has significant implications for governance, as misinformation and echo chambers can lead to fragmented public discourse and make it harder to reach consensus on critical issues. To overcome these challenges, there must be concerted efforts to develop systems that encourage cooperation despite our natural tendencies. This includes fostering education that promotes empathy and global citizenship, reforming economic incentives to reward sustainable practices, and creating digital platforms that encourage dialogue rather than division. However, acknowledging the barriers posed by tribalism and the selfish gene is crucial for devising realistic strategies that address the root causes of global disunity. Nevertheless, in the context of the selfish gene, the idea that ‘human beings just kill while other animals only kill for food’ oversimplifies complex behaviours seen across species. From an evolutionary anthropology perspective, while many animals do kill primarily for sustenance, there are numerous examples where killing occurs for other reasons. For instance, chimpanzees, our

⁶⁴ Ostrom, E. (2010). *Governing the Commons: The Evolution of Institutions for Collective Action*. Cambridge University Press.

⁶⁵ Tufekci, Z. (2018). *Twitter and Tear Gas: The Power and Fragility of Networked Protest*. Yale University Press.

closest relatives, have been observed engaging in lethal raids against rival groups. These attacks are not motivated by immediate food needs but rather territorial expansion, which offers long-term benefits such as access to resources and mating opportunities.^{66,67}

In many species, including mammals and birds, aggression and lethal encounters can be linked to territorial defence. Wolves, for example, will kill intruders to protect their pack's hunting grounds. Lions sometimes engage in infanticide, where male lions kill the cubs of a rival to bring females into oestrus faster, thereby ensuring that their genes are propagated.⁶⁸ These examples illustrate that lethal behaviour in animals can often be connected to evolutionary strategies for enhancing reproductive success and controlling resources. In humans, the motivations for violence are even more multifaceted, influenced not just by immediate survival needs but by cultural, social, and ideological factors. Evolutionary anthropology suggests that early human violence, such as tribal warfare, could stem from competition over resources like territory, food, and mates.⁶⁹ Over time, as human societies grew in complexity, so did the motivations for violence. Warfare, for example, often became organized and systematic, involving large-scale mobilization of people and resources, which indicates a level of strategic planning unseen in other species.⁷⁰ This behavioural tendency of humans towards warfare may indicate that the newly emerging technologies of AI, Robotics, Quantum Computing, Nuclear Fusion, and Biotechnology may be put towards destructive purposes rather than towards constructive ones.

Genetics and evolutionary psychology provide additional insights into why humans might engage in lethal behaviour beyond food acquisition. The 'selfish gene' concept posits that genes drive individuals to act in ways that ensure their own replication. This theory can explain why humans might engage in acts of violence or competition even when it is not directly

⁶⁶ Wrangham, R., & Peterson, D. (1996). *Demonic Males: Apes and the Origins of Human Violence*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

⁶⁷ Goodall, J. (1986). *The Chimpanzees of Gombe: Patterns of Behavior*. Harvard University Press.

⁶⁸ Packer, C., & Pusey, A. E. (1983). Adaptations of female lions to infanticide by incoming males. *American Naturalist*, 121(5), 716–728.

⁶⁹ Keeley, L. H. (1996). *War Before Civilization: The Myth of the Peaceful Savage*. Oxford University Press.

⁷⁰ Ferguson, R. B. (2008). War, conflict, and human evolution. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 17(6), 277–289

related to survival.⁷¹ The pursuit of status, dominance, and resources has been embedded in our evolutionary history, with aggressive behaviours sometimes providing reproductive or survival advantages. For example, historically, dominant males who controlled resources could attract more mates, passing on their genes more effectively.⁷² However, humans have developed cultural and cognitive frameworks that extend these behaviours into more abstract domains. Ideological conflicts, such as religious wars, genocides, or political assassinations, often stem from perceived threats to a group's identity, belief systems, or way of life. While these are not driven by the need for food, they can be understood within the framework of in-group vs. out-group dynamics, a concept deeply rooted in human evolutionary history.⁷³ Moreover, according to social identity theory, people tend to classify themselves and others into groups, leading to a sense of belonging within the in-group and differentiation from out-groups.⁷⁴ This classification can foster strong loyalty and cooperation within the in-group, while also creating prejudice, discrimination, and even hostility towards out-groups. This dynamic is rooted in evolutionary history, where group cohesion was essential for survival. Early human societies relied on cooperation within kin groups or small bands to hunt, gather, and protect resources. However, such cohesion also bred competition with neighbouring groups over resources, mates, and territory. This competition could escalate into intergroup conflicts, a phenomenon seen not only in humans but also in our closest relatives, such as chimpanzees. For example, chimpanzee groups at Gombe engaged in organized raids against rival groups, leading to lethal encounters.⁷⁵ These behaviours are not driven by a need for food but by territorial control and dominance, which are key to the survival and reproduction of the in-group.

In human societies, in-group favouritism can lead to behaviours like ethnocentrism, where individuals perceive their own cultural group as

⁷¹ Dawkins, R. (1976). *The Selfish Gene*. Oxford University Press.

⁷² Daly, M., & Wilson, M. (1988). *Homicide*. Aldine de Gruyter.

⁷³ Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The Social Psychology of Intergroup Relations*.

⁷⁴ Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The Social Psychology of Intergroup Relations*.

⁷⁵ Goodall, J. (1986). *The Chimpanzees of Gombe: Patterns of Behavior*. Harvard University Press.

superior to others. This has been the foundation for many forms of conflict, ranging from small-scale tribal warfare to large-scale wars. In the context of pre-state societies, it has been found that many conflicts arose from competition over territory, honour, and social status rather than direct competition for food.⁷⁶ Such dynamics persist today, manifesting in nationalism, racism, and even in the way people support sports teams or political factions. Furthermore, modern examples like genocides, political conflicts, and even gang violence can often be understood through this lens. During the Rwandan Genocide, for instance, Hutu extremists framed Tutsi as an out-group threat, mobilizing in-group loyalty to justify violence against them.⁷⁷ Similarly, the Robbers Cave experiment demonstrated that mere group formation could lead to intense rivalry and conflict, even when the groups were arbitrarily assigned.⁷⁸ This experiment highlighted how quickly humans could develop an in-group bias and engage in actions that harm out-groups, even without material stakes. In essence, the tendency to favour in-groups and view out-groups as competitors or threats is an ingrained aspect of human behaviour, deeply influenced by our evolutionary past. It shapes how societies function, how conflicts arise, and even how individuals perceive others who differ from them in race, religion, or ideology. Thus, while many animals do primarily kill for food, they can also kill for territory, mating, or dominance, demonstrating complex social behaviours that are evolutionarily advantageous. In contrast, humans kill for a much broader array of reasons, with many acts of violence shaped by social, cultural, and ideological constructs, reflecting the unique complexities of human society. This finding does not bode well for human civilization where in the future to mitigate the impact of climate change, technologically imposed societal change, and rising populations, states and peoples will need to work collectively, in the use of the emerging technologies, with each other rather than compete. Furthermore, militarily and economically stronger nation states are likely to dominate over weaker states.

⁷⁶ Keeley, L. H. (1996). *War Before Civilization: The Myth of the Peaceful Savage*. Oxford University Press.

⁷⁷ Des Forges, A. (1999). *Leave None to Tell the Story: Genocide in Rwanda*. Human Rights Watch.

⁷⁸ Sherif, M. (1961). *Intergroup Conflict and Cooperation: The Robbers Cave Experiment*. University of Oklahoma Book Exchange.

REFERENCES

- Aaronson, S. (2013). *Quantum computing since Democritus*. Cambridge University Press.
- Acemoglu, D., & Restrepo, P. (2018). Artificial intelligence, automation, and work. NBER Working Paper Series, 24196.
- Aiello, L. C., & Wheeler, P. (1995). The expensive tissue hypothesis: The brain and the digestive system in human and primate evolution. *Current Anthropology*, 36(2), 199–221.
- Bostrom, N. (2014). *Superintelligence: Paths, dangers, strategies*. Oxford University Press.
- Bottani, E., & Montanari, R. (2010). Supply chain design and cost analysis through simulation. *International Journal of Production Research*, 48(10), 2859–2886.
- Brynjolfsson, E., & McAfee, A. (2014). *The second machine age: Work, progress, and prosperity in a time of brilliant technologies*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- Carmody, R. N., & Wrangham, R. W. (2009). The energetic significance of cooking. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 57(4), 379–391.
- Childe, V. G. (1936). *Man makes himself*. Watts & Co..
- Connor, R. C. (2007). Dolphin social intelligence: Complex alliance relationships in bottlenose dolphins and a consideration of selective environments for extreme brain size evolution in mammals. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 362(1480), 587–602.
- Daly, M., & Wilson, M. (1988). *Homicide*. Aldine de Gruyter.
- Dawkins, R. (1976). *The selfish gene*. Oxford University Press.
- Des Forges, A. (1999). *Leave none to tell the story: Genocide in Rwanda*. Human Rights Watch.
- Diamond, J. (1997). *Guns, germs, and steel: The fates of human societies*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- Doudna, J. A., & Sternberg, S. H. (2017). *A crack in creation: Gene editing and the unthinkable power to control evolution*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.
- Dunbar, R. (2014). *Human evolution: Our brains and behavior*. Oxford University Press.
- Dunbar, R. I. M. (1998). The social brain hypothesis. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 6(5), 178–190.
- Esteva, A., Kuprel, B., Novoa, R. A., Ko, J., Swetter, S. M., Blau, H. M., & Thrun, S. (2017). Dermatologist-level classification of skin cancer with deep neural networks. *Nature*, 542, 115–118.
- FAO. (2020). Global forest resources assessment 2020. Food and agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
- Ferguson, R. B. (2008). War, conflict, and human evolution. *Evolutionary Anthropology*, 17(6), 277–289.

- Floridi, L. (2014). *The fourth revolution: How the infosphere is reshaping human reality*. Oxford University Press.
- Ford, M. (2015). *The rise of the robots: Technology and the threat of mass unemployment*. Basic Books.
- Frey, C. B., & Osborne, M. A. (2017). The future of employment: How susceptible are jobs to computerisation? *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*, 114, 254–280.
- Goldston, R. J. (2015). *Introduction to plasma physics: With space and controlled fusion applications*. CRC Press.
- Goodall, J. (1986). *The Chimpanzees of Gombe: Patterns of behavior*. Harvard University Press.
- Gowlett, J. A. J. (2016). The discovery of fire by humans: A long and convoluted process. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 371(1696), 20150164.
- Harari, Y. N. (2014). *Sapiens: A brief history of humankind*. Harper.
- Holloway, R. L. (1967). The evolution of the human brain: Some Notes toward a synthesis between neural structure and the evolution of complex behavior. *General Systems*, 12, 3–19.
- IPCC. (2014). *Climate change 2014: Synthesis Report*. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
- ITER Organization. (2017). ITER: The Giant fusion reactor project. Retrieved October 20, 2024, from <https://www.iter.org>.
- Jiang, F., Jiang, Y., Zhi, H., Dong, Y., Li, H., Ma, S., Wang, Y., Dong, Q., Shen, H., & Wang, Y. (2017). Artificial intelligence in healthcare: Past, present and future. *Stroke and Vascular Neurology*, 2(4), 230–243.
- Keeley, L. H. (1996). *War before civilization: The myth of the peaceful savage*. Oxford University Press.
- Leakey, R., & Lewin, R. (1992). *Origins reconsidered: In Search of what makes us human*. Little, Brown & Co.
- Lovejoy, C. O. (1981). The origin of man. *Science*, 211(4480), 341–350.
- Marzke, M. W. (1997). Precision grips, hand morphology, and tools. *American Journal of Physical Anthropology*, 102(1), 91–110.
- McComb, K., Shannon, G., Sayialel, K. N., & Moss, C. (2014). Elephants can determine ethnicity, gender, and age from acoustic cues in human voices. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 111(14), 5433–5438.
- McNeill, J. R. (2000). *Something new under the sun: An Environmental history of the twentieth-century world*. W.W. Norton & Company.
- Moir, R., & Teller, E. (2005). *Nuclear fusion: Half a century of magnetic confinement fusion research*. Taylor & Francis.
- Mokyr, J. (1990). *The lever of riches: Technological creativity and economic progress*. Oxford University Press.

- Mosca, M. (2018). Cybersecurity in an era with quantum computers: Will we be ready? *IEEE Security & Privacy*, 16(5), 38–41.
- Mounk, Y. (2018). *The people vs. democracy: Why our freedom is in danger and how to save it*. Harvard University Press.
- Musk, E. (2017). Making humans a multi-planetary species. *New Space*, 5(2), 46–61.
- Nature. (2024). ITER delay: What it means for nuclear fusion. Nature. Retrieved October 17, 2024, from <https://www.nature.com/articles>
- Nielsen, M. A. (2010). *Quantum computation and quantum information*. Cambridge University Press.
- Ostrom, E. (2010). *Governing the commons: The evolution of institutions for collective action*. Cambridge University Press.
- Owen-Smith, N. (1988). *Megaherbivores: The influence of very large body size on ecology*. Cambridge University Press.
- Packer, C., & Pusey, A. E. (1983). Adaptations of female lions to infanticide by incoming males. *American Naturalist*, 121(5), 716–728.
- Rockström, J., Steffen, W., Noone, K., Åsa Persson, F., Stuart Chapin, I. I. I., Lambin, E. F., Lenton, T. M., Scheffer, M., Folke, C., Schellnhuber, H. J., Nykvist, B., de Wit, C. A., Hughes, T., van der Leeuw, S., Rodhe, H., Sörlin, S., Snyder, P. K., Costanza, R., Svedin, U., et al. (2009). A safe operating space for humanity. *Nature*, 461(7263), 472–475.
- Sandel, M. J. (2007). *The case against perfection: Ethics in the age of genetic engineering*. Harvard University Press.
- Scott, J. C. (2017). *Against the grain: A deep history of the earliest states*. Yale University Press.
- Sharkey, N. (2010). Saying ‘no!’ to lethal autonomous targeting. *Journal of Military Ethics*, 9(4), 369–383.
- Sherif, M. (1961). *Intergroup conflict and cooperation: The robbers cave experiment*. University of Oklahoma Book Exchange.
- Sovacool, B. K., & Griffiths, S. (2021). Climate change and energy security: Unpacking the arguments and mobilizing solutions. *Energy Research & Social Science*, 79, 102078.
- Steffen, W., Broadgate, W., Deutsch, L., Gaffney, O., & Ludwig, C. (2011). The anthropocene: Conceptual and historical perspectives. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A*, 369(1938), 842–867.
- Steffen, W., Crutzen, P. J., & McNeill, J. R. (2015). The Anthropocene: Are humans now overwhelming the great forces of nature? *Ambio*, 36(8), 614–621.
- Stout, D., Toth, N., Schick, K., & Chaminade, T. (2008). Neural correlates of Early Stone Age toolmaking: Technology, language and cognition in human evolution. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 363(1499), 1939–1949.

- Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The social psychology of intergroup relations*. Brooks/Cole.
- Topol, E. (2019). *Deep medicine: How artificial intelligence can make healthcare human again*. Basic Books.
- Tufekci, Z. (2018). *Twitter and tear gas: The power and fragility of networked protest*. Yale University Press.
- Van Schaik, C. P. (2004). *Among orangutans: Red apes and the rise of human culture*. Belknap Press.
- Whitehead, H., & Rendell, L. (2014). *The cultural lives of whales and dolphins*. University of Chicago Press.
- Wrangham, R., & Peterson, D. (1996). *Demonic males: Apes and the origins of human violence*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.
- Wrangham, R. W. (2009). *Catching fire: How cooking made us human*. Basic Books.
- Wynn, T. (2002). Archaeology and cognitive evolution. *Behavioural and Brain Sciences*, 25(3), 389–402.

INDEX¹

A

- Acheulean, 119, 119n49, 190n16, 194, 195n37, 197
- Adaptability, 252
- Adaptation, 13, 78, 82, 125, 129, 135, 147, 153, 154n208, 158n235, 169, 189–191, 194, 195, 196n43, 199, 203n74, 214n138, 215n140, 215n141, 228, 283, 293
- Addis Ababa, 215
- Adolescence, 73, 93
- Adulthood, 74, 83, 86, 93, 100
- Advanced Step in Innovative Mobility, 263
- Aedes aegypti*, 160–162, 161n252, 161n254, 162n260
- Aegean, 52–56, 52n140, 52n141
- Aerosols, 138, 139n142
- Afghanistan, 57
- Africa, 1, 13, 13n44, 21, 30, 31, 36, 36n42, 48, 51n131, 124n74, 128, 128n89, 156, 162, 188, 190n16, 192n22, 192n25, 193, 194n29, 195–198, 195n39, 200, 200n60, 201, 201n66, 205, 205n86, 212–214, 214n139, 216, 217, 223, 228, 228n203
- African American communities, 167
- African American homeowners, 168
- Agricultural economies, 13, 53
- Agricultural revolution, 7, 297
- Agricultural settlements, 61
- Agriculture, 2–4, 7, 21n77, 22, 41n70, 53n152, 54n155, 62, 63, 151, 152, 155–157, 158n235, 159, 165, 165n273, 166, 166n282, 169, 199, 203–205, 203n75, 205n84, 211, 212n123, 214, 218, 228, 270, 271, 271n140, 275–277, 276n156, 276n158, 277n160, 277n161, 279n173, 283, 296–298, 300, 303, 303n41

¹ Note: Page numbers followed by ‘n’ refer to notes.

- AI, *see* Artificial intelligence
 AI-driven systems, 3, 273, 281
 AI-powered robots, 14, 277
 AI Winter, 247–250, 248n41
 Akkad, 45
 Akkadian Empire, 45, 49,
 149–150, 170
 Akkadian Empire's fall, 149
 Alaska, 124, 128, 128n93
 Albanian, 218
 Albedo effect, 115
 Albrecht effect, 139
 ALEKS, 273
 Alexa, 240, 241, 273, 280, 282
 Alexander the Great, 46
 Alphabet Inc., 265
 AlphaGo, 250, 255–256, 283
 Alps, 128, 128n92, 166
 Amazon rainforest, 12
 Amenemhat IV, 46
 America, 36
 Amri, 57
 Anatolia, 32, 37n45, 39n61,
 40n64, 63
 Ancestral Puebloans, 151
 Ancient China, 56
 Ancient Egypt, 38, 51, 52, 56, 58
 Ancient Greek engineering, 260
 Ancient Mesopotamia, 44
 Angkor Wat, 152
 Animal behaviours, 303
 Animal husbandry, 37, 41, 42, 48,
 52, 53, 61
 Another, 30, 42, 57, 58, 61
 Antarctic, 110n5, 118, 118n40,
 119n45, 123, 136n128,
 143n160, 148, 148n183,
 148n184, 149n186
 Antarctica, 118, 143, 143n158, 148,
 149n185, 168
 Antarctic ice sheet, 118, 118n40
 Antarctic Peninsula, 148
 Anthropocene, 2, 2n6, 3, 3n11, 5n16,
 22, 22n80, 23, 302, 302n39,
 303n40, 304n49
 Anthropogenic, ixn4, ixn5, xi, 109,
 137n134, 142–143,
 147–149, 156n222
 Anthropogenic changes, 110n5,
 136n128, 144
 Aphelion, 141
 Arctic, 114, 123, 126n81, 134,
 134n119, 134n120, 148,
 148n179, 148n180, 148n181,
 149n186, 168, 204
 amplification, 134, 134n120,
 148, 148n179
 glaciers, 148
 Arizona, 156, 157, 160
 Artificial intelligence (AI), vii, 2, 3,
 3n8, 5, 5n18, 8, 8n27, 10,
 14–19, 14n47, 21–24,
 21n78, 23n82, 170, 239–250,
 239n1, 240n3, 242n16,
 243n17, 243n18, 245n26,
 245n27, 245n28, 246n29,
 246n31, 247n35, 247n36,
 247n38, 247n39, 248n40,
 248n41, 248n42, 248n43,
 251n54, 251n55, 251n58,
 252–260, 259n87, 259n88, 262,
 264, 270–275, 272n144,
 273n145, 273n147, 274n150,
 274n151, 275n153, 275n154,
 275n155, 277, 279–281,
 279n171, 279n172, 280n178,
 281n180, 281n182, 281n183,
 282n187, 282n188, 282n190,
 283, 283n191, 283n195,
 298–302, 298n20, 298n22,
 300n32, 301n33,
 301n37, 304–306
 algorithms, 170, 245, 260,
 264, 270

systems, 8, 15, 241, 244, 247, 249,
 253, 256, 258, 272, 273, 275,
 280, 282, 283, 300, 306
 in warfare, 6
 Asia, 31, 36, 117, 123, 145,
 146, 150n190, 152,
 153n206, 154n208, 155n217,
 155n219, 157n229, 158n233,
 159n238, 161, 164, 165n276,
 194, 195, 196n41, 197, 198,
 200n62, 201–208, 201n64,
 207n94, 212, 213, 216, 217,
 223, 228
 Athens, 53n147, 54n161
 Atlantic, 114, 116, 135
 Atlantic coast, 132
 Atlantic Meridional Overturning
 Circulation, 114, 126, 144, 145
 Atlantic Oceans, 113, 114
 Atmosphere, ix, 11, 114, 137,
 146, 147
 Attention is All You Need, 257
 Australia, 37, 122, 145, 156,
 156n224, 169, 201,
 201n63, 201n67
 Australopithecines, 30
 Australopithecus, 188–196, 189n9
 Australopithecus afarensis, 188,
 189, 189n9
 Austronesian, 206–209,
 207n94, 208n98
 Automata, 260–261
 Automated machines, 260, 264
 Automation, 3, 5, 8, 9, 10n36, 14, 15,
 23n84, 240, 260–262, 265, 268,
 272n144, 275, 275n154,
 280n177, 298, 301, 302
 Autonomous driving, 254, 256,
 265, 265n115
 Autonomous drones, 277–279
 Autonomous Underwater
 Vehicles, 277

Autonomous vehicles, 240, 249,
 264–267, 266n120,
 266n122, 277
 Autonomous weapons systems,
 5, 10, 21
 Autopilot, 265, 265n115
 Awilum, 46

B
 Backpropagation, 242, 248, 249, 252
 Badarian Culture, 48, 48n112,
 48n115, 49n120
 Bahamas, 122
 Bangkok, 153, 154n208, 158
 Bangladesh, 154, 154n214, 155, 213,
 213n133, 215, 229
 Barley, 43, 49, 60
 Basal ganglia, 81, 81n80
 Basalt, 190
 Bayesian networks, 249
 BERT, 255, 255n71, 257n83
 Biodiversity loss, 2, 11, 23, 164, 302
 Biodiversity reduction, 303
 Biological, 29
 Biological intelligence, 89
 Biotechnology, vii, 2–6, 21, 22, 170
 Bipedalism, 33–35, 33n28, 188–190,
 189n10, 189n11, 190n12, 192,
 294, 295
 Birds, 1, 29, 309
 Bir Kisciba, 48
 Bitcoin, 15, 16, 16n52, 16n53, 16n54
 Blade technology, 124, 199
 Blombos Cave
 South Africa, 200
 Blood pressure, 259
 Boko Haram, 188
 Bone needles, 63, 125
 Book of Knowledge of Ingenious
 Mechanical Devices, 261, 261n96
 Boudica, 47

- Brain, 7, 30, 31, 33–35, 41, 71–83,
75n37, 76n41, 77n45, 77n50,
78n56, 78n57, 78n59, 79n61,
79n63, 79n65, 80n69, 80n71,
80n73, 81n79, 82n85, 82n86,
82n88, 82n89, 83n94, 86, 87,
96, 99, 100, 191, 194, 196, 198,
223, 242, 244n20, 254, 294,
295, 297, 303n45
development, 30, 33, 41, 73, 75,
76, 79, 83, 87, 100, 294, 295
stem, 80
Brazil, 160, 162, 162n260, 214
Brexit, 226, 226n196, 227, 227n200
Brexit referendum, 226
Britain, 13, 46, 47n103, 47n105,
47n107, 47n109, 48, 48n110,
84n106, 132, 204, 222, 224
British Isles, 46, 203
British tribes, 46
Bronze Age, 53n146
Bulgarian, 218
Bullying, 96
- C**
Caesar, Julius, 46
California, 156
Callisto, x
Cambodia, 152
Camulodunum, 47
Canada, 13, 112, 117, 123, 204, 218
Carbohydrates, 296
Carbon dioxide, viii, 12, 109, 110,
112n15, 132, 135, 138, 143,
147, 148
Carbon monoxide, ix
Cardiovascular diseases, 159, 272, 280
Cardiovascular events, 259
Caribbean, 216, 217,
278n164, 282n189
Çatalhöyük, 205
Central America, 156, 169, 188, 220
Central American Seaway, 113–116
Central Asia, 202
Century
10th millennium, 39
Cerebral cortex, 80n68
Ceylon, v
Chaco Canyon, 151
Chad, 187, 188n3, 213, 214
Chanhü-daro, 57
Chariot, 50
Chikungunya, 161, 162
Child, 71, 75, 75n37, 76n39, 77n45,
81n75, 81n77, 81n81, 83,
84n106, 86, 88, 90, 94, 96, 100
Childhood, 72, 75, 76, 76n40,
82, 86, 93
Chimpanzees, 29n3, 30, 30n7,
190n14, 308, 310
China, 20, 38n53, 39n56, 42, 46,
60–64, 60n204, 61n209,
61n211, 61n212, 61n213,
62n217, 62n218, 62n220,
64n230, 204, 204n79
Chinese civilisation, 61
Chinese Room, 241
Cholesterol levels, 259
Civilisations, 49, 50, 52, 56, 58
Cleopatra (51BC to 30BC), 46
Climate, vii–x, 2, 5, 6, 6n23, 8,
10–14, 12n42, 16, 20–24, 60,
61, 109–118, 110n7, 111n9,
111n11, 114n23, 115n24, 120,
122, 122n61, 123, 125–147,
126n81, 126n82, 127n84,
127n85, 128n90, 128n93,
135n121, 137n133, 140n147,
141n151, 141n152, 142n156,
142n157, 143n160, 146n171,
148n183, 149, 150n190,
150n192, 152, 153, 153n206,
154n213, 155–157, 155n218,

- 156n226, 157n227, 158n237,
159, 159n239, 159n240, 160,
162–171, 162n261, 163n263,
163n266, 164n268, 164n269,
166n277, 166n278, 166n280,
166n282, 170n294, 187, 187n1,
187n2, 188, 203, 204, 209,
213–215, 215n140, 218–225,
229, 266, 274, 276, 278, 279,
281, 282, 299, 302–308
- change, vii–xi, viii1, viii3, ixn5,
2, 5, 8–14, 8n29, 9n33,
11n38, 12n40, 12n42, 13n43,
13n44, 16, 19–21, 19n71,
20n75, 23, 24, 109n1, 109n2,
110–153, 110n4, 110n7,
110n8, 111n9, 115n24,
115n26, 127n84, 132n111,
134n118, 135n121, 135n122,
136n125, 137n134, 142n154,
147n173, 147n176, 148n182,
148n183, 154n209, 154n213,
154n214, 154n215, 155–160,
155n219, 156n223, 156n224,
156n225, 157n227, 157n229,
158n231, 158n233, 158n235,
159n239, 159n240, 160n247,
160n248, 162–165, 164n268,
164n269, 165n274, 166n277,
166n278, 166n279, 166n280,
166n281, 166n282, 168, 169,
187, 188, 188n4, 213–227,
214n136, 215n140, 215n141,
219n162, 222n177, 229,
229n209, 266, 266n123, 274,
278, 279, 281, 282, 299,
302–307, 304n48, 305n52
- models, 21, 110, 111n11, 113, 136,
140, 143, 145, 155, 157,
168, 170
- Code of Hammurabi, 45
- Cognition, vii, 3, 4, 23, 34n31, 72,
80n71, 80n73, 81, 84n99, 86,
88, 91, 100, 191, 191n19,
194n35, 243, 295n6, 295n8
- Cognitive behavioural therapy, 94, 97
- Cognitive capacity, 31, 41, 74, 82, 296
- Cognitive development, 71n3, 72,
72n10, 73n19, 74n22, 74n26,
74n28, 75, 75n31, 79, 80n69,
82n85, 82n88, 82n89, 83,
83n96, 83n98, 87, 89, 90,
96, 99, 100
- Cognitive Revolution, 4
- Communal fire, 41
- Competition, 36
- Computing Machinery and
Intelligence, 241
- Concrete Operations Period, 76, 100
- Conflict, 2, 5, 10, 11, 13, 15, 23, 35,
91, 96, 219, 222n177, 229, 299,
300, 305, 307
- Convolutional neural networks, 249
- Copper, 43, 50, 59, 63
- Coq, 246
- Coral bleaching events, 166
- Coral reefs, 11, 164, 164n269
- Coral Triangle, 164, 164n267
- Cordilleran ice sheets, 123
- Côte d'Ivoire, 214
- Courtyard, 42, 58
- Cretan hieroglyphics, 54
- Crete, 53, 54, 54n161
- CRISPR, 4, 6, 23, 298
- Cryptocurrencies, 15, 16
- CT scans, 259
- Cultivated grain, 39
- Cuneiform, 51
- Curiosity, ix
- Cybernetics, 241, 241n11,
242, 242n12
- Cybersecurity, 267

D

Dartmouth Conference, 243
 Data centres, 9
 Da Vinci Surgical System, 268–269,
 272, 280, 281
 Dawenkou, 62
 Daxi, 62
 Deductive reasoning, 72, 73
 Deep learning, 242n15, 249n48, 253,
 253n64, 259n91, 283n192
 DeepMind, 8, 8n30, 23n83, 250, 259,
 274, 274n151, 279n171, 281,
 281n180, 282n188
 Defense Advanced Research Projects
 Agency, 248
 Deforestation, 165, 303
 DENDRAL, 251
 Dendrites, 77
 Dendritic arborization, 77
 Dendritic connections, 82
 Dengue fever, 160
 Denisova Cave, 202, 202n72
 Denisovans, 32, 202
 Depletion, x, 5, 19, 20, 23, 151, 302
 Depreciation, 16
 Destruction of biodiversity, 11
 Destructive innovations, 2
 Development, 71, 74n27, 75, 76,
 76n38, 76n40, 76n41, 77n45,
 77n47, 77n50, 78, 78n57,
 78n58, 79n65, 80n68, 81n75,
 81n77, 81n78, 81n79, 81n81,
 82n86, 82n87, 82n89, 83,
 83n94, 84, 84n99, 87–89, 91,
 92, 93n168, 94, 95, 97n191,
 98n193, 99, 100
 Development of language, 1, 297
 Devol, George, 261
 Dholavira, 57
 Diffusion of knowledge, 50
 Digital divide, 9
 Dimensions, 90

Dimini, 53, 53n148, 54
 Disabilities, 273, 279, 280, 282
 Displacement of workers, 301
 Dmanisi, 195, 196, 196n42,
 196n44, 197n47
 Dmanisi fossils, 196
 DNA, 30, 60, 202, 203n74, 207
 Dolphins, 303, 303n46
 Dorsolateral Prefrontal Cortex, 81
 Droughts, vii, 12, 13n43, 21, 112n16,
 143, 145, 147, 149–153,
 151n195, 151n197, 155–158,
 156n222, 157n228, 166, 169,
 170, 187, 213–216, 214n139,
 219, 221, 223, 229
 Dry Corridor, 188
 Dual labour market theory, 211
 Dynamic tension, 16

E

Early Childhood Development, 71n2
 Earth, vii, 1, 3n12, 6, 12, 19, 22, 24,
 38n47, 38n51, 109, 111–118,
 118n42, 120, 120n52, 121,
 121n55, 123n68, 126, 127n86,
 132, 133, 135–138, 137n131,
 140, 141n150, 141n152, 142,
 142n153, 142n156, 143,
 145n166, 146–148, 146n170,
 146n171, 147n175, 156n226,
 157n227, 165, 299, 302
 Earth's climatic history, 121, 126, 143
 Eastern European, 218, 226
 East Midlands, 227
 Eccentricity, 117, 120, 121, 141, 146
 Economic environment, 89
 Economics, 73n13
 Ecosystem engineers, 303
 Ecosystems, 2, 5, 11, 12, 14, 19,
 21–23, 112, 134, 135, 147, 157,
 163–165, 165n272, 168, 197,

201, 204, 274, 277–279, 282,
 302, 303
 Eemian, 121–123, 122n63,
 123n64, 136
 Eemian interglacial period, 121,
 123, 136
 Egypt, 40, 46–52, 46n100, 48n112,
 48n115, 49n117, 49n120,
 49n121, 50n127, 50n130,
 51n133, 51n134, 51n137, 54,
 56, 58, 59, 205
 Egyptian predynastic, 49
 Electric AV, 266
 El Niño-Southern Oscillation,
 144, 152
 El Salvador, 16, 16n54, 188
 Emotional dispositions, 99
 Emotional intelligence, 91,
 92n157, 92n159
 Emotions, 83, 91, 93, 98, 100
 Emperor Claudius, 46
 England, 63n227, 129, 131, 132, 227
 English Channel, 224
 Enmerkar, 51
 Environment, 29, 42, 44, 60, 71, 75,
 76, 79, 83, 85, 88, 90,
 92, 96, 100
 Environmental destruction, 5, 304
 Equity, 13, 14, 21, 22, 24, 298,
 302, 305
 Eridu, 43
 ESA, ix, xn9, xi
 Ethereum, 15
 Ethical concerns, 5, 10, 23
 Ethical governance, 10
 Ethiopia, 162n262, 188, 190n16,
 198n55, 214, 215
 EU immigration, 227
 Euphrates, 42, 127, 149
 Eurasia, 118, 202, 204n78
 Europa, ix, xn8, xi

Europe, 31, 36, 38, 45, 52, 117, 122,
 123, 124n74, 125, 125n77,
 128–130, 130n99, 130n103,
 131n104, 132, 133, 146,
 155n221, 159n241, 160, 194,
 195, 197, 198n52, 202–205,
 202n71, 203n75, 205n85, 215,
 216, 217n148, 217n151,
 218n154, 219, 219n160, 220,
 220n165, 220n168, 222,
 227–229, 227n201, 261
 European colonization, 208
 European heatwave of 2003, 159
 European Union, 13, 188n4, 215,
 218, 220, 226
 Evolution, 29, 36, 53n149
 Evolutionary anthropology, 308, 309
 Evolutionary history, 199, 307, 310
 Exchange information, 55
 Expensive tissue hypothesis, 191, 296
 Expert systems, 245, 248, 250–252
 Extreme weather events, 11, 12, 21,
 134, 135, 135n121, 147, 154,
 157, 158, 166, 169, 187, 213,
 216, 220, 223, 229, 276, 304
 Eysenck's model, 89, 90

F

Family, 96
 Family Law, 45
 Federal Emergency Management
 Agency (FEMA), 167
 Feedback loop, 115, 137, 295
 Fertile Crescent, 13n43, 205, 228
 Fish hooks, 60
 Flanders, 131
 Formal Operations Period, 76, 100
 France, 20, 216, 224
 Frontal cortex, 80
 Frontal lobe, 76n42

G

Game playing, 247
 Gansu, 61, 62
 Ganymede, x, xn9, xi
 Gene editing, 6, 23
 General Motors, 261
 Genetic, 29, 36, 76n39
 Genetically modified organisms, 21
 Genetics, 260n92, 309
 Genomics, 260, 260n92, 301
 Georgia, 195, 196, 196n42, 196n44, 197n47
 Germany, 20, 123, 203, 216, 220, 225
 Ghaggar-Hakra River system, 153
 Ghana, 214
 GHG emissions, 13
 Glacial, 115, 117–121, 118n40, 119n45, 120n53, 123–126, 128–131, 128n93, 140, 141, 143, 144, 146, 199, 204
 cycles, 118–120, 119n45, 141, 144
 periods, 115, 117, 118, 121, 123, 141, 146
 Glaciation, 115–116
 Global agreement, 308
 Global carbon cycle, 133
 Global challenges, 2, 6, 22, 272, 279–283, 299, 302, 305, 307
 Global cooperation, 7, 13, 14, 20, 22, 24, 302
 Global disunity, 308
 Global inequalities, 5, 7, 9, 14, 17, 23
 Global South, 13
 Global temperatures, viii, 11, 19, 109, 111, 112, 118, 121–123, 122n59, 133, 134, 136, 140, 142, 147, 215, 229, 302
 Gobekli Tepe, 37–42, 37n45, 38n46, 38n55, 39n59, 39n61, 40n64, 40n67
 Gold, 50

Gombe, 309n67, 310, 310n75
 Goods, 43, 58
 Google, 8, 250, 255, 259, 273, 274, 274n151, 279n171, 280–283, 281n180, 282n188
 Governance, 2, 3, 7, 16, 22, 24, 48, 225, 301, 305, 306
 GPT-3, 250, 256, 258, 283
 Gradescope, 274
 Grammarly, 274
 Graphics Processing Units, 253
 Gravitational interactions, 120
 Great Barrier Reef, 164, 166
 Great Drought, 151
 Greece, 52n141, 53, 53n148, 54n154, 54n156, 54n158
 Greenhouse gases (GHGs), viii, ix, 5, 11, 20, 109, 110, 112, 113, 127, 132, 137, 142, 146–148, 266
 Greenhouse gas theory, 135
 Greenland, 115, 116, 122, 123n64, 126, 126n80, 126n83, 129, 131, 143, 148
 Greenland Ice Core Project, 126, 126n83
 Greenland Ice Sheet, 116, 148
 Green Sahara, 128
 Guangdong, 61
 Guangxi, 61
 Guatemala, 156, 188
 Gulf of Cambay, 57
 Gulf States, 217
 Gulf Stream, 113, 114, 116
 Gutians, 45

H

Habitat loss, 303
 Halaf, 42
 Hammurabi, 45, 45n95
 Han, 60
 Hangtu, 64

Harappa, 57–59, 153
 Harappan, 43, 153n204, 205
 Harari, Yuval Noah, 4
 Hassuna, 42
 Hawaii, 206
 Healthcare, 5, 8, 14, 23, 160, 163,
 217, 219–221, 223–226, 240,
 250, 255, 256, 259, 260,
 267–270, 268n129, 270n135,
 272, 275, 280, 281, 298,
 300–302, 301n33
 Healthcare robots, 269
 Heatstroke, 159
 Hebei, 61
 Hemudu, 62
 Henan, 61, 61n213, 62
 Heron's automata, 260
 Hierarchical, 53, 63
 Hinduism, 44n84, 59
 Hinton, G., 242n15, 248, 248n44,
 249n48, 250n49, 252, 252n62,
 253n64, 253n65,
 255n70, 283n192
 Hiroshima, 5, 23
 Ho Chi Minh City, 154, 154n211
 Hochreiter, Sepp, 254
 Holocene, 121, 122n63, 124n69,
 126–128, 127n85, 128n89,
 128n92, 128n93, 141n152,
 150n190, 153n206,
 203–204, 204n77
 Hominin populations, 119, 199
 Hominins, 1, 4, 29n1, 29n2, 30n5,
 31, 33, 34, 119, 188–193,
 190n14, 192n23, 196, 198, 199,
 202, 203, 294
 Hominoidea, 29
 Homo erectus, 30, 31, 33, 34, 36, 60,
 193–200, 194n33, 194n34,
 196n40, 196n41, 228, 295
 Homo ergaster, 31
 Homo habilis, 30, 30n10, 31,
 190, 193–195

Homo heidelbergensis, 31–32, 36,
 197–200, 197n48, 198n49,
 198n50, 199n58
 Homo neanderthalensis, 32, 35, 36
 Homo rudolfensis, 31
 Homo sapiens, 1–7, 22, 30–37,
 32n18, 32n21, 36n37, 39, 42,
 60, 196n41, 197–203, 200n61,
 201n66, 228, 293, 295, 303
 Honda, 263, 263n109
 Honduras, 156, 188
 Hongshan, 62
 Horn of Africa, 214
 Human behaviour, 84, 307, 311
 Human capital, 210, 223
 Human civilisation/human
 civilization, vii, 2, 21, 22, 24, 42,
 127, 128, 204, 229, 293, 297
 Human cognition, 86, 88–89
 Human development, 71n3, 72n10,
 74n22, 74n26, 74n28, 75,
 77n47, 78n58, 80n67, 82n87
 Human ingenuity, 4, 299
 Humanity, vii, ix, x, 2, 4–7, 14, 16,
 17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 35, 37, 75,
 299, 302, 303n42, 305, 307
 Human migration, 187
 Hunter-gatherer, 31, 37, 39, 40, 42,
 48, 49, 52, 125, 192, 205,
 297, 300
 Hurricane Katrina, 167, 167n285,
 167n288, 168n290
 Hutu extremists, 311

I
 Iberia, 32
 IBM Watson, 259
 Ice-albedo feedback, 118, 142
 Ice sheets, 116
 Imaging, 71
 India, 43, 57n183, 59, 152, 155, 157,
 157n227, 169, 201, 217

- Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD), 152
 Indonesia, 95n179, 153, 153n207, 164, 165, 165n275, 195, 207, 208
 Indus, 43, 44n84, 49, 49n122, 52, 56–60, 56n175, 57n177, 57n178, 57n182, 57n184, 58n186, 58n191, 59n199, 60n200, 60n201, 60n203, 127, 152–153, 205
 Indus River, 56
 Industrialisation, 2, 3, 11, 14, 24
 Industrial Revolution, 3n9, 5, 7, 11, 109, 132–134, 133n113, 136, 142, 147, 297, 298, 300
 Indus Valley, 43, 44, 49, 52, 56–60, 56n175, 57n177, 60n200, 152–153, 205
 Indus Valley Civilization, 152–153
 Inequality, 3, 6, 9, 13, 15, 20, 24, 166, 167, 217, 220, 297, 298, 300–302, 305–307
 Infants, 71–73, 71n4, 73n19, 76–78, 78n59, 79n61, 80n71, 80n73, 81, 81n78, 83, 83n94, 88, 89, 100, 190, 192, 193, 294
 Inflation, 16
 Innovations, vii, 1–5, 7–11, 14, 16, 17, 19–22, 24, 36, 39–41, 48–50, 49n123, 50n129, 52–54, 52n138, 52n143, 119, 124, 145, 170, 171, 191, 199, 200, 205, 228, 255, 258, 261, 262, 264, 265, 267, 272, 283, 293, 296, 297, 299–305, 307
 Insecticide resistance, 162
 Interglacial periods, 117, 119, 120n53, 121, 121n57, 140, 141, 143, 146, 203
 Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, vii–xi, x, xi, 11, 11n38, 12n40, 19n71, 109n1, 110, 110n4, 110n8, 132n111, 133n115, 134, 134n118, 136n125, 136n127, 136n129, 138, 138n135, 142n154, 147, 156n223, 158n231, 169n291, 304n48
 Internal displacement, 13, 221
 International cooperation, 170–171, 307, 308
 International Energy Agency, 20, 20n74
 International Labour Organization, 9, 9n31, 14, 15n48
 International Organization for Migration, 213
 International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor, 20
 Intertropical Convergence Zone, 149, 150
 IPCC, *see* Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
 IQ, 92, 92n161
 Iraq, 37, 40, 49, 57
 Irrigation techniques, 49
 Isabelle, 246, 246n30
 Isthmus of Panama, 113, 113n19, 114, 114n20, 115n28, 116n32
 Italy, 156, 216, 226
- J**
 Jakarta, 95n179, 153, 153n207, 158
 Java, 195
 Jiangxi, 61
 Jupiter, ix, xn9, xi
 Jwalapuram, 201
- K**
 Kenya, 191n20, 214
 Khan Academy, 273, 281
 Khmer Empire, 152

King Abdju, 51
King Narmer, 49, 51
King Prasutagus, 47
Kiribati, 155
Knossos, 52–54, 52n143, 54n159,
56, 56n172
Knowledge, 50, 75, 77, 84, 85, 87, 89
Kohlberg, L., 94, 94n173, 95,
95n175, 95n177, 95n178,
97n190, 100

L

Labour market impacts, 226
Lagash, 43
Lake Chad Basin, 187
Land bridges, 123, 124
Language, 44, 50, 55, 59, 61
Language processing, 240, 241, 245,
247, 249, 250, 253–255,
283, 295
La Niña, 144, 151
Lapita culture, 208
Lapita pottery, 207, 208
Last Glacial Maximum, 123–125,
123n65, 123n66, 124n71,
124n72, 203–204, 204n80
Late Neolithic Period, 48
Lateral prefrontal cortex, 74
Latin America, 13, 162, 217, 278n167
Laurentide, 117, 117n39, 123,
204, 204n80
Laurentide Ice Sheet, 117, 117n39
Learning, 41
Leave campaign, 226
Lee Sedol, 255
LeNet-5 model, 254
Lethal autonomous systems, 15
Levant, 124n74, 202
Libraries, 59
LIDAR, 264
Lifetime effect, 139

Linear A, 54
Linear B, 55
Lions, 309
Literature in China, 62
Little Ice Age, 130–132, 130n100,
130n101, 130n102, 143n159,
144, 145
Logic Theorist, 244, 246
Logistics, 8, 23, 275, 301, 302
Longshan, 62, 64n230
Long Short-Term Memory,
254, 254n69
Loom, 50
Lothal, 57
Lower Egypt, 49, 51
Lower Manhattan, 154
Lucy, 188, 189, 189n6

M

Macedonian Dynasty, 46
Machine learning, 8
Madagascar, 206
Madjedbebe, 201
Majabang, 62
Malaria, 162–163
Malaysia, 164
Maldives, 154, 187
Mammals, 29, 303n45, 309
Mammoth bones, 125
Mangroves, 165, 165n273
Manual dexterity, vii, 1, 33–35,
294, 295
Marrow, 190
Mars, ix, ixn6, xi, 6n23, 24
Mass unemployment, 5
Mathematics, 51, 72, 84n100
Maya civilization, 150, 150n191,
150n193, 150n194,
170, 170n293
McCarthy, John, 243
Measures of intelligence, 93

- Medical imaging, 301
 Medicine, 51
 Medieval Warm Period, 129–131,
 129n97, 144
 Mediterranean, 38n48, 40n65, 43,
 46, 52, 53
 Melanesia, 202, 206
 Meluhha, 43
 MENA region, 155
 Mendenhall Glacier, 128
 Mesa Verde, 151
 Mesoamerica, 150
 Mesopotamia, 40n67, 42n72, 42n74,
 43–45, 44n87, 45n97, 52, 56,
 59, 127, 127n88, 149
 Metallurgy, 50, 63
 Methane, viii, ix, 109, 110, 146–148
 Mexico, 188, 210, 224
 Mezhirich, 125
 Miami, 154
 Microblades, 124
 Micronesia, 206
 Micronutrients, 41
 Middle East, 21, 40, 51n131, 169,
 205, 216
 Middle Neolithic, 48
 The Middle Stone Age, 199
 Midwest, 117, 117n38
 Migration, vii, 12–14, 13n45, 36,
 36n42, 37, 60, 119, 124, 151,
 155n218, 169, 187, 187n2, 188,
 188n4, 194–197, 200–230,
 208n99, 209n100, 209n101,
 209n102, 209n103, 210n105,
 210n106, 210n107, 210n108,
 210n109, 210n112, 211n113,
 211n114, 211n115, 211n116,
 211n117, 211n120, 212n122,
 212n126, 212n127, 213n128,
 213n129, 213n130, 213n132,
 213n133, 213n134, 214n135,
 214n136, 214n137, 214n138,
 215n140, 215n141, 216n142,
 216n143, 216n144, 216n145,
 217n146, 217n147, 218n152,
 218n153, 218n154, 218n155,
 218n156, 219n157, 219n158,
 219n160, 220n164, 220n165,
 220n166, 220n168, 221n169,
 221n170, 221n171, 221n172,
 222n174, 222n175, 222n176,
 223n178, 223n179, 223n180,
 223n181, 223n182, 223n183,
 224n184, 224n185, 225n188,
 226n197, 229n206, 229n207
 Milankovitch Cycles, 116, 120,
 140–142, 146
 Milankovitch, Milutin, 120
 Military applications, 10, 15, 23
 Millet, 60, 62, 205
 Minoan, 52, 52n143, 54
 Minsky, Marvin, 243
 Mitigation strategies, 13
 Modular, 84, 89n135, 100
 Mohenjo-Daro, 57, 58, 153
 Mongolia, 204
 Monte Carlo Tree Search, 256
 Mont Miné, 128
 Moral reasoning, 93, 100
 Mothers, 192, 193
 Motor development, 71, 81, 99
 Motor processes, 72
 MRI images, 259
 mtDNA haplogroups, 207
 Mumbai, 154
 Mushkenum, 46
 Musk, Elon, 6, 6n23, 24
 Mycenae, 55
 Mycenaean, 52, 53n145, 55
 Mycenaean Civilisation, 46
 MYCIN, 251, 251n56
- N**
 Nabta Playa, 48
 Nagasaki, 5, 23
 Naqada Period, 49
 NASA, ix, 109n2, 146n170, 147n175

Nature, 84, 92, 93, 100
 Neanderthals, 4, 29n1, 29n2, 30n5,
 197–200, 202, 296
 Near East, 39n57, 41n69, 53
 Negative feedback, 142
 Neoclassical economic theory, 210
 Neocolonialism, 9
 Neoglacial Period, 128–129
 Neolithic, 37, 39, 39n57, 39n59,
 40n67, 41, 41n69, 42, 48, 52,
 53, 53n146, 53n148, 53n150,
 54n154, 60–64, 60n204,
 61n209, 61n212,
 62n217, 63n227
 Neolithic Revolution, 37, 39n57, 41,
 41n69, 205, 228
 Netherlands, 96n182, 96n184,
 154, 154n215
 Neural networks, 242, 245, 248, 249,
 250n49, 250n53, 252–256,
 255n73, 255n74, 256n76,
 259n90, 272n142, 276n156,
 279n173, 280n174, 282n184,
 295, 298n21, 300n31
 Neuroscience, 75n34, 75n36, 76,
 76n41, 76n43, 77n46, 77n48,
 77n51, 78n59, 79n60, 79n62,
 79n64, 79n65, 79n66, 80n71,
 80n72, 80n73, 80n74, 81n82,
 82n86, 84n103
 Nevada, 156, 253n65, 255n70
 New Economic Labor Migration, 211
 New Guinea, 201, 202
 New Mexico, 157
 New Orleans, 167,
 167n287, 168n289
 New York City, 154
 Newell, Allen, 244, 246
 Nigeria, 187, 213, 215
 Nile, 49, 127, 128, 205
 Nitrous oxide, viii, 109, 147
 Nobility, 40, 43, 61, 64
 Norse communities, 129
 North Africa, 127

North America, 112, 115, 117, 118,
 123, 128, 132, 133, 146, 203,
 204, 216, 218, 220, 222, 227
 North Atlantic, 114, 116, 117n34,
 129, 145
 North-eastern Greece, 53
 Northern Australia, 201
 Northern Europe, 115, 123
 Northern Hemisphere, 113, 115–118,
 117n34, 120, 121, 127, 128,
 134, 141
 Northern Hemisphere glaciation, 113,
 115, 116
 Northern Mesopotamia, 42
 North of England, 227
 Nuclear fission, 20, 305
 Nuclear fusion, vii, 10, 19, 20, 24,
 171, 304–306, 305n51, 306n55
 Nuclear technology, 5, 22
 Nucleotides, 30

O

Oase Cave, 202
 Obelisks, 51, 52
 Obliquity, 118, 141
 Obliquity cycle, 118
 Offspring, 192, 193, 203n73
 Oldowan, 119, 119n49, 190, 190n14,
 190n15, 190n16, 191,
 191n21, 194
 Oldowan tools, 190, 194
 Old World, 48
 Olfactory bulbs, 35
 OpenAI, 250, 255–258, 258n85, 283
 Opposable thumb, 34, 294
 Orangutan, 163
 Orbital eccentricity, 120, 121, 121n55
 Orbitofrontal cortices, 35

P

Pacific, 81n75, 81n81, 113, 114, 144,
 150, 155n217, 159n238,

- 165n276, 187n1, 206–208,
206n89, 206n91, 207n94,
214n139, 215, 229
 - Palaeocene-Eocene Thermal
Maximum, 146
 - Paleoclimate evidence, 143
 - Paleo-Indian cultures, 204
 - Palestine, 40
 - Parallelization, 257
 - Parenting, 73, 98
 - Paris Agreement, 13, 308
 - PARO, 269
 - Pearl, Judea, 249
 - Peasants' Revolt, 131
 - Peiligang Culture, 61, 62
 - Pepper, 267, 267n125
 - Perihelion, 141
 - Perseverance, ix
 - Personality traits, 90
 - Philippines, 158n234, 161, 164,
207, 208
 - Piaget's theory, 75, 83, 83n97, 99
 - Pleistocene, 113, 115–117, 115n27,
116n31, 117n33, 117n34,
117n38, 118n43, 120–121,
120n51, 121n56, 125n77,
128n92, 146, 191n21, 192n22,
192n25, 197n47, 198n49,
198n53, 199
 - Pleistocene epoch, 113, 146, 199
 - Pliocene, 111–113, 111n11, 112n12,
112n13, 112n14, 113n18,
114n23, 115, 115n27, 116n30,
117n33, 118n43, 121n56
 - Pliocene Warm Period, 111–113
 - Pneumatica, 260
 - Poland, 123, 203, 218
 - Policymakers, 83
 - Polish, 218
 - Political Economy of Human
Civilisation, 4
 - Political instability, 209, 219, 221,
225, 227, 229
 - Polynesia, 206–208
 - Polynesian, 207, 207n95,
207n96, 208
 - Pongidae, 29
 - Positive feedback mechanisms, 142
 - Poverty, 13, 24, 166, 167, 217, 223
 - Precession, 117, 141, 146
 - Precipitation, 114, 116, 126, 139,
143, 145, 147, 149, 150n194,
151, 158, 158n234, 160, 163,
165, 188, 214, 276
 - Precision grip, 294
 - Predictive analytics, 259, 275–277,
283, 301
 - Prefrontal cortex, 72, 99
 - Preoperational Thought, 76, 100
 - Probability theory, 91
 - Productivity, 6, 8, 10, 13, 14, 21, 44,
129, 153, 155–158, 219–223,
225n191, 262, 272, 275, 277,
280, 282, 297, 298, 300,
301, 304
 - Property ownership, 46
 - Proteins, 33, 296
 - Protoliterate, 44
 - Psychological functions, 84–87
 - Psychology, 75n31, 75n32, 75n35,
76n39, 77n49, 78n52, 82n89,
84n104, 85n108, 85n110,
86n115, 86n116, 86n117,
86n118, 87n121, 87n123,
87n124, 87n125, 88n128,
88n129, 90n142, 90n143,
92n162, 98n196,
98n198, 99n203
 - Ptolemaic Period, 46
 - Push-pull theory, 209, 210
- Q**
- Qinling Mountains, 60
 - Quantum computing, vii, 2, 10,
19–22, 171, 304–306, 306n57
 - Quantum technologies, 306
 - Quartzite, 190

Quaternary glaciation, 117, 118
 Quaternary Ice Age, 117
 Queen of the Iceni, 47
 Qujialing, 62

R

Racial differentiation, 37
 Racial diversity, 37
 Radiative forcing, 137, 140
 Radiology, 259
 Rainforests, 165
 Rakhigarhi, 57
 Ramesses II, 46
 Ramesses IV, 46
 Ramesses the Great, 46
 Rapid urbanization, 154
 Rapid warming, 134, 135, 140, 142, 148, 168
 Recurrent neural networks, 254
 Red Sea, 36
 Refugees, 13, 187, 187n1, 220, 225, 229
 Relationship, 80, 83, 83n94, 89, 91, 91n152, 98
 Renewable energy, 3, 8, 9, 13, 20, 24, 147, 266, 274, 279, 281, 282, 305
 Renewable energy technologies, 3
 Residential, 58
 Resilience of hominins, 120
 Re-skilling programs, 9, 15
 Rising populations, 311
 Rising sea levels, 153, 154, 165, 169
 Rising temperatures, 159
 Rituals, 38–40, 64
 River Ghaggar-Hakra, 57
 River Indus flows, 56
 River Nile, 49
 River Ravi, 57
 River Sarasvati, 57
 Rochester, Nathaniel, 243
 Robbers Cave, 311, 311n78
 Robotic exoskeletons, 269

Robotics, vii, 8–10, 14–19, 21, 171, 239–250, 239n2, 260–272, 261n98, 262n100, 262n101, 262n102, 262n103, 262n104, 263n109, 264n112, 267n125, 268n129, 268n130, 269n131, 269n132, 270n137, 271n138, 271n141, 272n143, 272n144, 274, 274n152, 275, 275n154, 277–283, 277n162, 277n163, 278n165, 280n177, 298–302, 304, 305

Roman, 47

Roman economy, 48

Roman Empire, 59

Romania, 202, 218

Romanian, 218

Romans, 47, 47n104, 48n111

Rumelhart, D. E., 248, 248n44, 252, 252n62

Russian heatwave, 135

Rwandan Genocide, 311

S

Sahara, 128, 128n89

Samarra, 42

Sangiran, 196

Sanliurfa, 37

Sargon the Great, 45

Scalability, 252, 266

Scandinavia, 117, 203

Scandinavian farmers, 129

Scavenging, 33, 190, 191

Schmidhuber, Jürgen, 254

Science, 29n3, 30n7, 38n53, 39n56, 39n59, 49n122, 51, 57n178, 57n182, 57n184, 58n191, 60n201, 71n2, 75n30, 75n33, 92n161, 95n175

Selfish gene, 307–309

Sensorimotor Period, 76, 78, 79, 83, 100

Sesklo, 53, 53n147

- Sexual dimorphism, 31
- Shaanxi, 61, 63
- Shakey, 264
- Shakey the Robot, 263, 263n105, 263n107
- Shandong, 60, 63
- Shang, 46, 61, 63
- Shang Dynasty, 46
- Shanghai, 154
- Shannon, Claude, 243
- Shortughai, 57
- Shrew, 29
- Siberia, 37, 122, 123, 202, 202n72, 204
- Simon, Herbert A., 244, 246
- Sind, 57
- Siri, 240, 241, 273, 280, 282
- Social behaviors, 311
- Social identity theory, 310
- Social interactions, 294
- Social organisation, 42, 64
- Social services, 215, 217, 218, 220, 221, 224–227
- Social structures, 2, 5, 7, 33–35, 82, 192–195, 198, 200, 206, 228, 297
- SoftBank Robotics, 267
- Sohag, 48
- Solar power, 20, 22
- Solar radiation, 139, 140
- Somalia, 214
- Sorghum, 205
- South America, 113, 145, 156n225, 213
- South Asia, 13, 155, 155n220, 157n230, 166, 169, 201, 205n87, 217, 220, 222–224, 229
- South-East Asia, 157–160, 163, 169
- South-east Kurdistan, 45
- Southern Coastal Route, 201
- Southern Europe, 155, 156, 169
- Southern Hemisphere, 117
- Soybeans, 60
- Soybean yields, 166
- Space, ix, xn10, xi, 5, 6, 19, 22, 24, 88, 115, 136, 138, 139, 142, 247, 299, 303n42
- Space colonization, 6
- Space Exploration and Space Travel, 19
- SpaceX, ix, 299
- Sphinx, 38
- SRI International, 263, 263n105, 263n107
- Stanford University, 251
- State, 45, 49, 51, 55
- Stimuli, 77, 78
- Stone hammers, 62
- Sub-Saharan Africa, 13, 156, 166, 169, 187, 205, 214, 215, 217, 220, 222–224, 229
- Sulphate particles, 138
- Sumatran tiger, 163
- Sumer, 42–46, 42n73, 43n83, 44n86, 56
- Sumerians, 43, 43n81, 43n83, 44
- Sun, 8n26, 45, 120, 124n69, 132n112, 139, 141, 146, 300n30
- Supply chains, 8
- Support Vector Machines (SVMs), 253
- Sustainability, 3, 6, 7, 10, 22, 24, 222, 224, 271, 278–281, 283, 304, 305
- Sustainable practices, 277, 279, 283, 308
- Sustainable urban planning, 169
- Swarm Robotics, 270
- Swarm robots, 271
- Sweden, 226, 226n195
- Switzerland, 128, 147n174, 148n178
- Symbolic reasoning, 7, 245, 247
- Synapses, 77, 100
- Syria, 40
- Syrian civil war, 12

Syrian refugee crisis, 219, 229
Systems Theory, 72

T

Take Back Control, 227
Teachers, 83, 84, 96
Technological advancements, 21, 199
Technology, 38, 40, 42, 50, 57, 58, 75
Temporal lobes, 35
Tepe Gawra, 44
Tesla, 240, 264, 265n115, 267
Textiles, 43, 50
Theories of Cognitive
Development, 4, 7
Theory of Mind, 72
Theory of moral reasoning, 94, 95
Thermohaline circulation, 113n19,
114, 114n20, 115n28, 116n32,
126, 126n81
Thessaly, 53, 53n145
Tigris, 42, 127, 149
Toolmaking, 34n31, 124, 125, 191,
191n19, 194n35, 295,
295n6, 295n8
Tournette, 43
Trade, 42, 44, 49, 51, 52, 54, 55, 58
Training programs, 262
Transformer architectures, 256
Tree-ring studies, 143, 152
Tribalism, 307, 308
Trinil, 196
Trinovantes, 46, 47
Tubular drills, 60
Tundra landscapes, 124
Turing, Alan, 240, 283
Turing Test, 240, 241, 241n9
Turkey, 37, 37n45, 39n61, 40n64,
205, 220
Tutsi, 311
Tuvalu, 155, 155n217
Twelfth Dynasty, 46

Twentieth century, 5, 110, 134, 135
Twomey effect, 139

U

Ubaidian, 43
Uber, 264, 267
Ukraine, 125
Umma, 43
Unimate, 261, 262
United Kingdom, 41n70, 46n102,
50n127, 51n133, 219, 226, 248
United Nations' Global Biodiversity
Outlook 5, 11
United Nations High Commissioner
for Refugees, 12, 12n42
United States, 13, 20, 117, 117n38,
123, 151, 151n199, 154,
154n212, 156, 157, 159, 160,
169, 188, 204, 210, 213, 215,
216, 218, 222, 226,
248, 276n159
Upper Egypt, 48, 49
Ur, 43, 57, 127
Urbanisation/urbanization, 7, 49, 57,
64, 127, 215n140, 222, 223, 303
Uruk, 43, 44, 50, 51, 127

V

Vector control measures, 162
Verulamium, 47
Vietnam, 154n211, 165
Vygotskian approach to moral
development, 98, 101
Vygotsky, 84–89, 84n104, 84n106,
85n107, 85n108, 85n109,
85n110, 86n115, 86n116,
86n118, 87n121, 87n123,
87n125, 88n127, 88n129,
88n130, 89n134, 97, 97n188,
97n191, 98n192, 100

W

Walk upright, 295–296
 War and Conflict, 10
 Wardum, 46
 Warfare, 309
 Waymo, 240, 264, 265n117,
 265n118, 267
 Welfare systems, 218–221, 224, 229
 Well-being, 91
 West Antarctic, 122, 148
 Western Desert, 48
 Wheat, 43, 49
 Wheels, 52, 63
 Wiener, Norbert, 241, 242, 283
 Wildlife, 303
 Williams, R. J., 248, 248n44,
 252, 252n62
 Wind energy, 8, 20
 World Bank, 13, 15n51, 21, 21n76,
 167n284, 187n2, 213n134, 217,
 217n149, 221, 221n171
 World systems theory, 212

World Weather Attribution,
 134–135, 135n121

Writing, 38, 50, 51, 55, 61, 61n213

X

XCON, 251

Xinle, 62

Y

Yangshao, 62

Yangshao Culture, 62

Yellow River, 62

Younger Dryas, 126–127,
 126n80, 126n82

Z

Zhou, 62–64

Zika, 161, 161n256, 162

Zika virus, 161, 161n256